

TASCAM

TEAC Production Products

58

8-Track Recorder/Reproducer



OPERATION/MAINTENANCE

5700039301

The guarantee of performance that we provide for the 58 must have several restrictions. We say that the recorder will perform properly only if it is adjusted properly and the guarantee is that such adjustment will be possible. However, we cannot guarantee your skill in adjustment or your technical comprehension of this manual. Therefore, Basic Daily Setup is not covered by the Warranty. If your attempts at internal adjustments such as rebias and record EQ trim are unsuccessful, we must make a service charge to correct your mistakes.

Recording is an art as well as a science. A successful recording is often judged primarily on the quality of sound as art, and we obviously cannot guarantee that. A company that makes paint and brushes for artists cannot say that the paintings made with their products will be well received critically. The art is the province of the artist. TASCAM can make no guarantee that the 58 in itself will assure the quality of the recordings you make.

Your skill as a technician and your abilities as an artist will be significant factors in the results you achieve.

**WARNING: TO PREVENT FIRE OR SHOCK
HAZARD, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE
TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. GENERAL INFORMATION

| | |
|--|--------|
| 1-1. General Description | 1 - 1 |
| 1-2. Tape Transport | 1 - 2 |
| 1-3. Head Assembly | 1 - 3 |
| 1-4. Electronics | 1 - 3 |
| 1-5. Power Supply | 1 - 3 |
| 1-6. Remote and Output Control Functions | 1 - 4 |
| 1-7. Transport Controls | 1 - 4 |
| 1-8. Motor Drive Circuit | 1 - 5 |
| 1-9. Remote Control and Other Accessories | 1 - 5 |
| 1-10. Reference Data The dB; Who, What, Why | 1 - 6 |
| Simplify The dB and its Many Variations | 1 - 10 |
| Impedance Matching and Line Levels | 1 - 13 |
| Reference Levels | 1 - 15 |
| Levels on Tape | 1 - 17 |
| 1-11. More Information is Available | 1 - 19 |
| 2. SPECIFICATIONS | 2 - 1 |
| 3. FEATURES AND CONTROLS | 3 - 1 |
| 4. OPERATION | |
| 4-1. Basic Information | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-1. Reel Installation | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-2. Threading Tape | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-3. Erasing the Tape | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-4. Cleaning and Demagnetizing | 4 - 1 |
| 4-2. Operating Procedures | 4 - 1 |
| 4-3. Monitoring the Line Output | 4 - 2 |
| 4-4. Recording | 4 - 2 |
| 4-4-1. Entering Record from Record/Pause Mode | 4 - 3 |
| 4-4-2. Entering Record from Stop Mode .. | 4 - 3 |
| 4-4-3. Punch-In Using the REC Function Switches | 4 - 3 |
| 4-5. Examples of Punch-Ins and Inserts | 4 - 3 |
| 4-6. Another Look at Sync Functions .. | 4 - 4 |
| 4-7. Built-In Auto Locator Functions ... | 4 - 4 |
| 4-8. Fast Winding | 4 - 4 |
| 4-9. Reproduction (Playback) | 4 - 4 |
| 4-10. Editing | 4 - 5 |
| 4-10-1. Manual Editing (STOP/EDIT) | 4 - 5 |
| 4-10-2. Dump Editing (Play (►)/EDIT) .. | 4 - 5 |
| 4-11. Spooling | 4 - 5 |
| 4-12. Voltage Conversion | 4 - 6 |
| 4-13. Note for U.K. Customers | 4 - 6 |
| 4-14. Connection and Operation of The DX-4D | 4 - 7 |
| 4-15. Optional Equipment and Useful Accessories | 4 - 10 |

5. THEORY OF OPERATION

| | |
|---|--------|
| 5-1. Logic Symbols | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2. Sensor Circuit | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2-1. Tape End Sensor Circuit | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2-2. Tension Sensors (L & R) | 5 - 2 |
| 5-2-3. Speed Sensor Circuit | 5 - 3 |
| 5-3. Power On/Off Reset | 5 - 6 |
| 5-4. Entry of Operation Instructions | 5 - 8 |
| 5-5. Tape Transport Control Circuit | 5 - 9 |
| 5-5-1. Reproduce Mode | 5 - 9 |
| 5-5-2. Fast Forward Mode | 5 - 10 |
| 5-5-3. Rewind Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-4. From Rewind to Play Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-5. Pause Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-6. Edit Mode (Manual) | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-7. Edit Play Mode (Dump) | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-8. Record Mode | 5 - 16 |
| 5-5-9. STC Mode (Search-to-Cue) | 5 - 18 |
| 5-5-10. RTZ Mode (Return-to-Zero) ... | 5 - 18 |
| 5-6. External Control Circuit | 5 - 20 |
| 5-6-1. Remote Control Circuit | 5 - 20 |
| 5-6-2. ACCESSORY Circuit for External Synchronization | 5 - 21 |
| 5-6-3. "REMOTE" Connector Signals .. | 5 - 25 |
| 5-6-4. "ACCESSORY" Connector Signals | 5 - 26 |
| 5-6-5. "ACCESSORY" Connector Pins and External Signal Connections .. | 5 - 27 |
| 5-7. Amplifier Control Circuit | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-1. Input Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-2. Reproduce Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-3. SYNC Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-4. Record Mode | 5 - 30 |
| 5-7-5. Record/Reproduction Switching Noise Protection Circuit | 5 - 31 |
| 5-7-6. Block and Amplifier Level Diagram | 5 - 35 |
| 6. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE | |
| 6-1. Basic Information | 6 - 1 |
| 6-1-1. Cleaning | 6 - 2 |
| 6-1-2. Degaussing (Demagnetizing) | 6 - 2 |
| 6-1-3. Equipment/Materials | 6 - 3 |
| 1. Alignment Tapes | 6 - 3 |
| 2. VTVM or FET Multimeter | 6 - 6 |
| 3. Signal Generator or Oscillator | 6 - 6 |
| 4. The Oscilloscope | 6 - 6 |
| 5. Test Tapes for the 58 | 6 - 8 |
| 6-2. Electrical Adjustment Procedure ... | 6 - 9 |
| 6-2-1. Location of Electrical Adjustments | 6 - 9 |
| 6-2-2. Reproduce Adjustments | 6 - 10 |
| 6-2-3. Record Adjustments | 6 - 11 |
| 1. Input Level Adjust | 6 - 12 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| 2. About the Bias | 6 - 12 |
| 3. Bias Level Adjust | 6 - 14 |
| 4. Bias Trap Adjust | 6 - 15 |
| 5. Record Level Adjust | 6 - 16 |
| 6. Record Equalizer Adjust | 6 - 17 |
| Daily Setup | 6 - 18 |
| General Advice on Maintenance | 6 - 18 |
| Service Chart | 6 - 20 |

MAINTENANCE

7. CHECKS AND ADJUSTMENTS

| | |
|---|--------|
| 7-1. Parts Location Diagram | 7 - 1 |
| 7-2. Essential Test Equipment Required | 7 - 3 |
| 7-3.Space reserved | |
| 7-4. Removal of the Main Parts | 7 - 5 |
| 7-4-1. Outer Parts | 7 - 5 |
| 7-4-2. Head | 7 - 7 |
| 7-4-3. Reel Motor | 7 - 7 |
| 7-4-4. Capstan Motor Ass'y | 7 - 8 |
| 7-4-5. Fuses | 7 - 8 |
| 7-4-6. Meters | 7 - 9 |
| 7-5. Tape Transport Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-1. Brake Mechanism | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-2. Brake Torque | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-3. Pinch Roller Pressure | 7 - 11 |
| 7-5-4. Tape Tension Servo and End Sensor | 7 - 12 |

| | |
|--|--------|
| 7-5-5. Reel Panel Height | 7 - 15 |
| 7-5-6. Tape Speed | 7 - 15 |
| 7-5-7. Wow and Flutter (Reproduce Method) | 7 - 15 |
| 7-6. Record/Reproduce Amplifier Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 16 |
| 7-6-1. Before Making any Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 17 |
| 7-6-2. Input Level Calibration | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-3. Meter | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-4. Peak LED | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-5. Reproduce Level Calibration ... | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-6. Reproduce Frequency Response | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-7. Bias Tuning and Bias Trap Adjustments | 7 - 21 |
| 7-6-8. Bias Level | 7 - 21 |
| 7-6-9. Recording Level | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-10. Frequency Response (Overall) .. | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-11. Signal-to-Noise Ratio (Overall) .. | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-12. Erase Ratio | 7 - 23 |
| 7-6-13. Adjacent Channel Crosstalk | 7 - 23 |
| 7-6-14. Distortion | 7 - 24 |
| 8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS (See index on page 8 - 1) | |

Note:

If you notice any differences, either on the outside or the inside of the unit from the illustrations and descriptions in this manual, talk to your dealer. He may have revision sheets that will show manufacturing changes, or notifications of how to deal with any changes in set-up or maintenance procedures. Save this manual, refer to it when necessary, and good luck with your 58.

*dbx is a trademark of dbx Incorporated. dbx noise reduction system manufactured under license from dbx Incorporated.

This recorder/reproducer has a serial number located on the rear panel. Please record the model number and serial number and retain them for your records.

Model Number _____

Serial Number _____

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. GENERAL INFORMATION

| | |
|---|--------|
| 1-1. General Description | 1 - 1 |
| 1-2. Tape Transport | 1 - 2 |
| 1-3. Head Assembly | 1 - 3 |
| 1-4. Electronics | 1 - 3 |
| 1-5. Power Supply | 1 - 3 |
| 1-6. Remote and Output Control Functions | 1 - 4 |
| 1-7. Transport Controls | 1 - 4 |
| 1-8. Motor Drive Circuit | 1 - 5 |
| 1-9. Remote Control and Other Accessories | 1 - 5 |
| 1-10. Reference Data | |
| The dB; Who, What, Why | 1 - 6 |
| Simplify The dB and its Many Variations | 1 - 10 |
| Impedance Matching and Line Levels | 1 - 13 |
| Reference Levels | 1 - 15 |
| Levels on Tape | 1 - 17 |
| 1-11. More Information is Available | 1 - 19 |
| 2. SPECIFICATIONS | 2 - 1 |
| 3. FEATURES AND CONTROLS | 3 - 1 |
| 4. OPERATION | |
| 4-1. Basic Information | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-1. Reel Installation | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-2. Threading Tape | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-3. Erasing the Tape | 4 - 1 |
| 4-1-4. Cleaning and Demagnetizing | 4 - 1 |
| 4-2. Operating Procedures | 4 - 1 |
| 4-3. Monitoring the Line Output | 4 - 2 |
| 4-4. Recording | 4 - 2 |
| 4-4-1. Entering Record from Record/Pause Mode | 4 - 3 |
| 4-4-2. Entering Record from Stop Mode .. | 4 - 3 |
| 4-4-3. Punch-In Using the REC Function Switches | 4 - 3 |
| 4-5. Examples of Punch-Ins and Inserts | 4 - 3 |
| 4-6. Another Look at Sync Functions .. | 4 - 4 |
| 4-7. Built-In Auto Locator Functions ... | 4 - 4 |
| 4-8. Fast Winding | 4 - 4 |
| 4-9. Reproduction (Playback) | 4 - 4 |
| 4-10. Editing | 4 - 5 |
| 4-10-1. Manual Editing (STOP/EDIT) | 4 - 5 |
| 4-10-2. Dump Editing (Play (►)/EDIT) .. | 4 - 5 |
| 4-11. Spooling | 4 - 5 |
| 4-12. Voltage Conversion | 4 - 6 |
| 4-13. Note for U.K. Customers | 4 - 6 |
| 4-14. Connection and Operation of The DX-4D | 4 - 7 |
| 4-15. Optional Equipment and Useful Accessories | 4 - 10 |

MAINTENANCE

5. THEORY OF OPERATION

| | |
|--|--------|
| 5-1. Logic Symbols | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2. Sensor Circuit | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2-1. Tape End Sensor Circuit | 5 - 1 |
| 5-2-2. Tension Sensors (L & R) | 5 - 2 |
| 5-2-3. Speed Sensor Circuit | 5 - 3 |
| 5-3. Power On/Off Reset | 5 - 6 |
| 5-4. Entry of Operation Instructions | 5 - 8 |
| 5-5. Tape Transport Control Circuit | 5 - 9 |
| 5-5-1. Reproduce Mode | 5 - 9 |
| 5-5-2. Fast Forward Mode | 5 - 10 |
| 5-5-3. Rewind Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-4. From Rewind to Play Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-5. Pause Mode | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-6. Edit Mode (Manual) | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-7. Edit Play Mode (Dump) | 5 - 11 |
| 5-5-8. Record Mode | 5 - 16 |
| 5-5-9. STC Mode (Search-to-Cue) | 5 - 18 |
| 5-5-10. RTZ Mode (Return-to-Zero) ... | 5 - 18 |
| 5-6. External Control Circuit | 5 - 20 |
| 5-6-1. Remote Control Circuit | 5 - 20 |
| 5-6-2. ACCESSORY Circuit for External Synchronization | 5 - 21 |
| 5-6-3. "REMOTE" Connector Signals .. | 5 - 25 |
| 5-6-4. "ACCESSORY" Connector Signals | 5 - 26 |
| 5-6-5. "ACCESSORY" Connector Pins and External Signal Connections .. | 5 - 27 |
| 5-7. Amplifier Control Circuit | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-1. Input Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-2. Reproduce Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-3. SYNC Mode | 5 - 28 |
| 5-7-4. Record Mode | 5 - 30 |
| 5-7-5. Record/Reproduction Switching Noise Protection Circuit | 5 - 31 |
| 5-7-6. Block and Amplifier Level Diagram | 5 - 35 |
| 6. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE | |
| 6-1. Basic Information | 6 - 1 |
| 6-1-1. Cleaning | 6 - 2 |
| 6-1-2. Degaussing (Demagnetizing) | 6 - 2 |
| 6-1-3. Equipment/Materials | 6 - 3 |
| 1. Alignment Tapes | 6 - 3 |
| 2. VTVM or FET Multimeter | 6 - 6 |
| 3. Signal Generator or Oscillator | 6 - 6 |
| 4. The Oscilloscope | 6 - 6 |
| 5. Test Tapes for the 58 | 6 - 8 |
| 6-2. Electrical Adjustment Procedure ... | 6 - 9 |
| 6-2-1. Location of Electrical Adjustments | 6 - 9 |
| 6-2-2. Reproduce Adjustments | 6 - 10 |
| 6-2-3. Record Adjustments | 6 - 11 |
| 1. Input Level Adjust | 6 - 12 |

| | |
|---|--------|
| 2. About the Bias | 6 - 12 |
| 3. Bias Level Adjust | 6 - 14 |
| 4. Bias Trap Adjust | 6 - 15 |
| 5. Record Level Adjust | 6 - 16 |
| 6. Record Equalizer Adjust | 6 - 17 |
| Daily Setup | 6 - 18 |
| General Advice on Maintenance | 6 - 18 |
| Service Chart | 6 - 20 |
| 7. CHECKS AND ADJUSTMENTS | |
| 7-1. Parts Location Diagram | 7 - 1 |
| 7-2. Essential Test Equipment Required | 7 - 3 |
| 7-3.Space reserved | |
| 7-4. Removal of the Main Parts | 7 - 5 |
| 7-4-1. Outer Parts | 7 - 5 |
| 7-4-2. Head | 7 - 7 |
| 7-4-3. Reel Motor | 7 - 7 |
| 7-4-4. Capstan Motor Ass'y | 7 - 8 |
| 7-4-5. Fuses | 7 - 8 |
| 7-4-6. Meters | 7 - 9 |
| 7-5. Tape Transport Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-1. Brake Mechanism | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-2. Brake Torque | 7 - 10 |
| 7-5-3. Pinch Roller Pressure | 7 - 11 |
| 7-5-4. Tape Tension Servo and End Sensor | 7 - 12 |

| | |
|--|--------|
| 7-5-5. Reel Panel Height | 7 - 15 |
| 7-5-6. Tape Speed | 7 - 15 |
| 7-5-7. Wow and Flutter (Reproduce Method) | 7 - 15 |
| 7-6. Record/Reproduce Amplifier Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 16 |
| 7-6-1. Before Making any Checks and Adjustments | 7 - 17 |
| 7-6-2. Input Level Calibration | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-3. Meter | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-4. Peak LED | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-5. Reproduce Level Calibration ... | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-6. Reproduce Frequency Response | 7 - 20 |
| 7-6-7. Bias Tuning and Bias Trap Adjustments | 7 - 21 |
| 7-6-8. Bias Level | 7 - 21 |
| 7-6-9. Recording Level | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-10. Frequency Response (Overall) .. | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-11. Signal-to-Noise Ratio (Overall) .. | 7 - 22 |
| 7-6-12. Erase Ratio | 7 - 23 |
| 7-6-13. Adjacent Channel Crosstalk | 7 - 23 |
| 7-6-14. Distortion | 7 - 24 |
| 8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS (See index on page 8 - 1) | |

Note:

If you notice any differences, either on the outside or the inside of the unit from the illustrations and descriptions in this manual, talk to your dealer. He may have revision sheets that will show manufacturing changes, or notifications of how to deal with any changes in set-up or maintenance procedures. Save this manual, refer to it when necessary, and good luck with your 58.

*dbx is a trademark of dbx Incorporated. dbx noise reduction system manufactured under license from dbx Incorporated.

This recorder/reproducer has a serial number located on the rear panel. Please record the model number and serial number and retain them for your records.

Model Number _____

Serial Number _____

1. GENERAL INFORMATION

This manual contains operation and maintenance information for the TASCAM 58 Tape Recorder/Reproducer.

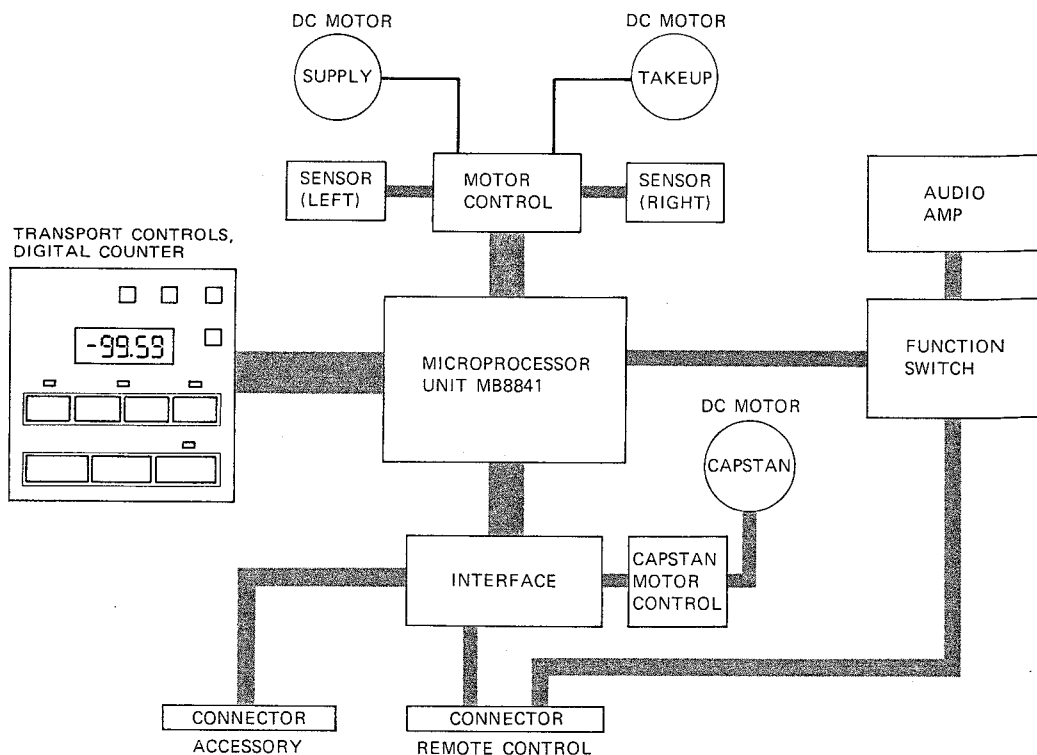
1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The 58 is an exceptionally versatile high-performance 8-track, 8-channel multitrack tape recorder/reproducer that uses 1/2 inch wide tape and operates at 15 ips (38 cm/sec). The head configuration consists of an erase head and two record/reproduce heads, one of which is used for recording and sync playback, and the other of which is used for playback only. This is an advantage primarily during alignment, since sync response is equal to repro response.

Designed especially for demanding production applications, including lock-up to SMPTE* controller/synchronizers, the 58 transport is built on a new, extra heavy duty chassis. The chassis includes a rigid aluminum base plate that

ensures stable tape motion and stable alignment despite the long hours of high speed, start-stop shuttling that are typically part of editing (especially when locked up to film or video systems). The 58 is quick enough to keep up with your tight deadlines. Tape motion is fast, smooth, and accurate thanks to a built-in micro-computer which commands two direct drive reel motors under full tension servo-control and an FG servo-controlled capstan motor.

*SMPTE is the Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; this reference is to an 80-bit digital code developed by SMPTE and used to designate the exact location (in hours, minutes, seconds and frames) on a film, video tape, or audio tape. Suitable equipment can synchronize ("lock up") two or more machines by using the SMPTE time code recorded on each.



The 58's electronics are mounted on plug-in printed circuit boards for ease of service. Access for routine alignment is provided through the front of the machine; the VU meter panel swings out and down for easy access to the EQ, bias and level calibration trimmers. This facilitates alignment while observing the results on the meters. Alignment is equally easy whether the 58 is housed in a vertical equipment rack, in a roll-around console, or on a desk. (More information on these adjustments is provided in the "Maintenance" section of this manual.)

The 58 includes a variety of functions and features that are essential to high-speed professional audio production. Naturally the basics of synchronous recording and playback are provided, with separate OUTPUT SELECT, pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) and REC function switches for each track. A digital fluorescent tape counter is tach driven, displaying elapsed time in minutes and seconds, or "negative" real time if prior to the zero point. A built-in auto locator function utilizes the digital tape counter and microprocessor to memorize a specific point on the tape; a single button then commands the transport to search (in either direction) for that cue. Another button commands a search to counter zero (again, either forward or reverse winding to the 00.00 point). Record/repro speed is adjustable for gross corrections or fine tuning by means of a PITCH CONTROL that has coarse ($\pm 15\%$) and fine ($\pm 0.7\%$) adjustments. An optional full remote control is available for performing all functions at a distance from the machine, except edit mode. Manual and dump editing are possible, and a splicing block is conveniently mounted on the front panel. In order to get a tight, uniformly packed reel for storage, it is not necessary to wait while off-loading a tape in play mode. Instead, tape may be rapidly wound onto the take-up or supply reel in a high-speed spooling mode that avoids the loose or uneven tape pack which is typical of many servo-controlled systems. Other features include a dbx** connector (DBX UNIT CONTROL SIGNAL) for plug-in compatibility with a TEAC-built dbx tape noise reduction system, a remote control connector (REMOTE) for interfacing with the optional RC-51 or RC-50 remote control unit and a synclock connector (ACCESSORY) with the necessary output and input lines for plug-in compatibility with popular SMPTE controller/

synchronizers.

**dbx is the registered trademark of dbx Incorporated, Newton, Mass.

1-2. TAPE TRANSPORT

Mounted on a rigid, precision-machined aluminum base plate are the main transport components, including: the supply and takeup reel motors, the capstan motor, the pinch roller, the tachometer roller, the digital counter, and the tape tension arms with their guide rollers.

All modes of operation, including fast forward, rewind and spooling, are commanded by the 58's specially programmed microprocessor controller. Tape tension is controlled by a full servo reel system. The FG (frequency governed) servo capstan motor ensures precise tape speed. The motor's large size, its brushless design, and the direct drive capstan on the end of the motor shaft all serve to minimize cogging and other speed variations while providing extended service life.

The tension servo employs a "non-contacting" detector, a photo-interruptor which senses the position of the tension arm so the servo can adjust the reel motor torque. Also, the servo adjusts tension arm position to further optimize tape tension. The reel motor servo system is very stable, and is not easily influenced by environmental conditions.

Major rotating components, including the tension arm guides and the pinch roller, are supported by ball bearings to provide minimum friction while retaining close tolerances. In fact, the tension arm itself is ball bearing supported for more sensitive response and greater motor and servo durability.

The tachometer roller measures linear tape footage, although the readout is converted to elapsed time from whatever zero point is entered. As tape moves, it turns the roller, causing a radially marked disk on the roller shaft (below the transport) to interrupt a photo sensor, which drives the digital counter circuitry. A thin rubber coating on the tach roller avoids tape slippage (for the most accurate results), and also protects the surface of the tape.

A solenoid-actuated tape lifter automatically pushes tape away from the heads during any of the fast winding modes, including fast forward, rewind, and spooling. This prevents unnecessary wear on the heads and tape, and avoids the disturbing loud, high-frequency sounds that could otherwise damage monitor speakers. For added protection, the 58 line outputs are also electronically muted. However, for editing, progressive engagement of the cue lever defeats the tape lifters so cues can be heard while fast winding.

1-3. HEAD ASSEMBLY

Access to the heads for cleaning or editing is provided by a flip-up head access cover, and a latching push-in head shield (head gate).

The assembly has three heads: erase, record/sync and repro, plus a scrape flutter filter (a precision roller between the record/sync and repro heads) and three fixed guides. The record/sync head and repro head are interchangeable, and adjustable (semi-fixed) for easy installation and removal. While either head is thus capable of recording, only the record/sync head is used for that purpose. However, either head will provide the same high-quality reproduction for playback. This means that artistic performance judgements and mixing decisions which are made during an overdub or an insert will be based upon the correct frequency balance (unlike machines with lesser sync playback response). Another advantage of the 58's high quality sync response is the ability to "ping-pong" or re-combine tracks, even during overdubs, without sacrificing audio quality.

1-4. ELECTRONICS

Strong emphasis has been placed on the audio quality of the 58's electronics. All amplifiers are direct coupled (DC) for lowest distortion and optimum low frequency response. The first stage of the reproduce amplifier consists of a pair of ultra-low noise FETs (field effect transistors). This differential amplifier eliminates the necessity of having to insert a coupling capacitor between the heads; instead, the DC servo amplifier brings the offset voltage to zero. The result is a smoother, wider frequency response with better transient and phase characteristics. The amplifier

section is constructed using plug-in printed circuit boards. Connections between circuit boards are made via a mother board. Just four front panel screws need be removed to slide out the meter panel for access to electronic adjustments. The usual bias, level, and EQ trimmers are provided, with separate controls for SYNC and REPRO playback. The trimmers are all metal glazed to enhance mechanical durability and avoid susceptibility to environmental conditions. There is a master bias oscillator, plus a separate bias amplifier for each track. This avoids interactions through the bias circuit for quieter punch-in and punch-out operations (i.e., minimum "click" noise). Levels can be monitored via 8 VU meters that incorporate peak indicating LEDs. The VU meters provide a familiar "average" level reference by which loudness can be judged, while the peak LEDs respond to brief transients that might not show on the meters, allowing the operator to avoid tape saturation.

1-5. POWER SUPPLY

The 58's power transformer is factory adjusted for various line voltages prior to shipment, depending upon where the machine is to be sold. The following standards are used:

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| European models: | 220 V, 50 Hz |
| U.K./Australian models: | 240 V, 50 Hz |
| U.S.A./Canadian models: | 120 V, 60 Hz |
| General Export models: | 100/120/220/240 V, (switchable voltage) 50 or 60 Hz |

The front panel switches are electro-mechanically linked with the following power supply circuits:

1. A regulated bipolar 15 volt DC (nominal) supply for the audio amplification circuitry. This ± 15 volt supply includes an exclusive tracking filter circuit to eliminate AC ripple.
2. +15 volt DC and +5 volt DC (nominal) supplies for the microprocessor and related logic circuitry.
3. A +24 volt DC (nominal) supply for the reel motors.
4. A +24 volt DC (nominal) supply for the capstan motor and the relay which switches the amplifiers. This supply is independent of the reel motor 24 volt supply.
5. A +5 volt DC supply to the capstan servo system.
6. Two DC voltages for the pinch roller solenoid: a higher voltage (+24 V) is used initially to

ensure the strong, positive actuation of the solenoid. Once engaged, the solenoid is held in place by a lower voltage (+15 V) which thereby avoids generation of excess heat. The 15 volt "holding" current is passed through a ripple filter to avoid any chance of mechanical buzz, and to avoid any chance of hum leaking into the audio amplifiers.

7. A 6 volt AC (nominal) supply for illumination of the VU meters. The microcomputer also uses this supply voltage to detect when the power is turned on or off to activate the muting circuit, and when the central processing unit erroneously functions or when the power is cut off during the rewind or fast-forward modes, this supply circuit serves so that the deck will go automatically into the stop mode as a safety precaution.

1-6. REMOTE AND OUTPUT CONTROL FUNCTIONS

1. REMOTE Control

- a) The REMOTE on-off switch, when on, activates the RC-51 Full Function Remote Control and permits transfer of the OUTPUT SELECT, REC and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) functions from the 58 to the RC-51. The switch has no effect on the transport controls: even when off, the transport controls (except EDIT), auto locator (CUE, STC, RTZ), digital counter and RESET functions can always be remote-controlled from the RC-51 as well as the RC-50 Transport Remote Control Unit. In record or record/pause mode, a momentary muting circuit prevents clicks from reaching the 58 line output while the REMOTE switch is operated.
- b) If the 58 is in the record/pause, record ready or record mode, it will automatically enter stop mode if the REMOTE on-off switch is operated. This avoids the chance of accidental tape erasure in the event of improper remote unit or transport function switch settings.

2. OUTPUT SELECT Pushbutton Switches

- a) There are three OUTPUT SELECT push-buttons: INPUT, SYNC and REPRO. These switches determine the source of the audio which appears at the 58 line outputs, as explained below.
- b) Pressing the INPUT button feeds the 58 line outputs with the same signals applied to the line inputs. Pressing the REPRO button

feeds the 58 line outputs with a signal played back from the tape via the repro head. Pressing the SYNC button will feed one of two signal sources to the line outputs, depending on the setting of the pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches and on the record or play status of the transport: the input to the machine, or sync playback from the record head. For further details, refer to "4-3. Monitoring the Line Outputs", page 4-2.

1-7. TRANSPORT CONTROLS

1. Auto Locator Functions

There is a built-in auto locator function which permits automatic searching to a precise location on the tape for convenient replay, copying, overdubbing, editing, etc. The auto locator relies upon the tape counter, and provides two search points: one is the zero point, and the other is a designated cue point. Pressing the RTZ button (Return To Zero) causes the transport to rewind or fast forward wind the tape to 00.00 and stop. Pressing the STC button (Search To Cue) causes the transport to rewind or fast forward wind the tape to whatever point was earlier designated as a cue, and then stop. (Note: the cue point is originally designated by pressing the CUE button when the tape is stopped at or moving past the desired location.)

2. Stop Mode

When the tape enters stop mode at the end of RTZ or STC search operations, or after a rewind or fast forward wind, the reels are slowed to a stop by means of dynamic braking. This application of opposite electrical torque to the reel motors stops the tape more gently than mechanical braking; it avoids slippage and stretching by maintaining a more constant tension throughout the deceleration.

3. Fast Forward, Rewind and Spooling Modes

Pressing either the (▶▶) or (◀◀) button once causes the tape to run rapidly in the designated direction. Pressing the button a second time causes the unit to enter spooling mode (tape runs at an intermediate speed).

4. Play and Related Modes

Pressing the play (▶) button from stop mode causes the transport to run forward at 15 ips (fixed speed mode) or whatever constant speed has been set with the PITCH CONTROL. Pressing play (▶) while the

unit is in fast forward or rewind mode causes the tape to come to a stop and then immediately enter play mode.

5. Record Mode

Pressing the play (▶) and RECORD buttons together places the transport in record mode, although recording does not actually occur unless one or more REC function switches have also been set to record ready status. If tape is already playing, pressing play (▶) and RECORD accomplishes a punch-in. Punch-out (ending recording while still rolling tape) is accomplished by simultaneously pressing play (▶) and RECORD a second time. (Pressing the play button alone will not stop the recording process). Recording can also be stopped by pressing STOP, ►►, ◄◄, STC or RTZ.

6. Edit Modes

Pressing the EDIT button releases the reel brakes and sets the reel servo system so that very little tension is held. This permits reels to be manually turned in either direction while listening (or looking) for a precise cue point on the tape. Tape can be "dump edited" by simultaneously pressing the play (▶) and EDIT buttons. In this mode, the capstan pulls tape past the heads, but the takeup reel motor does not operate. Cancel the dump edit mode by pressing STOP.

7. REMOTE Control Connector

There is a multipin REMOTE connector on the 58 rear panel. It interfaces with either RC-50 or RC-51 optional remote control. The RC-50 Transport Remote Control Unit provides basic record, play, stop, pause and fast winding control, plus it has a digital counter readout with RESET button, CUE, STC and RTZ buttons. The RC-51 Full-Function Remote Control Unit provides the

basic functions of the RC-50, plus OUTPUT SELECT switches, and individual track selection buttons for record on/off (REC) and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT), allowing remote-control of all the 58 front panel functions, except the edit mode.

8. ACCESSORY Connector

This connector is designed for interface with a BTX, ECCO, CONVERSION, FERNSEH, AUDIO KINETICS or similar synchronizer, and has the necessary logic and tally lines for proper control of the 58 by that unit.

1-8. MOTOR DRIVE CIRCUIT

The 58 is designed so that the tape tension on both reels is proportionally maintained while the system is in play mode. During the fast winding modes, back tension is held to a constant value, and the servo control system regulates the reel motors to maintain a constant tape speed as well.

1-9. REMOTE CONTROL AND OTHER ACCESSORIES

The following accessory units are available for the 58:

1. RC-50 Transport Remote Control Unit
2. RC-51 Full Function Remote Control Unit
3. CS-607 Console Rack (E.I.A. 19" size)
4. RM-500 Rack Mount Angle Kit
5. T-0804 Blank Panel for CS-607
6. RE-1013 TASCAM Metal Reel

Additional accessories are also available. Please refer to the "Optional Equipment and Useful Accessories" section of this manual.

1-10. REFERENCE DATA

The dB; Who, What, Why

No matter what happens to the signal while it is being processed, it will eventually be heard once again by a human ear. So the process of converting a sound to an electrical quantity and back to sound again must follow the logic of human hearing.

The first group of scientists and engineers to deal with the problems of understanding how the ear works were telephone company researchers, and the results of their investigations from the foundation of all the measurement systems we use in audio today. The folks at Bell Laboratories get the credit for finding out how we judge sound power, how quiet a sound an average person can hear, and almost all of the many other details about sound you must know before you can work with it successfully.

From this basic research, Bell Labs developed a system of units that could be applied to all phases of the system. Sound traveling on wires as electrical energy, sound on tape as magnetic energy, sound in air; anyplace that sound is, or has been stored as energy until some future time when it will again be sound, can be described by using the human ear-related system of numbers called "bels" named in honor of Alexander Graham Bell, the inventor of the telephone.

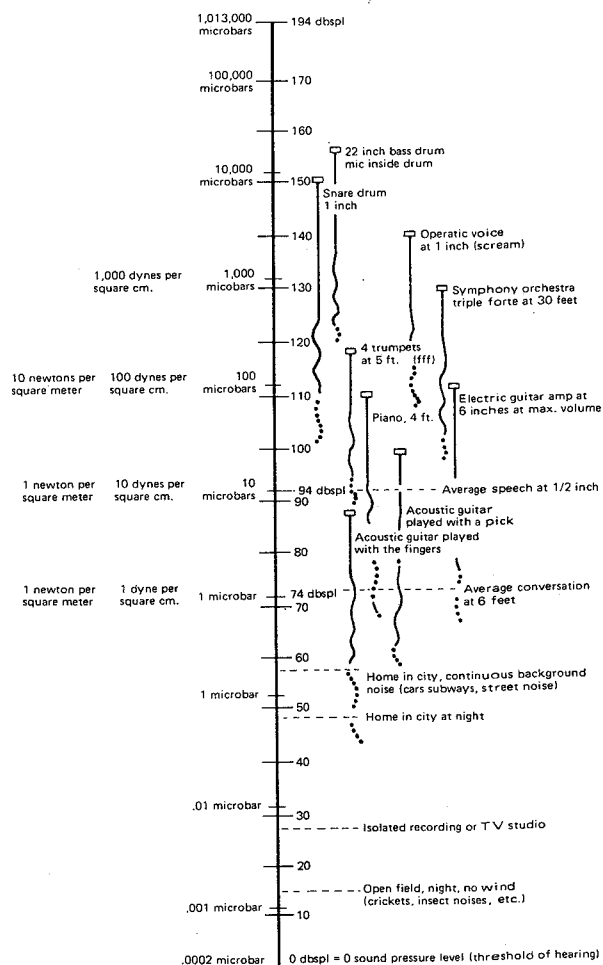
What is a bel and what does it stand for?

It means, very simply, twice as loud to the human ear. Twice as loud as what? An obvious question. The bel is always a comparison between two things. No matter what system of units of measure you are working with at the time, you must always state a value as a reference before you can compare another value to it by using bels, Volts, dynes, Webers — it doesn't matter, a bel, or ear-related statement of "twice as loud" is always a ratio, not an absolute number. Unless a zero, or "no difference" point is placed somewhere, no comparison is possible. There are many positive and definite statements of reference in use today. But before we go over them, we should divide the "bel" into smaller units. "Twice as loud" will be a little crude to be used all the time. How about one tenth of a bel? Okay, the decibel it is, and 0 means "no difference, same as the reference". It seldom means "nothing". Now, if you double the

power, is that twice as loud? No, it is only 3 dB more sound. If you double an electrical voltage, is it twice as loud? No, it is only 6 dB more sound. The unit quantities must follow nonlinear progressions to satisfy the ears' demand.

Remember, decibels follow the ears. All other quantities of measure must be increased in whatever units necessary to satisfy the human requirements, and may not be easy to visualize. Sound in air, our beginning reference, is the least sound the human ear (young men) can detect at 1000 to 4000 Hertz. Bell Labs measured this value to be .0002 microbar, so we say 0 dB = .0002 microbar and work our way up from the bottom, or from the point at which there is "no perceivable sound to humans". Here is a chart of sounds and their ratings in dB, using .0002 microbar pressure change in air as our reference for "0 dB spl" (Sound Pressure Level).

Sound and music reference



Since the reference is assumed to be the lowest possible audible value, dB spl (Sound Pressure Level) is almost always positive, and correctly written should have a + sign in front of the number. But it is frequently omitted. Negative dB spl would indicate so low an energy value as to be of interest to a scientist trying to record one cricket at 1,000 yds. distance, and is of no significance to the multichannel recordist. Far more to the point is the question "What is a microbar?" It is a unit of measurement related to atmospheric pressure and although it is extremely small, it must be divided down quite a lot before it will indicate the minimum pressure change in air that we consider minimum audible sound. This will give you a better idea of the sensitivity of the human ear.

One whole atmosphere, 14.70 pounds per square inch, equals 1.01325 bars. So one whole atmosphere in microbars comes out to be 1,013,250. One microbar of pressure change is slightly less than one millionth of an atmosphere, and you can find it on our chart as 74 dB spl. It is not terribly loud, but it is certainly not hard to hear. As a matter of fact, it represents the average power of conversational speech at 6 feet. This level is also used by the phone company to define normal earpiece volume on a standard telephone. Now think about that minimum audible threshold again:

.0002 microbar.

That's two ten-thousandths of a millionth part of one atmosphere!

This breakdown of one reference is not given just to amaze you, or even to provide a feel for the quantity of power that moderate levels of sound represent. Rather, it is intended to explain the reason we are saddled with a ratio/logarithm measurement system for audio. Adding and subtracting multi-digit numbers might be easy in this age of pocket calculators, but in the 1920's when the phone company began its research into sound and the human ear, a more easily-handled system of numbers became an absolute necessity. Convenience for the scientist and practical engineer, however, has left us with a system that requires a great deal of complex explanation before you can read and correctly interpret a "spec sheet" for almost any piece of gear.

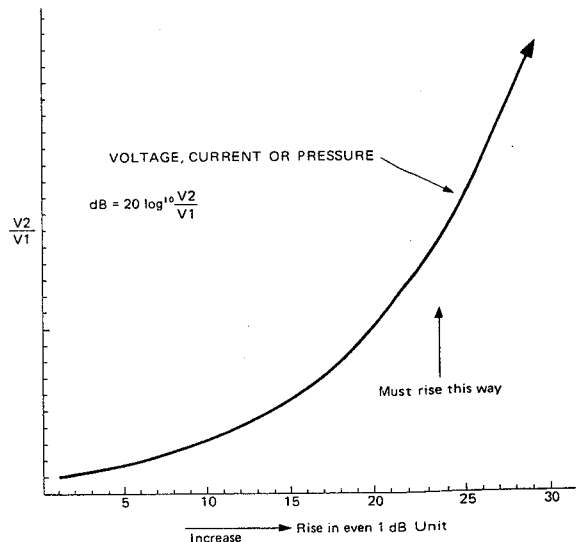
Here are the formulae for unit increment; but they are necessary only for designers, and unless you build your own gear, you won't have to deal with them. For power (watts) increase or loss, calculate by the following equation:

$$10 \text{ LOG}_{10} \frac{P_2}{P_1} = N \text{ (dB)}$$

For voltage, current or pressure calculations:

$$20 \text{ LOG}_{10} \frac{V_2}{V_1} = N \text{ (dB)}$$

Plotting the points resultant from using these equations we come up with the following chart. Once we have this chart, we can see the difference between the way humans perceive sound and the amount of force it takes to change air pressure. Unfortunately, the result is not a simple "twice as much pressure" of sound to be heard as "twice as loud". If you plot decibels as the even divisions on a graph, the unit increase you need is a very funny curve.



This is how the ear works, and we must adapt our system to it. We have no choice if we expect our loudspeaker to produce a sound that resembles the original sound we begin with. The high sensitivity to sound of the human ear produces a strong "energy" illusion that has confused listeners since early times. How

powerful are the loudest sounds of music in real power? Can sound be used as a source of energy to do useful work, such as operating a car? For any normally "loud" sound the answer is, regrettably, no! perhaps not so regrettably, consider what would happen if one pound of pressure was applied not to your head, but directly to your inner ear. One pound of air pressure variation is 170 dB spl! This amount of "power" might do some useful work — but not much, it's still only one pound and to make use of it you will have to stand one mile away or you will go deaf immediately.

If we reduce our sound power to realistic musical values, we will not be injured, but we will have almost nothing (in real power terms) to run the mic with!

This low available energy is the reason that high gain amplifiers are required for microphones. When we take a microphone and "pick up" the sound, we do have some leeway in deciding how much energy we must have in order to operate the electrical part of our system. If we can decide that we don't have to truly hear the signal while we are processing it from point to point and we can wait until the electronic devices have done all their routing and switching before we need audible sound, we can lower the power of the signal. What is a good value for a reference here? Well, we need to have enough energy so that the signal is not obscured by hiss, hum, buzz or other unpleasant things we don't want, but not so high that it costs a fortune in "juice" or electrical power. This was a big consideration for the telephone company.

They now have the world's biggest audio mixing system, and even when they started out, electricity was not free. They set their electrical power signal reference as low as was practical at the time, and it has lowered over the years as electronic equipment has gotten better. In 1939 the telephone company, radio broadcasting, and recording industry got together and standardized 1 milliwatt of power as 0 dBm, and this is still the standard of related industries. Thus, a 0 dBm signal into a 600 ohm-line impedance will present a voltage of 0.775 volts.

Once again, we owe you an explanation. Why does it say ZERO on the meter? What is an ohm? Why 600 of them and not some other value? What's a volt? Let's look at one thing at a time.

1. The logic of ZERO on the meter is another hangover from the telephone company practice. When you start a phone call in California, the significant information to a telephone company technician in Boston is — did the signal level drop? If so, how much? When the meter says ZERO it indicates (to the phone company) that there has been no loss in the transmission, and all is well. The reference level is one milliwatt of power, but the gain or loss is in the information the meter was supposed to display, so the logic of ZERO made good sense, and that's what they put on the dial. We still use it even though it's not logical for anything else, and the idea of a reference level described as a "no loss" ZERO, no matter what actual power is being measured, is so firmly set in the minds of everyone in the audio world that it is probably never going to change.
2. One ohm is a unit of resistance to the passage of electrical energy. The exact reasons for the choice of 600 ohms as a standard are connected to the demands of the circuits used for long distance transmission and are not simple or easy to explain. Suffice it to say that the worst possible thing you can do to a piece of electronic equipment is to lower the resistance it is expected to work into (the load). The lower the number of ohms, the harder it is to design a stable circuit. When you think about "load", the truth is just the opposite of what you might expect! 0 ohms is a "short circuit", not resistance to the passage of signal. If this condition occurs before your signal gets from California to Boston, you won't be able to talk — the circuit didn't "get there", it "shorted out". Once again, telephone company logic has entered the language on a permanent basis. Unless the value for ohms is infinity (no contact, no possible energy flow) you will be better off the higher the value, and many working electronic devices have input numbers in the millions or billions of ohms.
3. A volt is a unit of electrical pressure, and by itself is not enough to describe the electrical power available. To give you an analogy that may help, you can think of water in a hose. The pressure is not the amount of water, and fast flow will depend upon the size of the hose (impedance or resistance) as well.

Increase the size of the pipe (lower the resistance, or Z) and pressure (volts) will drop unless you make more water (current) available to keep up the demand. This analogy works fairly well for DC current and voltage, but alternating current asks you to imagine the water running in and out of the nozzle at whatever frequency your "circuit" is working at, and is harder to use as a mental aid. Water has never been known to flow out of a pipe at 10,000 cycles per second.

This reference level for a starting point has been used by radio, television, and many other groups in audio because the telephone company was the largest buyer for audio equipment. Most of the companies that built the gear started out working for the phone company and new audio industries, as they came along, found it economical to use as many off-the-shelf components as they could, even though they were not routing signals from one end of the world to the other.

Must we use this telephone standard for recording? Its use in audio has been so widespread that many people have assumed that it was the only choice for quality audio. Not so.

A 600-ohm, 3-wire transformer-isolated circuit is a necessity for the telephone company, but the primary reason it is used has nothing to do with audio quality. It is noise, hum and buzz rejection in really long line operation (hundreds and hundreds of miles).

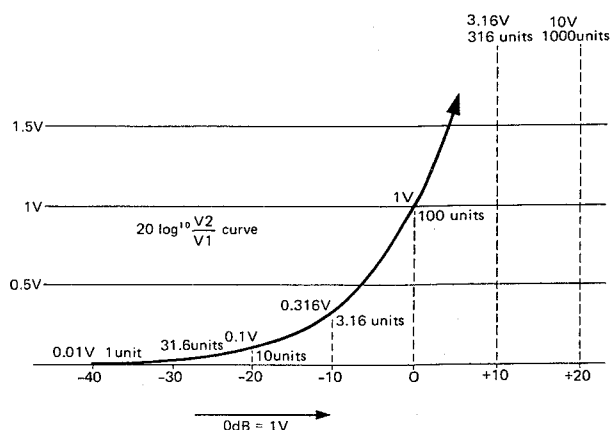
Quality audio does not demand 600-ohm, 3-wire circuitry. In fact, when shielding and isolation are not the major consideration, there are big advantages in using the 2-wire system that go well beyond cost reduction. It is, as a system, inherently capable of much better performance than 3-wire transformer-isolated circuits.

Since TASCAM's mixers are designed to route a signal from a mic to a recorder, we think that the 2-wire system is a wise choice. The internationally accepted standard (IEC) for electronics of this kind uses a voltage reference without specifying the exact load it is expected to drive. The reference is this:

0 dB = 1 Volt

This is now the preferred reference for all electronic work except for the telephone company and some parts of the radio and television business. Long distance electronic transmission still requires the 600-ohm standard. If your test gear has a provision for inserting a 600-ohm load, be sure the load is not used when working on TASCAM equipment.

Now that we have given a reference for our "0 dB" point, we can print the funny curve again, with numbers on it, and you can read voltages to go along with the changes in dB.



Simplify the dB and Its Many Variations

When it comes to describing the level of audio signal in a circuit, the whole issue of "dB's" may seem very complicated to anyone but a mathematically skilled engineer. However, by comparing audio signals to water flowing through a pipe (a "circuit"), we can simplify the concept of dB and audio level so that it is less "magic" and more understandable (we hope).

First, let's define our terms for this comparison:

VOLTAGE: It is similar to WATER PRESSURE. If voltage were truly water pressure, we would express it in pounds per square inch. Actually, another term for voltage is "EMF," which stands for "electro motive force," which really is the pressure on the electrons which causes them to flow through a circuit.

IMPEDANCE: It is similar to the RESISTANCE OF THE WATER PIPE TO THE FLOW OF WATER. Electrically, impedance "impedes" or works against the flow of electrons in an AC circuit, so the restriction to water flow caused by the pipe's diameter and internal surface friction is like impedance. Electrical "resistance," while similar to impedance, applies to DC current. A speaker, for example, may have a 3 ohm DC resistance, but an 8 ohm impedance at 1 kHz.

POWER: It is similar to the AMOUNT OF WATER THAT FLOWS THROUGH THE PIPE. If we were actually measuring water level, we might use a unit of volume such as liters, milliliters, gallons, quarts, ounces, etc. With electrical circuits, we use a unit of power — the watt, 1/1000 watt (the milliwatt).

We can consider the pipe to be the electrical input or output circuit. The pipe's diameter determines its resistance to water flow; a smaller diameter pipe (wire) has a higher resistance (analogous to impedance) because it makes it more difficult for the water (electrons) to flow.

If we aim the pipe up in the air and measure the height of water column that emerges from the

end of the pipe, we have a level (power). With a pipe of a given diameter (impedance), the amount of water flowing is proportional to the water pressure (voltage). If you increase the pressure, you increase the height of the water stream emerging from the pipe.

Look at Figure 1 on page 1-12. Note that a 0.775 volt "pump pressure" pushing water through a 600 ohm "pipe" causes the water "level" to reach 1 milliwatt in height. We'll call that level of water (1 milliwatt of power) a level of 0 dBm.

AN ESSENTIAL POINT TO REMEMBER: 0 dBm IS ALWAYS EQUAL TO ONE MILLIWATT. It doesn't matter how much water pressure (voltage) it took to achieve that level, or what pipe diameter (impedance) the water had to flow through ... if the water level reaches 1 milliwatt, the level is 0 dBm. Any other dBm value is merely a relative power level expressed in reference to the 1 mW level.

Look at Figure 2. Here the same 0.775 volt "pump pressure" is pushing water through a pipe of 1200 ohm impedance. Since less water can flow through the smaller pipe, the water level emerging from the pipe is cut in half: 1/2 milliwatt — half the power. Since, with regard to power, half the level is a decrease of 3 dB, the level is now -3 dBm, not 0 dBm. As you can see, **WHEN YOU INCREASE THE IMPEDANCE WITHOUT CHANGING THE VOLTAGE, YOU GET LESS POWER (fewer dBm).** Conversely, if you decrease the impedance (large pipe), you'll increase the power (more dBm).

FORGET THE NOTION THAT dBm REQUIRES 1600 OHM "PIPE". While dBm results from a combination of impedance and voltage, it refers only the end result ... the power (water column height).

Refer to Figure 3. Notice that we can obtain a "level" of 0 dBm with a 1200 ohm pipe ... it simply takes more pump pressure than with a 600 ohm pipe. Since we doubled the impedance relative to Figure 1 (from 600 to 1200 ohms), we also have to increase the voltage to 1.1 volts (multiplying 0.775 V by 1.414, which is the square root of 2). The end result is the same, 1 milliwatt of power (water), which is 0 dBm.

It should now be clear that defining a level in dBm only defines the power. If you want to use dBm to describe a voltage, you'll have to specify a particular impedance or resistance (pipe), which is typically given as 600 ohms, but could be any impedance or resistance. IF YOU HAVE A CIRCUIT WHICH DOES NOT USE MUCH POWER, BUT IS INSTEAD SENSITIVE TO VOLTAGE, EXPRESSING LEVEL IN dBm IS NOT PARTICULARLY USEFUL. For this reason, other "dB" terms have been devised.

A high impedance input will not draw much power from a circuit unless the voltage is increased to a very high level. Why? Remember that the greater the impedance or resistance (the smaller the pipe), the less current can flow. Today, most mixers, power amplifiers, and other signal processors are no longer designed for 600 ohm input impedance. Instead, they have high impedance inputs which are sensitive to the voltage (pressure) of the input signal, not the power (water level).

When you double the level voltage-wise, you increase it 6 dB, whereas if you double the level power-wise, you increase it by 3 dB. The reason for this apparent discrepancy is not all that complex, but it involves some mathematics that we'll omit here to avoid getting too technical. Suffice it to say that the difference has to do with the fact that power is proportional to voltage squared, and "dB" is a logarithmic quantity. To keep the terms and numbers more appropriate to a voltage sensitive circuit, not a power sensitive one, a "dB" term which refers to voltage was developed — "dBV." The "V" in "dBV" denotes "voltage." (The "m" in "dBm" denotes "milliwatt.")

The 0 dBV reference is 1 volt. It was chosen because it's easier to work with than 0.775 volts when manipulating equations. 0 dBV is always associated with 1 volt, regardless of the impedance. It so happens that 0 dBV (voltage) will produce 0 dBm (power) only in a circuit with 1,000 ohms impedance (assuming voltage and current are in phase). Refer to Figure 4.

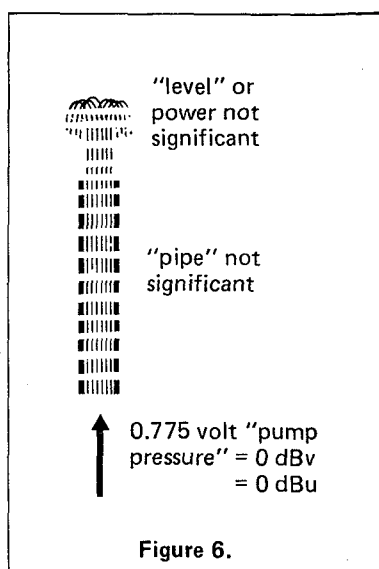
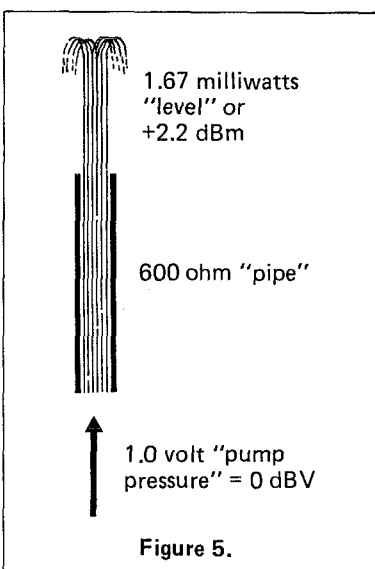
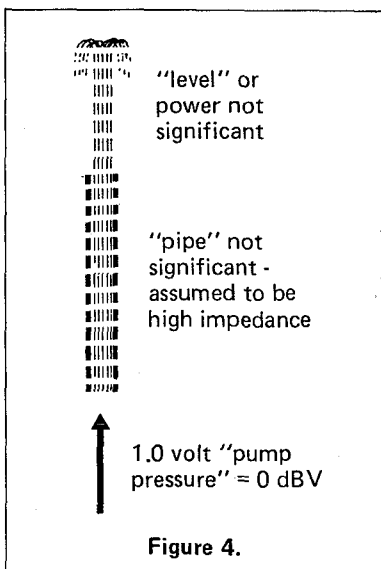
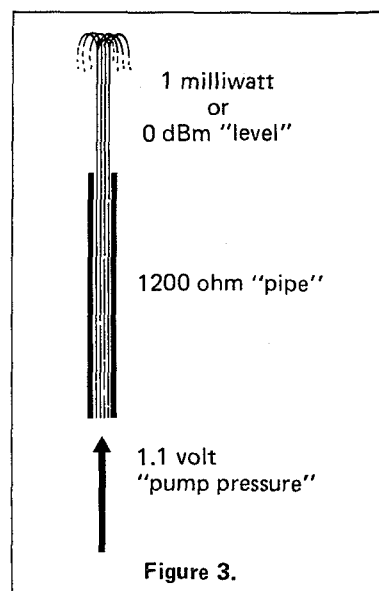
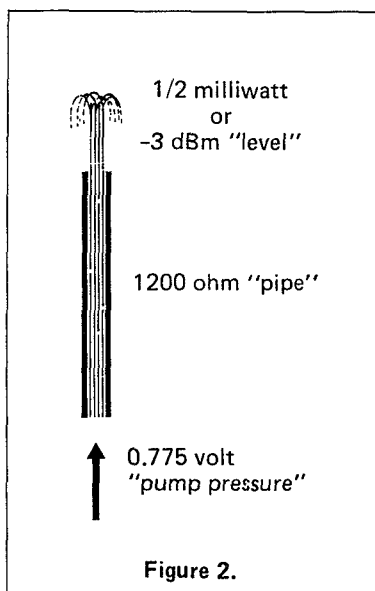
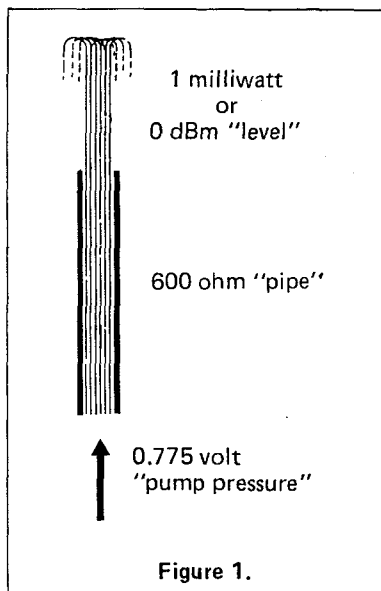
NOTE: The "purist" engineers among you will recognize the fact that all dB numbers always refer to a power level, but in practical terms, dBV is used to describe voltages, regardless of the actual circuit impedance.

TASCAM input and output levels have traditionally been rated in dBV because the equipment has high impedance circuitry which senses voltage, not power. There's only one slight complication in our practice of using dBV values, and it comes up when you interface a piece of TASCAM equipment to equipment which another manufacturer rated using an assumed 600 ohms impedance. The equipment will usually work properly, but the level calibration may be slightly inaccurate due to the differences between the dBm and dBV "0 dB" references. Let's look at a practical example.

Refer to Figure 5. Suppose the TASCAM output is rated at 0 dBV, and the other equipment's input to which the TASCAM output is connected is rated at 0 dBm. Guess what happens. The 0 dBV output (1 volt), upon encountering a lower impedance (600 ohms rather than 1,000 ohms), causes more power to flow ... +2.2 dBm instead of 0 dBm. It's not a big difference, and it can usually be adjusted with a level control — assuming the output circuit is capable of driving 600 ohms (which may or may not be the case). However, the level which causes a "0" indication on the TASCAM output meter will drive the input meter to "+2.2" since it is calibrated based on a 0.775 volt "zero" into 600 ohms assumed impedance.

Refer to Figure 6. To avoid the possible error of 2.2 dB, the term "dBv" was introduced. Like "dBV", "dBv" is used to describe voltage, not power, but 0.775 volts is the "0 dBv" reference. The only difficulty with "dBv" was that many people ignore capitalization and confuse dB "big V" with dB "small v," so the 2.2 dB error persists. For this reason, we are now changing to "dBu" instead of "dBv." They're the same term (0 dBu = 0.775 volts), but hopefully people won't confuse a "u" with a "V".

If a TASCAM output is rated at 0 dBu, it means it puts out 0.775 volts into a high impedance (it may also do so into a low impedance, if so specified). Connect a 0 dBu output to a 0 dBm nominal input, and the meters should match one another.



| 0 dBV = 1 V | Voltage | 0 dBm = 0.775 V/ 600 ohms |
|-----------------------|---------|------------------------------|
| +6 dB | 2 V | +8.2 dB |
| +1.78 dB | 1.228 V | +4 dB* ² |
| 0 dB | 1 V | +2.2 dB |
| -2.2 dB | 0.775 V | 0 dB |
| -6 dB | 0.5 V | -3.8 dB |
| -8.2 dB | 0.388 V | -6 dB |
| * ¹ -10 dB | 0.316 V | -7.8 dB |
| -12 dB | 0.250 V | -9.8 dB |
| -12.2 dB | 0.245 V | -10 dB |
| -20 dB | 0.1 V | -17.8 dB |

Note:

*1. TASCAM STANDARD LEVEL = 0 VU.

*2. Low Impedance System Level = 0 VU.

Impedance Matching and Line Levels

All electronic parts, including cables and non-powered devices (mics, passive mixers and such), have impedance, measurable in ohms (symbol Ω or Z). Impedance is the total opposition a part presents to the flow of signal, and it's important to understand some things

about this value when you are making connections in your mixing system. The outputs of circuits have an impedance rating and so do inputs. What's good? What values are best? It depends on the direction of signal flow, and in theory, it looks like this:



It is generally said that the output impedance (Z) should be as low as possible. 100 ohms, 10 ohms. The lower, the better, in theory. A circuit with a low output impedance will offer a low resistance to the passage of signal, and thus will be able to supply many multiple connections without a loss in performance or a voltage drop in any part of the total signal pathway. Low impedance values can be achieved economically by using transistors and integrated circuits, but other considerations are still a problem in practice.

1. The practical power supply is not infinitely large. At some point, even if the circuit is capable of supplying more energy you will run out of "juice".
2. Long before this happens, you may burn out other parts of the circuit. The output impedance may be close to the theoretically ideal "ohms" but many parts in the practical circuit are not. Passing energy through a resistance generates heat and too much current will literally burn parts right off the circuit board if steps are not taken to prevent catastrophic failure.
3. Even if the circuit does not destroy itself, too high a demand for current may seriously affect the quality of the audio. Distortion will rise, frequency response will suffer, and you will get poor results.

Inputs should have very high impedance numbers, as high as possible (100,000 ohms, 1 million ohms, more, if it can be arranged). A high resistance to the flow of signal at first sounds bad, but you are not going to build the gear. If the designer tells you his input will work properly and has no need for a large amount of signal, you can assume that he means what he says. For you, a high input impedance is a virtue. It means that the circuit will do its job with a minimum of electrical energy at a beginning. The most "economical" electronic devices in use today have input impedances of many millions of ohms. Test gear, for example, voltmeters of good quality must not draw signal away from what they are measuring, or they will disturb the proper operation of the circuit. A design engineer needs to see what is going on in his design without destroying it, so he must have an "efficient" device to measure with.



The classic procedure for measuring output impedance is to reduce the load's impedance until the output voltage drops 6 dB (half the original power) and note what the load value is. In theory, you now have a load impedance that is equal to the output impedance. If you

gradually reduce the load (increase the input impedance), the dB reading will return slowly to its original value. How much drop is acceptable? What load will be left when an acceptable drop is read on the meter?

Traditionally, when the load value (input Z) is approximately seven times the output impedance, the needle is still a little more than 1 dB lower than the original reading.

Most technicians say, "1 dB, not bad, that's acceptable." We at TASCAM must say that we do not agree. We think that a seven-to-one ratio of input (7) to output (1) is not a high enough ratio, and here's why:

1. The measurement is usually made at a mid-range frequency and does not show true loss at the frequency extremes. What about the drop at 20 Hz or 30 kHz?
2. All outputs are not measured at the same time. Most people don't have twenty meters, we do. Remember, everybody plays together when you record and the circuit demands, in practice, are simultaneous. All draw power at the same time.

Because of the widely misunderstood rule of thumb — the seven-to-one ratio — we will give you the values for outputs impedance.

True output impedance

Even though the true output impedance may be low, say 100 ohms, it takes a lab to check the rule of thumb, so for the practical reasons we have explained, the use of the ratio method of impedance calculation must be changed to a higher ratio. We prefer 100:1 if possible and we consider 50:1 to be the minimum ratio that we think safe. Because of this, we will give you a number for ohms that you can match, Minimum Load Impedance. No calculations, we have made them already.

Minimum load impedance

MAKE CERTAIN THAT YOU CONNECT NO TOTAL LOAD IMPEDANCE LOWER (numerically) THAN THIS FIGURE.

LINE OUTPUT: 10k ohms

Nominal load impedance

Our specifications usually show 10,000 ohms as a Nominal Load Impedance. This load will assure optimum performance. Remember, any impedance lower than 10,000 ohms is more load.

Input impedance

Input impedance is more straight forward and requires only one number. Here is the value for the 58.

LINE INPUT: 50k ohms

If one output is to be "Y" connected to two inputs the total impedance of the two inputs must not be lower than the minimum load impedance, mentioned above, and if it becomes necessary to increase the number of inputs with slight reduction of the load specifications, you must check for a drop in level, a loss of headroom, low frequency response, or else suffer from a bad recording. If one input is 10,000 ohms, another of the same 10,000 ohms will give you a total input impedance (load) of 5,000 ohms. To avoid calculations you can do the following when you have two inputs to connect to one output.

Take the lower value of the two input impedance and divide it in half. If the number you have is greater than the minimum load impedance, you can connect both at the same time. Remember, we are not using the true output impedance we are using the adjusted number, the minimum, output load impedance.

If you must have exact values here is the formula for dissimilar 2 loads or inputs:

$$R_x = \frac{R_1 \times R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

When you have more than two loads (inputs), just dividing the lowest impedance by the number of inputs will not be accurate unless they are all the same size. But if you still get a safe load then the minimum load impedance by this method, you can connect without worry.

If you must have exact values, here is the formula for more than 2 loads or inputs:

$$R_x = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{R_n}}$$

R_x = Value of Total Load

Finding impedance values on other brands of equipment

When you are reading an output impedance specification, you will occasionally see this kind of statement

Minimum load impedance = x ohms

or

Maximum load impedance = x ohms

These two statements are trying to say the same thing, and can be very confusing. The minimum load impedance says: please don't make the NUMBER of ohms you connect to this output any lower than x ohms. That's the lowest NUMBER. The second statement changes the logic, but says the exact same thing.

Maximum load impedance refers to the idea of the LOAD instead of the number, and says: please don't make the LOAD any heavier. How do you increase the load? Make the number lower for ohms. Maximum load means minimum ohms, so read carefully.

When the minimum/maximum statement is made, you can safely assume that the manufacturer has already done his calculations, and the number given in ohms does not have to be multiplied. You can MATCH the value of your input to this number of ohms successfully; but as always, higher ohms will be okay (less load).

Occasionally, a manufacturer will want to show you that 7 times the output Z is not quite the right idea and will give the output impedance and the correct load this way, they will call the output impedance the True Output Impedance and then will give the recommended minimum LOAD impedance. It may be a higher or lower ratio than 7 times and will be whatever the specific circuit in question requires.

Reference Levels

We should talk about one more reference, a practical one.

Anyone who has ever watched a VU meter bounce around while recording knows that "real sound" is not a fixed value of energy. It varies with time and can range from "no reading" to "good grief" in less time than it takes to blink. In order to give you the numbers for gain, headroom and noise in our mixers, we must use a steady signal that will not jump around. We use a tone of 1000 Hz and start it out at a level of -60 dB at the mic input, our beginning reference level. All levels after the mic input will be higher than this, showing that they have been amplified, and eventually we will come to the last output of the mixer — the line-out and the reference signal there will be -10 dB, our "line level" reference.

From this you can see that if your sound is louder than 94 dB spl or — your mic will produce more electricity from a sound of 94 dB spl than -60 dB, all these numbers will be changed. We have set this reference for mic level fairly low. If you examine the sound power or sound pressure level (spl) chart on page 1-6 you will see that most musical instruments are louder on the average than 94 dB spl, and most commercial mics will produce more electricity than the -60 dB for a sound pressure of 94 dB, so you should have no problems getting up of "0 VU" or your recorder.

We should also make a point of mentioning that the maximum number on the chart on page 1-6 represents "peak power" and not average power. The reason? Consider if even some momentary part of your recording is distorted, it will force a re-recording and it is wisest to be prepared for the highest values and pressure even if they only happen "once in a while". On this point, statistics are not going to be useful, the average sound pressure is not the whole story. The words themselves can be used as an example. Say the word "statistics" close to the mic while watching the meters and the peak LED level detector. Then say the word "average". What you are likely to see are two good examples of the problems encountered in the "real world" of recording. The strong peaks in the "s" and "t" sounds will probably cause the LED's to flash long before the VU meter reads anywhere

near "zero" while the vowel sounds that make up the word "average" will cause no such drastic action.

To allow peaks to pass undistorted through a chain of audio parts, the individual gain stages must all have a large reserve capability. If the average is X, then $X + 20$ dB is usually safe for speech, but extremely percussive sounds may require as much as 40 dB of "reserve" to insure good results. Woodblocks, castanets, latin percussion (guiro, afuche) are good examples of this short term violence that will show a large difference between "LED flash" and actual meter movement. When you are dealing with this kind of sound, believe the LED, it is telling you the truth.

If you are going to record very loud sounds you may produce more electrical power from the mic than the mixer can handle as an input. How can you estimate this in advance? Well, the spl chart and the mic sensitivity are tied together on a one-to-one basis. If 94 dB spl in gives -60 dB (1 mV) out, 104 dB spl will give you -50 dB out, and so forth. Use the number on our chart for sound power together with your mic sensitivity ratings to find out how much level, then check that against the maximum input levels for the various jacks on your mixer. If your mic is in

fact producing -10 dB or line level, there is nothing wrong with plugging it into the line-level connections on the mixer. You will need an adaptor, but after that it will work!

Most mic manufacturers give the output of their mics as a minus-so-many-dB number, but they don't give the loudness of the test sound in dB, it's stated as a pressure reference (usually 10 microbars of pressure). This reference can be found on our sound chart. It is 94 dB spl, 10 microbars, 10 dynes per cm^2 or 1 Newton per square meter. For mics, the reference "0" is 1 volt (dB). So, if the sound is 94 dB spl the electrical output of the mic is given as -60 dB, meaning so many dB less than the reference 0 = 1 volt. In practice you will see levels of -60 dB for low level dynamics, up to about -40 dB or slightly higher for the better grade of condenser mics available today. TASCAM recorders and mixers work at a level of -10 dB referenced to 1 volt (.316 volt) so, for 94 dB spl, a mic with a reference output of -60 dB will need 50 dB of amplification from your mixer or recorder in order to see "0 VU" (-10 dB) on your meter. Now, if the sound you want to record is louder than 94 dB spl, the output from the mic will be more powerful and you will need less amplification from your mixer to make the needles on your recorder read "0 VU".

Levels on Tape

The level of a signal recorded on tape is not measured in dBm, dBV, dBu, or VU. All those units refer to voltage or power levels, but signals are stored on tape as changing magnetic flux levels. When that stored flux is drawn past a coil of wire (the tape head), a voltage is induced. A Weber is a unit of "moving flux" ... it describes the amount of magnetism on the tape that will induce 1 volt when the tape passes a specified single-turn coil during one second. A Weber involves such a large amount of magnetism that we use the nanoWeber as a practical unit. It is one thousandth of one millionth of a Weber.

Actually, tape recorded level is expressed in terms of that voltage produced in an idealized tape head at a given rate of change in the magnetic field on the tape, with a given track width (specified as 1 meter, which is about 500 times wider than a typical reel-to-reel track and over a thousand times wider than a cassette track). Thus, the actual voltage level induced in your tape head depends not only on the changing magnetic flux stored on the tape, but also on the tape speed, track width and head design. The tape machine manufacturer will take care of these details by designing his machine based on a standardized level recorded on the tape.

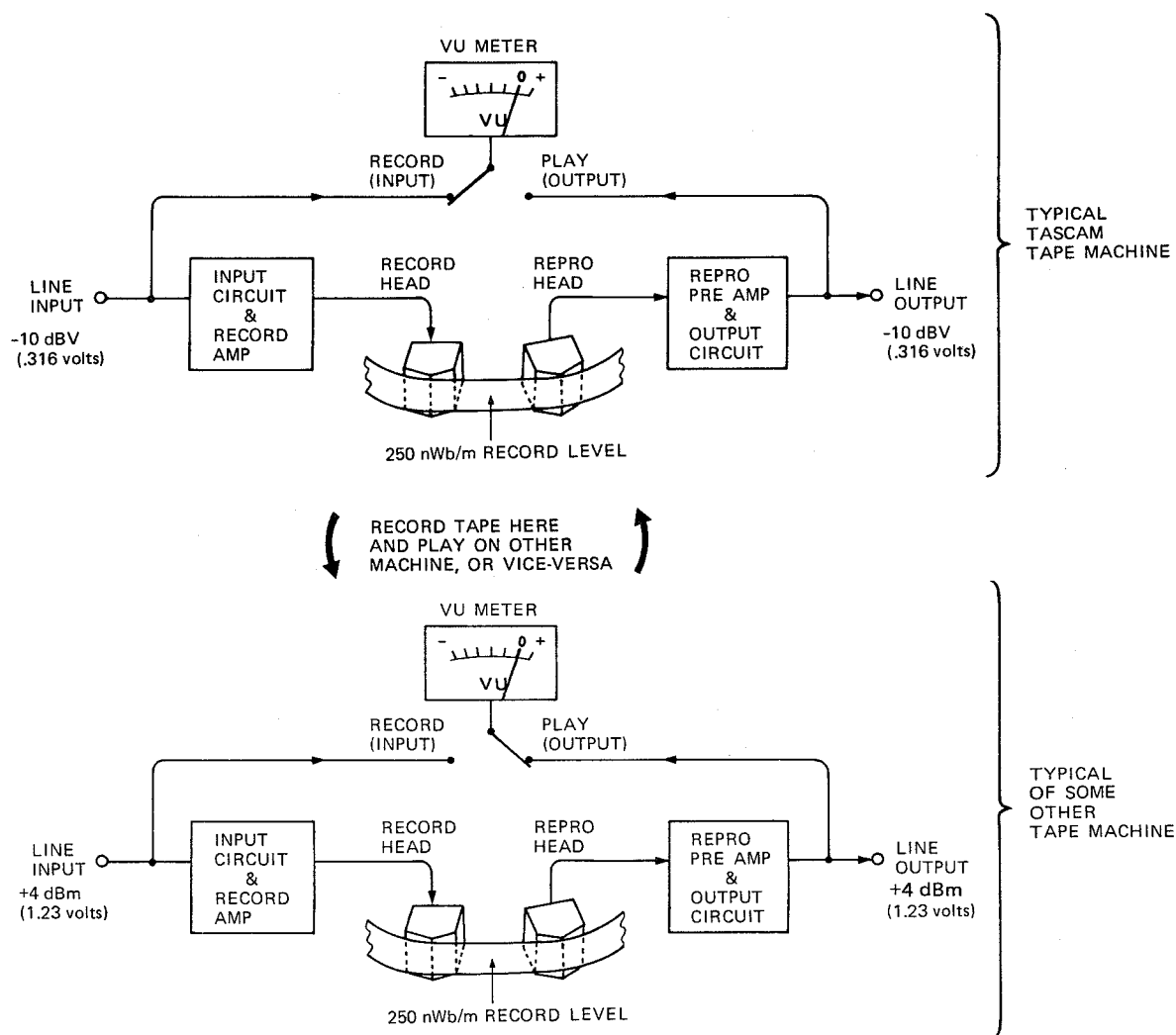


Figure 7.

There are three commonly used reference flux levels for open reel tape machines: 185, 250 and 320 nanoWebers per meter. 185 nWb/m used to be the standard record level for most tapes, and remains so on consumer equipment. Then higher output (elevated level) tapes came along at 250 nWb/m. The 320 nWb/m level is a high output tape level used primarily on IEC (European) equipment. TASCAM machines, and most other professional tape machines, use 250 nWb/m as the standard tape reference level.

A standard reference level of 250 nWb/m means this: a "0" reading on the tape machine's record level meter will cause the tape to be magnetized to a flux density that corresponds to 250 nWb/m. It makes no difference what electrical signal level is required to get that "0 VU" reading; the tape will have a standard magnetic level. Consider the significance.

Various manufacturers' open reel tape machines can be calibrated so that a 250 nWb/m nominal flux (or 185 or 320 nWb/m) is recorded with nominal signal levels at the tape machine's RECORD IN jacks. The nominal signal level (corresponding to a "0" reading on the tape machine's meters) might be -10 dBV (316 millivolts), 0 dBm (1 milliwatt), 0 dBu (0.775 volts), 0 dBV (1 volt), +4 dBm (1.23 volts), +8 dBm (1.95 volts), or any level. This means you can take a tape made on a TASCAM machine, with -10 dBV nominal input and output levels, and play that same tape on another model of tape machine with +4 dBm nominal input and output levels. If you had recorded a test tone at "0" level on the TASCAM machine's meters, it will play back at "0" level on the other equipment. (Refer to Figure 7.) The opposite is also true . . . tapes made on other machines with different nominal input and output signal levels can be played back at the correct level on the TASCAM machine . . . so long as both machines use the same standard 250 nWb/m reference level on the tape. The standard reference level for cassette recorders is 160 nWb/m, while Dolby* calibration level for cassettes is 200 nWb/m. Again, any cassette recorded at a "0 VU" or "0 dB" input level with 160 nWb/m reference level on the tape (or Dolby cassette at 200 nWb/m) will play back on any other cassette machine at "0" level, regardless of the actual input and output audio

signal levels. In fact, there's only a maximum of 3 dB to 6 dB difference between any of the standard flux levels on any tape, as measured on the tape machine's meters, so compatibility in level should never be a significant factor.

NOTE: If you're using a test tape for level calibration, be sure you're playing it at the specified speed. Playing a 0 dB reference tone on a 7.5 ips test tape at 15 ips will cause the output meter to show +3 dB because twice as much magnetic flux is moving past the head each second. The track format or track width have little bearing here because most test tapes are recorded "full track," with the tone across the entire tape width, so the head will get to "sample" an appropriate amount of flux for its calibration standard.

*Dolby is the registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corp., San Francisco, CA.

1-11. MORE INFORMATION IS AVAILABLE

We've tried to give you representative examples of some of the things you can do to get started, and you'll discover many more — some by way of happy coincidence, others after long hours of

concentration. If you're just getting into recording and want to expand your knowledge, more information is available.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Beranek, Leo L.
ACOUSTICS
McGraw-Hill Book Co. Inc.
New York, New York
1954

More concerned with exact formulae, but still very readable. It is not necessary to do calculations to gain knowledge from this textbook.

Beranek, Leo L.
MUSIC, ACOUSTICS AND ARCHITECTURE
John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
New York, N.Y.
1962

A technical survey on concert halls with much documentation. Worth reading, this author has many useful stories to tell about the interface of science and art.

Clifford, Martin
MICROPHONES: HOW THEY WORK AND HOW TO USE THEM
Tab Books
Blue Ridge Summit, Pa.
1977

An excellent low cost book for the beginner on microphone types, history and construction. The explanations given assume no prior knowledge and are very complete. Recommended.

Everest F. Alton
ACOUSTIC TECHNIQUES FOR HOME AND STUDIO (3rd. Printing)
Tab Books
Blue Ridge Summit, Pa.
1978

Low cost basic book. This book on studio acoustics is the easiest to read and understand of all the textbooks on the subject, and comes closest to dealing with the actual problems encountered in the home studio.

Everest F. Alton
HANDBOOK OF MULTICHANNEL RECORDING
Tab Books
Blue Ridge Summit, Pa.
1976

A survey volume containing good information on all topics. Very clearly written and recommended for a beginner.

Nisbett, Alec
THE TECHNIQUES OF THE SOUND STUDIO FOR RADIO, TELEVISION AND FILM
Hastings House Publishers, Inc.
New York, N.Y.
1976

Although not specifically written for the tape recordist, this 500 page book is well worth its cost. Very useful practical advice if you are working with speech (drama, commercial announcing, etc.)

Nisbett, Alec
THE USE OF MICROPHONES
Hastings House
New York, N.Y.
1976

The authors point of view is basically radio, but has ability to communicate difficult concepts is very good. Well illustrated.

Olsen, Harry F.
ACOUSTICAL ENGINEERING
D. Van Nostrand Company
New York, N.Y.
1957

and

Olsen, Harry F.
MUSICAL ENGINEERING
D. Van Nostrand Company
New York, N.Y.
1959

Anything you can find by this writer is worthwhile, and the latter book in particular will give scientific answers to questions (what frequency is the note D₄ above middle C?) and can be used to translate one "language" into another. Extremely valuable.

Rettinger, Michael
ACOUSTIC DESIGN AND NOISE CONTROL, VOL. 1
Chemical Publishing Company
New York, N.Y.
1977

Although this book is highly technical, the writing is very lucid and many examples are given to go along with the math. This writer is not afraid to draw conclusions and give his reasons for doing so in simple language.

Runstein, Robert E.
MODERN RECORDING TECHNIQUES
Howard W. Sams and Co.
Indianapolis, Indiana
1974

The first low cost book on studio practice. The equipment dealt with is somewhat outdated, but the theory is still the same. Excellent basic survey.

Tremaine, Howard M.
THE AUDIO CYCLOPEDIA
Howard W. Sams and Co.
Indianapolis, Indiana
1976

This 1,700 page reference work is sure to contain the answer to almost any technical question you can think of. The writing assumes much prior knowledge and this book should be used with others that are more basic in their writing style if you are new to the field of scientific audio.

SOME MAGAZINES OF INTEREST:

"db" — THE SOUND ENGINEERING MAGAZINE
1120 Old Country Road
Plainview, N.Y. 11803

"MODERN RECORDING"
14 Vanderventer Avenue
Port Washington, N.Y. 11050

"RE/P" — RECORDING ENGINEER/PRODUCER
1850 Whitley Street, Suite 220
Hollywood, Ca. 90028

2. SPECIFICATIONS

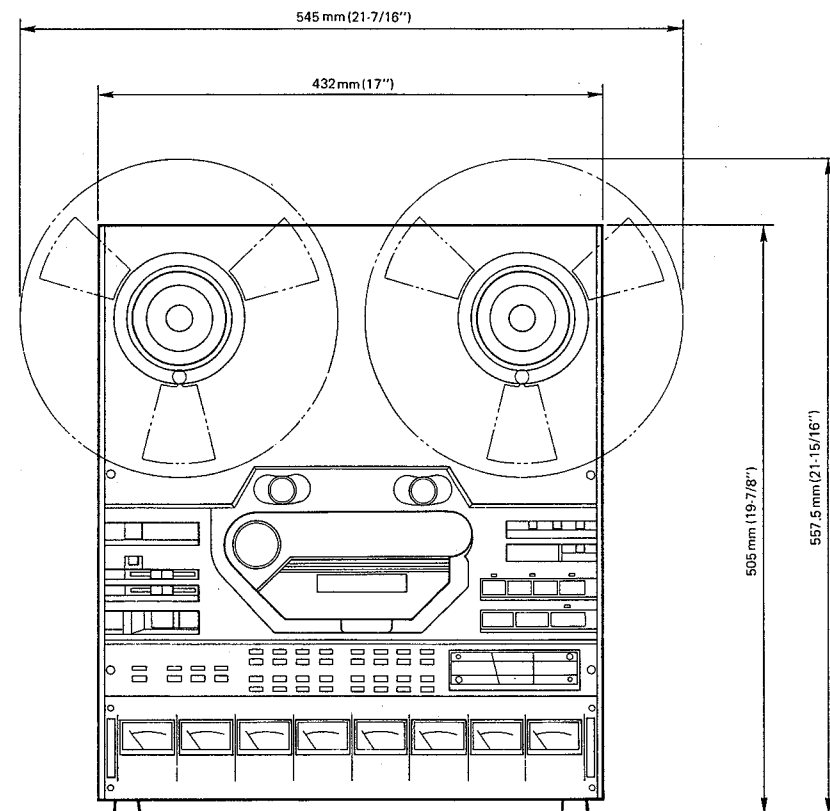
MECHANICAL

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Tape: | 1/2 inch, 1.5 mil, low noise, high output tape |
| Track Format: | 8-track, 8-channel, track width 0.039 inch (1.0 mm) |
| Reel Size: | 10-1/2" NAB (large) Hub |
| Tape Speed: | 15 inches per second (38 cm/sec.) |
| Speed Accuracy: ¹⁾ | ±0.5 % deviation |
| Pitch Control: | |
| Coarse: | ±15 % |
| Fine: | ±0.7 % |
| Wow and Flutter: ¹⁾ | ±0.08 % peak (DIN/IEC/ANSI, weighted) ±0.12 % peak (DIN/IEC/ANSI, unweighted) 0.04 % RMS (JIS/NAB, weighted) 0.07 % RMS (JIS/NAB, unweighted) |
| Fast Wind Time: | 120 seconds for 10-1/2" reel, 2400 feet |
| Spooling Wind Time: | 370 seconds for 10-1/2" reel, 2400 feet |
| Start Time: | Less than 0.8 sec. to reach standard Wow and Flutter |
| Tape Drive System: | |
| Capstan motor: | FG (frequency generator), DC, direct drive motor |
| Reel motors: | Slotless DC motor x 2 |
| Head Configuration: | 3 heads; erase, record and reproduce x 2 |
| Tape Cue: | Manual and automatic (RTZ and STC) |
| Motion Sensing: | 0.5 sec. ±0.15 sec. delay time stop to next motion; tension servo system |
| Mounting: | Standard 19-inch rack with optional RM-500 |
| Remote Control: | Full/Basic functions available with optional RC-51/RC-50 |
| Dimensions: | 432(W) x 505(H) x 316(D) mm (17 x 19-7/8 x 12-7/16 inch) |
| Weight: | 35 kg (77-3/16 lbs.) |

ELECTRICAL

| | |
|---|---|
| Line Input: | |
| Input impedance: | 50k ohms, unbalanced |
| Maximum Source Impedance: | 2.5k ohms |
| Nominal input level: | -10 dBV (0.3 V) |
| Max. input level: | +19 dBV (8.9 V) |
| Line Output: | |
| Output impedance: | 500 ohms, unbalanced |
| Min. load impedance: | 10k ohms, unbalanced |
| Nominal load impedance: | 50k ohms, unbalanced |
| Nominal output level: | -10 dBV (0.3 V) |
| Max. output level: | +19 dBV (8.9 V) |
| Bias Frequency: | 150 kHz |
| Equalization: | ∞ μsec + 35 μsec IEC standard (International Electrotechnical Commission), CCIR (International Radio Consultative Committee) |
| Record Level Calibration: | 0 VU reference; 250 nWb/m tape flux level |
| Frequency Response: | |
| Record/Reproduce: ³⁾ | 40 Hz – 20 kHz, ±3 dB at 0 VU 40 Hz – 20 kHz, ±3 dB at -10 VU |
| Sync and Reproduce: ²⁾ | 40 Hz – 20 kHz, ±3 dB |
| Total Harmonic Distortion: ³⁾ | 0.8 % at 0 VU, 1000 Hz, 250 nWb/m 3 % at 12 dB above 0 VU, 1000 Hz, 1000 nWb/m |
| Signal-to-Noise Ratio: ³⁾ | At a reference of 1 kHz, at 12 dB above 0 VU, 1000 nWb/m 69 dB A weighted (NAB), 62 dB unweighted 107 dB A weighted (NAB), with dbx* 100 dB unweighted, with dbx |
| Adjacent Channel Crosstalk (Overall): ³⁾ | Better than 50 dB down at 1000 Hz, 0 VU |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Erase: ³⁾ | Better than 70 dB at 1000 Hz, +10 VU reference |
| Headroom: | |
| Recording Amplifier: | Better than 26 dB above 0 VU at 1 kHz |
| Reproduce Amplifier: | Better than 44 dB above 0 VU at 1 kHz |
| Connectors: | |
| Line inputs and outputs: | R.C.A. jacks |
| Remote control unit: | Multi-pin type connector |
| Accessory (ext. sync): | Multi-pin type connector |
| dbx unit (control signal): | Multi-pin type connector |
| Power Requirement: | 100/120/220/240 V AC, 50/60 Hz, (General Export Model) 180 W 120 V AC, 60 Hz, (USA/ Canada Model) 180 W 220 V AC, 50 Hz, (Europe Model) 180 W 240 V AC, 50 Hz, (UK/AUS Model) 180 W |



In these specifications, 0 dBV is referenced to 1.0 Volt. Actual voltage levels also are given in parenthesis. To calculate the 0 dB = 0.775 Volt reference level (i.e., 0 dBm in a 600-ohm circuit) add 2.2 dB to the listed dB value; i.e., -10 dB re: 1 V = -7.8 dB re: 0.775 V.

- 1) Specifications were determined using STL Test Tape 62 or equivalent.
- 2) Specifications were determined using TEAC Test Tape YTT-1144SP.
- 3) Specifications were determined using TEAC Test Tape YTT-8163.

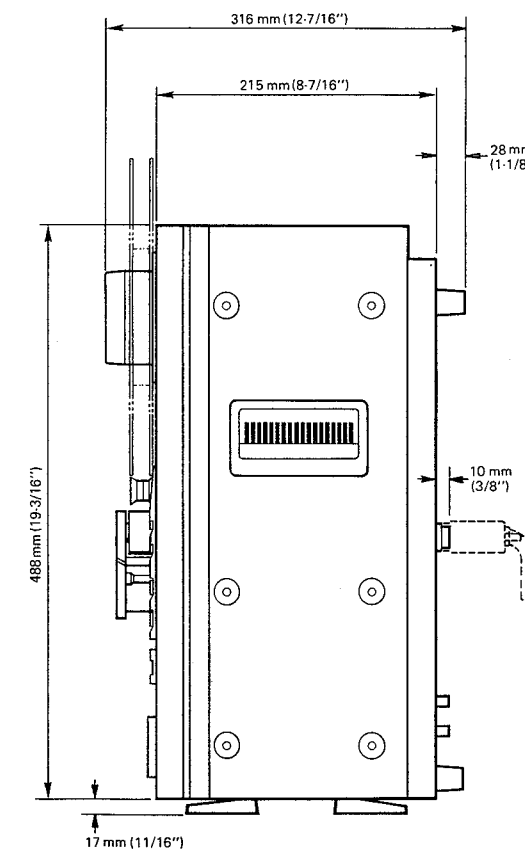
Changes in specifications and features may be made without notice or obligation.
*dbx is a trademarks of dbx Inc.

Options for:

Mounting (EIA standard 19 inch rack): RM-500 Rack Mount Angle Kit, CS-607 Console Rack and T-0804 Blank Panel.

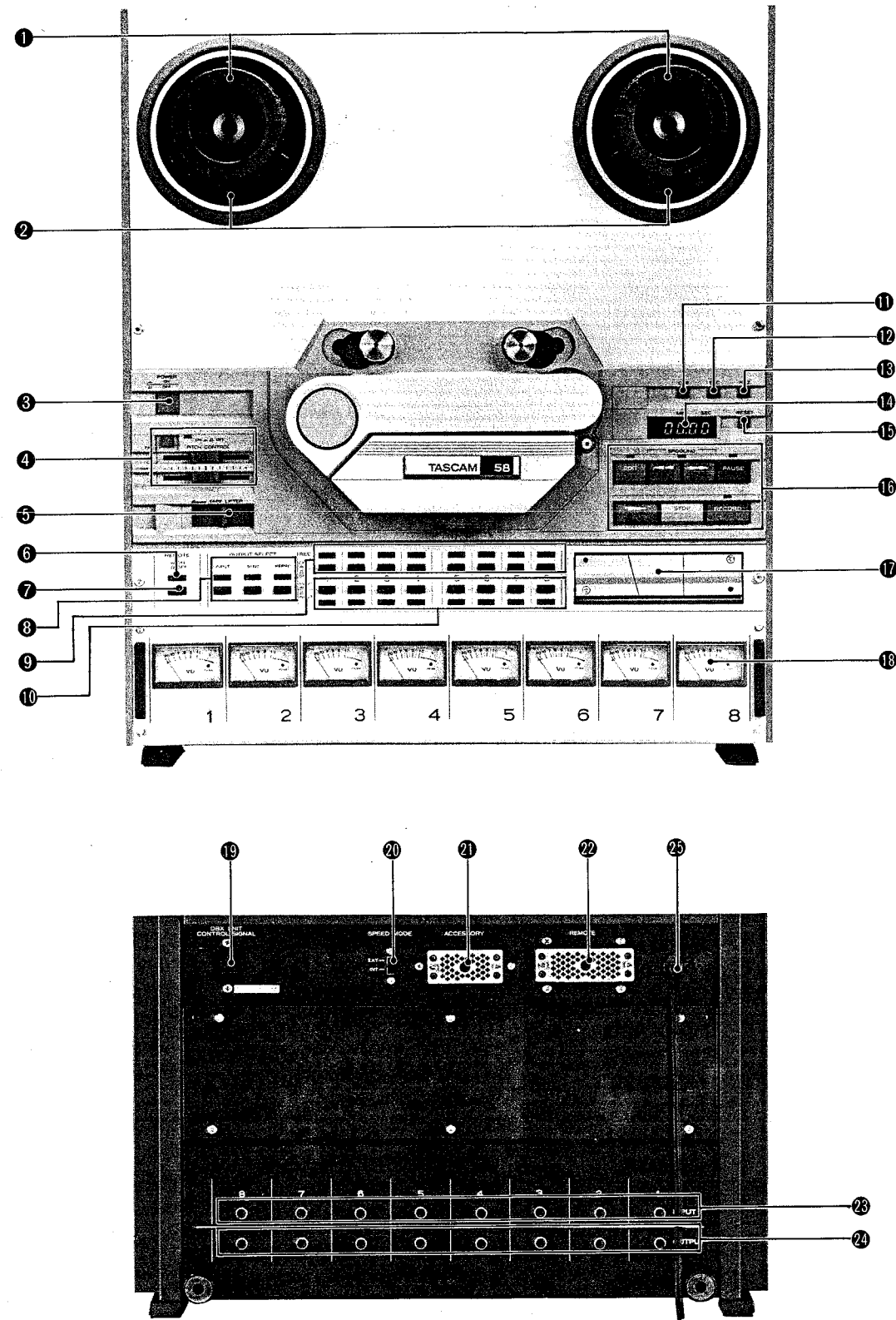
Remote control: Full function transfer with RC-51, Transport control transfer with RC-50.

Tape mounting: RE-1013 TASCAM Metal Reel.



Note:
Since the connectors, because of their size, protrude well beyond the feet of the deck, be sure they are not damaged in any way when laying the 58 on its back, and by all means, don't forget to allow ample space between the 58 and the wall when planning layout and set-up in your studio. For exact dimensions, refer to the illustration on page 3-7 and 4-11.

3. FEATURES AND CONTROLS



1 NAB Hub Adaptors

These large hub adaptors are permanently mounted, and are for use with reels up to 10-1/2 inches in diameter. Rotate the adaptor ring clockwise to fully tighten the reel.

2 Reel Tables

Only 1/2" tapes are to be used. We recommend using the same size and type of reel for both the supply and takeup sides so that the servo system maintains proper tape tension.

3 POWER Switch

This switch turns on the AC power to the unit. As soon as power is turned on: the VU meters are illuminated, the digital counter indicates "00.00" and the PAUSE LED begins flashing at a rate of 1 Hz. After about 3 seconds, the PAUSE LED turns off, indicating the machine's logic circuitry has been initialized (i.e., all the control lines have achieved stand-by status).

4 PITCH CONTROL Switch and Sliders

When the PITCH CONTROL switch is off, the adjacent LED is also off, indicating the 58 is in fixed pitch mode and will play or record at 15 ips exactly. When the switch is on, the LED turns on, and the COARSE and FINE adjustment sliders may be used to change the tape speed. Sliding the controls to the right (+) increases record/play speed, while sliding them to the left (-) decreases the speed. The range of pitch adjustment is $\pm 0.7\%$ for the FINE slider, and $\pm 15\%$ for the COARSE slider. For the most stable operation at exactly 15 ips (38 cm/sec), be sure to turn off the PITCH CONTROL switch. Synchronization from exterior equipment can be performed, irrespective of the PITCH CONTROL on/off settings, when:

- 1) The SPEED MODE switch on the rear panel is set to EXT.
- 2) An external control signal is actually being received.
- 3) A synchronous pulse of 9600 Hz, 2 V or more (nominal) is applied.

If these conditions are met, the LED adjacent to the PITCH CONTROL switch will begin flashing to indicate that synchronization from an external synchronizer/controller is possible. When the LED turns off, it is signifying that the synchronous pulse being received is so "off" the nominal value that exterior synchronization can not be effectuated.

5 TAPE LIFTER Lever

Sliding this lever slightly to the left, while the machine is in the fast forward or rewind mode, disables the muting circuit (i.e., the line outputs are no longer muted). Sliding the lever further to the left progressively retracts the tape lifters so the tape contacts the heads, allowing monitoring of the tape to find a cue (slate tone) or the end of a program during a high speed wind.

CAUTION: Sliding the TAPE LIFTER lever to monitor tape during a high speed wind will cause high-level, very high frequency audio signals to appear at the 58 outputs. Be sure that you turn down the level of your monitor speaker amplifier prior to operating the TAPE LIFTER lever so that speaker components will not be damaged by excess high frequency energy. It's your responsibility to protect your monitors.

6 REMOTE LED Indicator

This light emitting diode turns on when the REMOTE switch is turned on. It indicates that remote operation from the RC-51 is possible.

7 REMOTE Pushbutton

Latch this button in the ON position in order to use RC-51 Full Function Remote Control Unit which interfaces to the REMOTE connector on the 58 rear panel.

The REMOTE on-off switch, when on, activates the RC-51 and permits transfer of the OUTPUT SELECT, REC and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) functions from the 58 to the RC-51. The switch has no effect on the transport controls: even when off, the transport controls (except EDIT), auto locator (CUE, STC, RTZ), digital counter and RESET functions can always be remote-controlled from the RC-51 as well as the RC-50 Transport Remote Control Unit. In record or record/pause mode, a momentary muting circuit prevents clicks from reaching the 58 line output while the REMOTE switch is operated. If the 58 is in the record/pause, record ready or record mode, it will automatically enter stop mode if the REMOTE on-off switch is operated. This avoids the chance of accidental tape erasure in the event of improper remote unit or transport function switch settings.

NOTE: Be sure to turn the 58 off before connecting the remote control unit. Also be sure to turn this REMOTE pushbutton off when the remote unit is not in use.

⑧ OUTPUT SELECT Switches

These 3 switches determine which signal is to be fed to the VU meters and output jacks, as follows:

INPUT: Selects the input to the track (for alignment).

SYNC: Selects the record/sync head signal for synchronous reproduction, or the input signal, depending on the record or reproduce status of the machine, on the setting of the track's REC function switch, and on the setting of the track's pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switch, as explained in subsequent paragraphs. This setting is the one used most often during production.

REPRO: Selects signal from the repro head. Used during alignment, and can be used for mixdown.

⑨ REC Function Switches and LEDs

These 8 switches determine whether a particular track will enter record mode when the RECORD and play (▶) buttons are pressed. If the machine is already in record ready mode, engaging a REC function switch will place the track in record. With the switch up (OFF), no recording is possible on the track, and the track's REC LED is off. With the switch down (ON), the track is able to record and, if the machine is in record ready mode (after pressing RECORD and play (▶)), or if it is in record/pause mode (after pressing RECORD and PAUSE), the LED will stay on. If the machine is in any other mode with the REC function switch down, the LED will flash on and off to indicate the track is ready to record.

Assuming the "SYNC" OUTPUT SELECT switch is engaged, whenever a track's REC function switch is up (OFF), that channel's output will be derived from the record/sync head regardless of the machine's record or play status, permitting safe, synchronous playback during inserts or overdubs. When the REC function switch is down (ON), that channel's output will depend on the associated pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switch.

⑩ Pre-Load (SYNC/INPUT) Switches

When making an insert (punch-in), the performer needs to hear synchronous playback from the track (via the record/sync head) up to the point recording is initiated. Then the performer

must hear himself. For this function, any number of tracks can be pre-loaded by setting the pre-load switch(es) to SYNC.

SYNC can also be used for making overdubs, although when making an overdub, the performer usually needs to hear himself continuously playing (or singing or speaking) in sync with previously recorded tracks prior to and during the overdub. Setting the pre-load switch(es) to INPUT accomplishes this goal. For further details, refer to the "Operation" section of this manual.

NOTES:

1. Even when the SYNC switch is depressed, and both the REC function and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches are on (for sync repro/record operation), the INPUT signal always appears at the output terminals when you are not recording and when sync reproduction is not possible. That is, you will hear the input when the transport is in stop mode, fast winding modes, or during STC and RTZ searches.
2. The output is momentarily muted when the SYNC switch is actuated (about 1/2 second) to prevent switching noise.
3. When the REC function switch is turned on, an LED begins flashing to indicate that the unit is in the record ready mode. Steady illumination of this LED means the unit is recording.
4. When the pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switch is set to SYNC (switch down), an LED lights if the RECORD button is off; the LED turns off when record mode is engaged. The pre-load switches have no effect if the REC function switch is off.

⑪ CUE Pushbutton

Press this button to set a cue point. The cue is not actually placed on the tape; instead, the 58 "remembers" the precise position of the tape counter at the moment the CUE button was pressed, and will return to that point whenever the STC button is subsequently pressed (Search-To-Cue). Until a "cue" is entered, the machine will assume a "00.00" cue point. Whatever cue point had been memorized remains valid until a new cue is established by again pressing the CUE button.

⑫ STC Pushbutton

Pressing the STC button activates the search-to-cue function, which winds tape rapidly forward (or rewinds) and stops at the established cue point (which must previously have been entered using the CUE button). The search-to-cue operation may be commanded from any tape motion status (i.e., from stop mode, or during play, rewind, etc.).

⑬ RTZ Pushbutton

Pressing the RTZ button activates the return-to-zero function, which causes the transport to fast wind to "00.00" on the tape counter. The RTZ button, like the STC button, can be activated from any tape motion status.

⑭ Digital Counter Display

The counter displays the elapsed time of the tape, as wound from the initial "00.00" point. The counter measures linear tape footage, then computes elapsed time based on a 15 ips (38 cm/sec) play/record speed. Thus, even if the tape is actually wound to a cue point at high speed, the counter will indicate the correct running time. The maximum time displayed is 99 minutes, 59 seconds in either direction. When counting in reverse direction (prior to the "00.00" point), a minus (-) sign is displayed at the left of the counter. The counter will indicate "00.00" when power is first turned on, or when the RESET button is pressed.

⑮ RESET Pushbutton

Pressing the RESET button resets the tape counter to "00.00". Because RESET does not clear the information stored as the cue point, the memorized cue time remains as set, even when the counter displays "00.00". However, the cue is memorized as a time relative to "00.00", so the actual cue point (the location on the tape at which the machine will stop) will change if the counter is reset to a different zero point.

⑯ Transport Controls

EDIT Pushbutton

The EDIT button has no effect unless pressed when the machine is in stop mode or pause mode. Then the EDIT LED turns on to indicate the unit is in edit mode.

If EDIT is pressed when tape is stopped, the reel motor brakes are disengaged and a small, proportional amount of back tension is held by each

reel motor so that the reels may be moved easily by hand for editing purposes, yet slack will be eliminated.

If EDIT and play (▶) are pressed simultaneously, the transport enters dump edit mode. The capstan and pinch roller pull tape past the heads at the set 15 ips (38 cm/sec) or at the adjusted pitch, allowing the operator to listen to playback for a particular edit point. However, the takeup reel does not turn, allowing tape to spill off the machine until the edit point is reached (the takeup tension arm position is "ignored" by the shut-off sensing logic). Upon reaching the desired point, pressing the STOP button stops tape and cancels edit mode.

NOTE: If the EDIT button has been pressed (LED on) to place the machine in edit mode, and the play (▶) button is pressed subsequently, the machine will not enter dump edit mode (the two buttons must be pressed simultaneously). Instead, edit mode will be cancelled, and tape will begin moving normally as the machine enters reproduce (play) mode.

EDIT LED (Yellow)

This LED is on when the machine is in edit mode.

Rewind Pushbutton (◀◀)

Pressing this button selects the rewind mode, which may be entered from any other mode. Pressing it a second time after the machine is placed in rewind mode causes the tape to slow to an intermediate winding speed, the reverse spooling mode. Spooling is used for a rapid yet extremely uniform, tight tape pack. The third pressing of this button returns the machine to rewind mode. The approximate tape speeds are: for rewind, 240 ips (610 cm/sec), and for spooling, 80 ips (203 cm/sec).

Fast-Forward Pushbutton (▶▶)

Pressing this button selects the fast-forward mode. The button functions similarly to the rewind button in that pressing it a second time causes the machine to enter forward spooling mode.

SPOOLING LED (Green)

When either the ◀◀ or ▶▶ button is pressed twice to place the machine in reverse or forward spooling mode, this LED turns on.

PAUSE Pushbutton

Pause mode may be entered from stop, edit, play or record modes. Pressing the PAUSE button stops tape (if it is running in play mode). It also "cocks" the pinch roller to an intermediate position so that play mode can be entered most rapidly. Pressing the PAUSE button places the unit in pause mode and turns on the PAUSE LED.

If the PAUSE and RECORD buttons are pressed simultaneously, the unit is in record pause mode; the PAUSE and RECORD LEDs will both be on, and the record electronics will be engaged (that is, the bias will be turned on) allowing for spot erasure by manual turning of the reels. To enter normal record mode from record/pause, it is necessary to press both the RECORD and play (▶) buttons.

There is one other time when the PAUSE LED is on — it flashes for about three seconds when the AC power is first turned on, indicating the machine is not yet ready to operate while the logic is being initialized.

Play Pushbutton (▶)

Pressing the play (▶) button places the machine in play mode. When play (▶) is pressed during fast-forward, rewind or spooling mode, the machine will enter play mode after tape has stopped. If play (▶) is pressed during a search operation (using STC or RTZ), the machine will enter play after the cue or "00.00" point has been reached.

To enter record mode, simultaneously press the play (▶) and RECORD buttons. To punch out of record mode, while keeping tape rolling at play speed, again press the play (▶) and RECORD buttons. Subsequently pressing play (▶) and RECORD together will toggle the machine between play and record modes for additional punch ins and punch outs.

RECORD Pushbutton

Pressing this button simultaneously with the play (▶) button initiates record mode. Recording actually occurs only on those tracks whose REC function pushbuttons are down (ON); on those channels, the LEDs will cease flashing and will stay on, indicating recording is in progress. Pressing the same two buttons, RECORD and play (▶), a second time cancels record mode but allows tape to continue playing.

RECORD LED Indicator

This red LED turns on in the RECORD/play (▶) or RECORD/PAUSE mode. The RECORD LED will remain on continuously if one or more REC function switches are on, indicating that recording is taking place; if none of the REC function switches are on, the LED will flash at a rate of 1 Hz, indicating the unit is ready to begin recording.

STOP Pushbutton

Pressing this button stops tape motion, and cancels any other mode of operation.

⑦ Splicing Block

This precision aluminum splicing block has been provided to facilitate editing. Neat, uniform splices can be made by laying the magnetic tape in the slot, and using the block's pre-cut grooves to guide your razor blade.

⑧ VU Meters with PEAK Indicators

These meters indicate the signal levels being fed to the 58's line outputs. The source will be from the line input, reproduction from the record/sync head, or reproduction from the repro head, depending on the setting of the OUTPUT SELECT, REC function and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches.

REAR PANEL

① DBX UNIT CONTROL SIGNAL Connector

A control signal from the 58 is fed to TASCAM's DX-4D dbx Noise Reduction System from this connector. The DX-4D is a 4-channel, simultaneous encode/decode processor, and two DX-4D's are used to provide 8 channels of processing for the 58. A second control cable (from the DX-4D's CASCADE connector) links the two DX-4Ds together to share the control signal from the 58.

NOTE: There is no specific order in which the dbx units must be connected; all channels of processing are identical. The control signal is necessary for use with dbx processors built by TEAC; tape noise reduction units built by dbx also may be used with the 58, in which case this connector is not used.

② SPEED MODE Select Switch

EXT: Connects the SMPTE synchronizer or other synchronizer/controller that's connected to the ACCESSORY connector to control tape speed signal.

INT: Disconnects the external synchronizer/controller. This select switch should be kept in this position when synchronization with associated equipment is not required.

③ ACCESSORY (SMPTE) Connector

This "D" connector (multi-pin "business telephone" type) has the necessary inputs and outputs for direct interface with SMPTE time code synchronizers or controllers, including capstan motor tach signal, logic, and tally lines. It is plug-to-plug compatible with BTX, ECCO, CONVERSION, FERNSEH, AUDIO KINETICS or similar synchronizer.

Details concerning physical dimensions, signal distribution and pin connections can be found in the following pages.

④ REMOTE Connector

This connector is used for the optional remote control units: the RC-50 Transport Remote Control (transport controls, auto locator and counter readout), and the RC-51 Full Function Remote Control (transport controls, counter readout, auto locator, OUTPUT SELECT switches, and individual record function (REC ON/OFF) and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches for each track).

NOTE: Transport operations can be simultaneously performed on the 58 and the remote control unit without having to switch between the two units. Change-over between the two units is necessary only for track function switching on the RC-51 (i.e., record function (REC ON/OFF), pre-load (SYNC/INPUT), and OUTPUT SELECT switches). Also, BE SURE THE POWER IS OFF WHEN CONNECTING ANY REMOTE CONTROL UNIT.

⑤ INPUT Jacks

These 8 unbalanced RCA jacks accept the line inputs to the 58. The nominal signal level is -10 dBV (0.3 V rms), and the load impedance is 50 k ohms.

⑥ OUTPUT Jacks

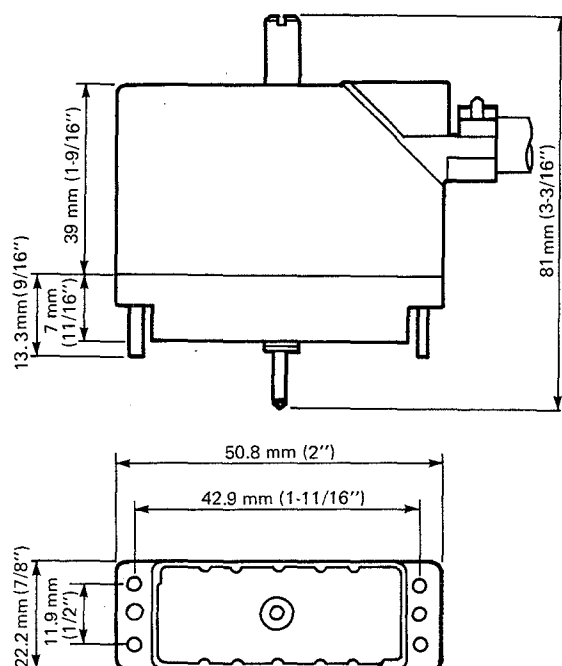
These 8 unbalanced RCA jacks carry the line outputs from the 58. The nominal signal level is -10 dBV (0.3 V rms), and the minimum load impedance is 10 k ohms.

⑦ AC Power Cord

If your unit is a General Export model, see "Voltage Conversion" on page 4-6.

U.K. customers are requested to refer to "Note for U.K. Customers" of the same page.

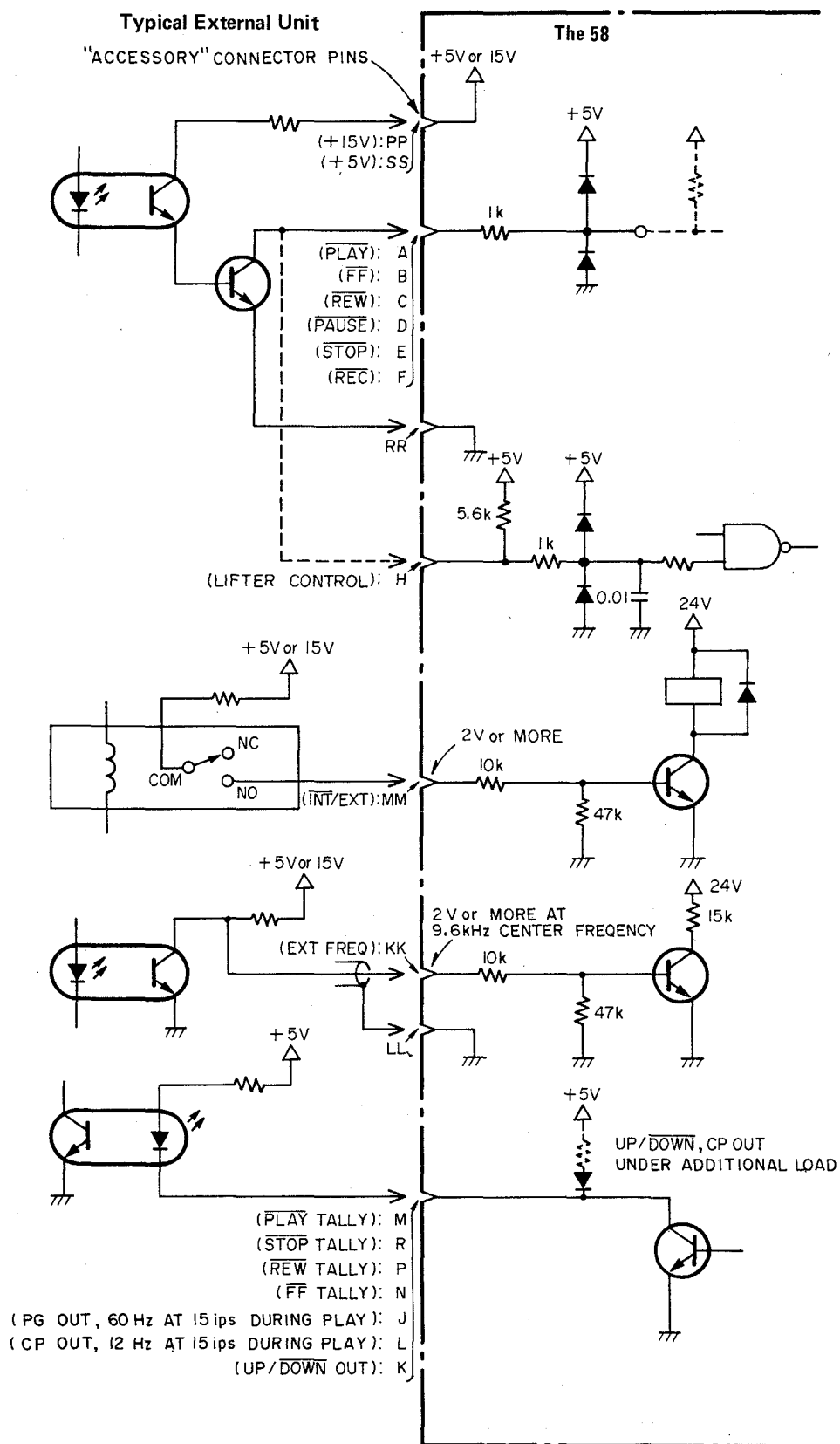
"ACCESSORY" Connector and Signals



| Pin # | IN(put)—OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|---|
| A | PLAY | IN | Inputs PLAY signal at L level. |
| B | FF | IN | Inputs FF signal at L level. |
| C | REW | IN | Inputs REW signal at L level. |
| D | PAUSE | IN | Inputs PAUSE signal at L level. |
| E | STOP | IN | Inputs STOP signal at L level. |
| F | REC | IN | Inputs REC signal at L level. |
| H | LIFTER CONT | IN | Inputs LIFTER shift cancellation signal at L level. |
| J | PG | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (60 Hz pulse at 15 ips.) |
| K | UP/DOWN | OUT | Outputs tape running control signal at H or L level. |
| L | CP | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (12 Hz pulse at 15 ips.) |
| M | PLAY TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during PLAY mode.) |

| Pin # | IN(put)—OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|---|-----------|--|
| N | FF TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during FF mode.) |
| P | REW TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during REW mode.) |
| R | STOP TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during STOP mode.) |
| S | <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <div style="width: 100%; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; height: 100%;"></div> </div> | | |
| T | | | |
| U | | | |
| V | | | |
| W | | | |
| X | | | |
| Y | | | |
| Z | | | |
| AA | | | |
| BB | | | |
| CC | Open terminal | | |
| DD | | | |
| EE | | | |
| FF | | | |
| HH | | | |
| JJ | | | |
| KK | EXT FREQ | IN (HOT) | Inputs speed control signal at input signal level of 2.0 V or more. (HOT side) |
| LL | EXT FREQ | IN (COLD) | Inputs speed control signal (COLD side) |
| MM | INT/EXT | IN | Inputs internal/external speed control select signal Internal: LOW level (0 V) External: HIGH level (2.0 V or more) When "INT/EXT" switch on rear panel is in the "EXT" position. |
| NN | Open terminal | | |
| PP | +15 V supply voltage | OUT | Maximum: 50 mA |
| RR | 0 V terminal | | |
| SS | +5 V supply voltage | OUT | Maximum: 50 mA |
| TT | Main unit GND | | |

"ACCESSORY" Connector Pins and External Signal Connections



4. OPERATION

4-1. BASIC INFORMATION

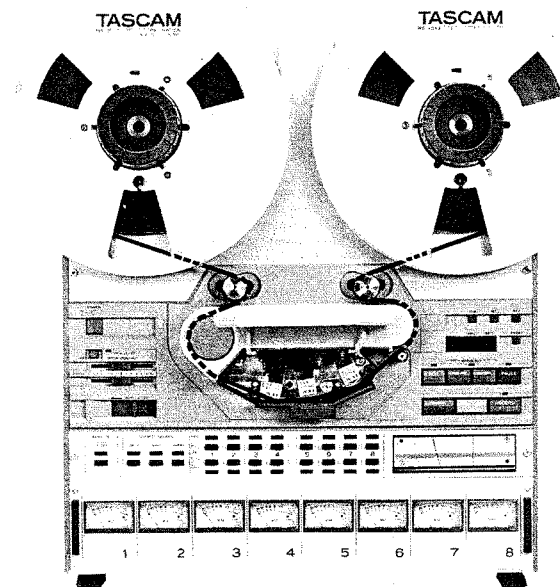
4-1-1. Reel Installation

Use only 10-1/2" reels and 1/2" wide tape. Even with a short tape, use 10-1/2" reels on both the supply and takeup reel tables, since the servo system is balanced to provide proper tension based on this reel size.

4-1-2. Threading Tape

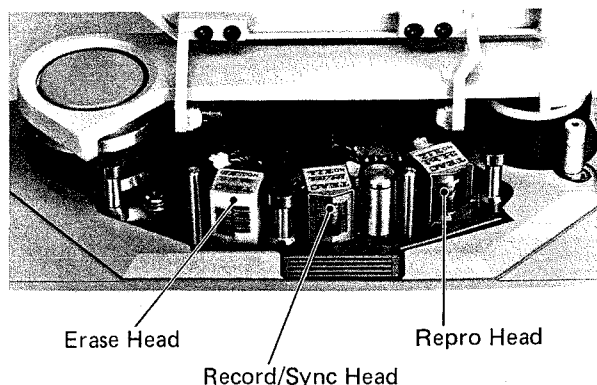
Lift the head access cover and press in on the head shield (head gate) to gain access to the heads for threading tape. Thread the tape as shown in the illustration below.

NOTE: If the tape has been stored "tails out" (a recommended practice), remember to place it on the takeup reel table and to rewind it onto the supply reel prior to use.



4-1-3. Erasing the Tape

A previously recorded track is automatically erased when you make a new recording on it. However, if an entire tape is to be erased, we recommend using a bulk eraser such as the TEAC E-2A. This is faster and more convenient than erasure at 15 ips. If a tape is to be reused, the initial bulk erasure combines with the track-by-track erasure which occurs during recording to provide a more thorough erasure for optimum signal-to-noise ratio.



4-1-4. Cleaning and Demagnetizing

Clean and demagnetize all components in the tape path as described in the "Routine Maintenance" section of this manual.

4-2. OPERATING PROCEDURES

The following general information is applicable to all operating modes.








1. If the tape runs completely off the supply or takeup reel, the recorder/reproducer automatically stops and enters the unthread mode, and the tape timer display stops.
2. The two following groups of functions are mutually exclusive such that only one group may be selected at a time:
 - a) Record, record ready or play
 - b) SYNC, REPRO or INPUT

4-3. MONITORING THE LINE OUTPUTS

The OUTPUT SELECT switches determine the source of the signals present at the output terminals. INPUT always selects the input jacks as a source, and REPRO always selects the repro head as the source, but SYNC may select either the input jacks or sync reproduction from the

record/sync head, depending on the setting of the REC function switches, the pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches, and other operating controls. The table below graphically depicts the output source.

Determining the signal source for the 58's output*

| OUTPUT SELECT Switch | REC Function Switch | Pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) Switch | RECORD Switch | Operating Mode | LINE OUTPUT Source |
|---|---|---|---|--|--------------------|
| REPRO () | — | — | — | — | Repro Head |
| INPUT () | — | — | — | — | Line Input |
| SYNC () | OFF () | — | — | — | Sync Repro |
| | ON () | INPUT () | — | — | Line Input |
| | | SYNC () | OFF | In Stop, Fast Winding Modes, or RTZ or STC | Line Input |
| | | | | In Play, Pause, Edit and Cue Modes | Sync Repro |
| | | | ON | — | Line Input |
| LED on above the switch pressed. | LED flashes with RECORD switch off, and stays on with RECORD switch on. | LED is on with RECORD switch off, and is off with RECORD switch on. | LED flashes with REC function switch off, and is on with REC function on. | | |

* "—" signifies that the setting of this switch or the operating mode has no effect on the line output source.

4-4. RECORDING

Prior to recording, check to see that the 58 is properly wired to the recording mixer and associated equipment. Remember that the recording level is controlled at the output of the mixer, not on the 58. Initially, we suggest setting the 58 as listed:

| Switch | Setting | Indicator |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| OUTPUT SELECT | INPUT (to preset the record level) or SYNC (to monitor playback until recording begins) | LED turns on adjacent to corresponding switch |
| REC function | For those tracks to be recorded, press in on the switch to turn on the channel. | LED(s) turn on corresponding to tracks to be recorded. |
| Pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) | INPUT | — |

4-4-1. Entering Record from Record/Pause Mode

Simultaneously press the RECORD and PAUSE buttons to place the machine in record/pause mode. The RECORD LED will begin flashing if none of the REC function switches are engaged; if any REC function switch is engaged, the RECORD LED will stay on.

To begin recording on those channels whose REC function switches are engaged, press the play (►) button. The REC function LED will stop flashing and will stay on continuously, and the pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) LED will turn off as record mode is entered. Press STOP to end the recording and stop tape.

4-4-2. Entering Record from Stop Mode

The REC function, OUTPUT SELECT and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches may be set as in the previous section. Instead of placing the machine in record/pause mode, however, simply press RECORD and play (►) simultaneously to directly enter record mode from the stop mode.

4-4-3. Punch-In Using the REC Function Switches

Set the OUTPUT SELECT switches and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switch to the SYNC position, and turn off all REC function switches (unless you want a track to begin recording immediately). Now simultaneously press the RECORD and play (►) buttons to place the machine in record ready mode. Tape will be rolling, but the track(s) will not be recording. You can "punch in" to record on a particular channel by pressing in its REC function switch. To "punch out" of record on that channel, release its REC function switch. To "punch out" of record on all channels, press STOP or simultaneously press the RECORD and (►) buttons.

4-5. EXAMPLES OF PUNCH-INS AND INSERTS

Consider two different situations where it is desirable to re-record portions of a track rather than recording the entire part all over again.

EXAMPLE 1:

Suppose there is a hesitant start at the beginning of a tune, one slightly out of time with the downbeat. In order to make a correction at this point, there is no need to monitor the playback (sync) from the problem track. In fact, the "bad start" may only serve to confuse the performer. To punch in on the track, set the corresponding REC function switch on, then press the RECORD and play (►) buttons after hearing the slate at the beginning of the tune. To end the insert, press STOP.

EXAMPLE 2:

Suppose an error is made in the middle of or near the end of a tune. Now the performer will need to hear his performance up to the "problem" point so that the punch-in (an "insert") will have the same style and feel as the existing track. In this instance, leave the REC function switches off and press the RECORD and play (►) buttons to begin playing the tape. The outputs will carry playback from the record/sync head, and the performer may be playing along with this sync playback to "warm up." At the moment the insert is to be made, engage the track's REC function switch to begin recording. Two things then occur: (1) you instantly enter record mode on the track so the new part will replace the previous portion of the track (in sync), and (2) the output is automatically switched from tape playback to input source so the performer can hear the new part as it is being added.

4-6. ANOTHER LOOK AT SYNC FUNCTIONS

Since the sync mode allows "in synchronization" recording of new signals with previously recorded tracks, it serves as a means to perform overdubbing as well as normal recording. When the machine is in the sync mode, the performer can monitor the previously recorded tracks via playback through the record/sync head while, at the same time, his new part is being added on another track (or tracks) of the same head.

For example, suppose we load a tape on which three tracks are already recorded, and the other five tracks are blank. In sync mode, the three existing tracks are played back, mixed at the console, and fed to the performer's cue headphones. The performer now monitors that mixed signal from the three tracks while he records new a signal on one (or several) of the formerly blank tracks. Since the same head is used for playback and recording, all the signals remain "in sync" for proper playback.

When making an overdub or an insert, the performer can begin playing prior to the actual initiation of recording, allowing time for him to "get up to speed" and play along with the existing tracks. At the time the punch-in is made, the signal being monitored by the performer instantly and automatically changes from playback of the existing track (which is to be re-recorded) to the input to that track as it is being re-recorded. Monitoring is unchanged on those tracks which are not being re-recorded.

4-7. BUILT-IN AUTO LOCATOR FUNCTIONS

The 58 has a digital counter which indicates the elapsed tape running time from 00 minutes, 00 seconds ("00.00") up to a maximum of 99 minutes, 59 seconds ("99.59") — not that you can get a 100 minute tape to fit on the machine. From any mode, the 58 can be made to fast wind (forward or reverse) to a "00.00" counter readout by pressing the RTZ button. Additionally, the counter has an associated memory register that allows any specific time on the tape to be "remembered" by pressing the CUE button as that point is displayed on the counter. The tape can then be made to fast wind (forward or reverse) to the memorized cue point by

pressing the STC button — again, from any mode.

When the RESET button is pressed, the 58's digital display will indicate "00.00." So, too, will the counter display on any remote control unit that may be plugged into the 58.

4-8. FAST WINDING

To fast wind a tape in the forward direction (onto the takeup reel) or reverse direction (onto the supply reel), press the fast forward (▶▶) or rewind (◀◀) button. These fast winding modes can be initiated from the stop, play or record modes. The tape lifter arms pull the tape away from the heads as soon as fast winding is initiated, and the line outputs are also electronically muted. To monitor the tape during fast winding, slide the TAPE LIFTER lever towards the left.

4-9. REPRODUCTION (PLAYBACK)

Thread a recorded tape onto the 58, and set the following controls as indicated:

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| POWER Switch: | On |
| OUTPUT SELECT Switch: | SYNC or REPRO |
| REC Function Switches: | All channels off (buttons up) |

Then press the play (▶) button. Tape will run onto the takeup reel at 15 ips (38 cm/sec), assuming the PITCH CONTROL switch is not engaged, and the line outputs will carry the reproduced signal from the tape. Press STOP to stop the tape and end this mode.

4-10. EDITING

NOTES:

1. When splicing tape, never use ordinary adhesive or pressure sensitive tape. Use only special tapes made for splicing (editing) recording tape. Splicing tape has a small amount of low-tack adhesive which is adequate to grip the backing of the recording tape, yet which will not "ooze" out beyond the splice after being wound under tension and shuttled over the heads. Conventional tape almost always "leaks" adhesive onto the heads and onto adjacent windings of tape on the reel.
2. Always use non-magnetic tools, including razor blades, when splicing tape. Magnetized tools will cause a "click" upon playback.

4-10-1. Manual Editing (STOP/EDIT)

To locate a cue point, use the TAPE LIFTER lever during the fast winding or spooling mode, then press STOP. Once the approximate cue point is thus located, and tape is stopped, press the EDIT button; an LED lights, and the tape reels may then be "hand rocked" to find the exact cue point. (Note the tape counter still operates.) When that point is heard to play back: flip up the head access cover, push in on the head shield (if it is up), and use a grease pencil (a "china marker") to mark the cut point opposite the head through which you are listening (the record/sync head if OUTPUT SELECT is set to SYNC, or the repro head if set to REPRO).

4-10-2. Dump Editing (Play (▶)/EDIT)

Once the initial cue point is marked, pull tape forward and lay it into the splicing block (oxide down) and cut the tape diagonally at the mark using a non-magnetic single-edged industrial razor blade. If a substantial length of tape is to be removed, rethread the tape from the supply reel past the heads, capstan and pinch roller . . . and let the end hang off the right side of the transport. Then, press the EDIT button and the play (▶) button simultaneously. Tape will begin unthreading itself (dumping) from the supply reel as you listen to it play, and the takeup reel will not turn to take up slack; tension arm positions are disregarded by the transport logic. When you reach the next edit point, press STOP. Once again, press EDIT and manually move the tape so the splice point is opposite the head being used for reproduction,

mark that point, and make the second diagonal cut. Then butt the two cut ends from the supply and takeup reels, apply a small piece of splicing tape, and trim the excess along both edges of the recording tape.

NOTES:

1. If the play (▶) button is pressed alone, after the EDIT LED is on, the unit will go into play mode and the EDIT LED will turn off. To enter "dump edit" mode, both the EDIT and (▶) buttons must be pressed at the same time.
2. If the STOP button is pressed during dump edit mode, the edit mode will be disengaged and tape will stop.

4-11. SPOOLING

The spooling mode is used to transfer tape from one reel to the other at a constant speed of approximately 80 ips (203 cm/sec) to obtain a tight, uniform tape pack . . . as compared to approximately 240 ips (610 cm/sec) for normal fast wind speed. Generally, spooling will be done onto the takeup reel at the end of a recording or editing session so the tape can be stored "tails out," which reduces audible print-through effects (pre-echoes). Fast winding is not used here because the tape pack is less uniform, and edge damage to the tape is therefore more likely during storage. When the tape is again to be used, it is first rewound onto the supply reel at normal rewind speed. It may be helpful to use a white leader tape at the head (beginning) of the tape, and a red leader tape at the tail (end) of the tape to avoid any possible confusion as to which end is which.

To select the forward spooling mode press the fast-forward (▶▶) button once to begin fast forward winding. Then immediately press it a second time; this initiates the forward spooling mode and turns on the green SPOOLING LED. A third pressing of the (▶▶) button will return the transport to normal fast-forward winding, or pressing STOP will stop any tape motion.

To select the reverse spooling mode, press the rewind (◀◀) button twice consecutively. Just like (▶▶), a third pressing of the this button will cause the transport to return to normal rewind speed, and pressing STOP will disengage spooling mode and stop all tape motion.

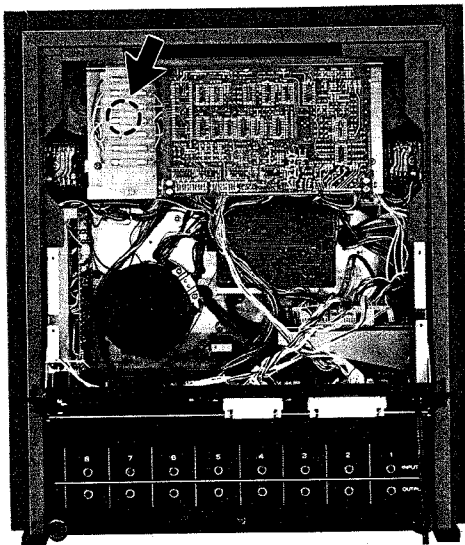
4-12. VOLTAGE CONVERSION

The 58 is factory pre-set to operate at the AC line voltage specified on the reel tag and on the packing carton.

NOTE: Field conversion of this line voltage to other voltages is not possible on models sold in the U.S.A., Canada, the U.K., Australia or Europe. If your 58 is a "general export" model and it does become necessary to change the line voltage requirements to suit local AC power mains, use the following procedures.

ALWAYS DISCONNECT THE POWER CORD BEFORE OPENING THE UNIT.

1. Disconnect the 58's power cord from the AC outlet.
2. Using an ISO Phillips screwdriver, remove the upper rear panel and the 2 screws on the FUSE PCB assembly.
3. Locate the voltage selector behind the FUSE PCB Ass'y. Refer to page 7-2.
4. To increase the selected voltage, turn the slotted center post clockwise using a regular (slot blade) screwdriver; to decrease the voltage, turn the post counterclockwise. The numerals which appear in the cut-out window of the voltage selector designate the selected AC line voltage.



NOTE: If you cannot obtain the desired line voltage numerals in the window as you turn the selector, your recorder/reproducer must be taken to an authorized TEAC Service Facility for voltage conversion.

5. Replace the 2 screws on the FUSE PCB Ass'y, and reinstall the rear cover panel.
6. Make a clearly visible marking or attach a tag to the machine indicating it has been set for the new line voltage.

4-13. NOTE FOR U.K. CUSTOMERS

U.K. Customers Only:

Due to the variety of plugs being used in the U.K., this unit is sold without an AC plug. Please request your dealer to install the correct plug to match the mains power outlet where your unit will be used as per these instructions.

IMPORTANT

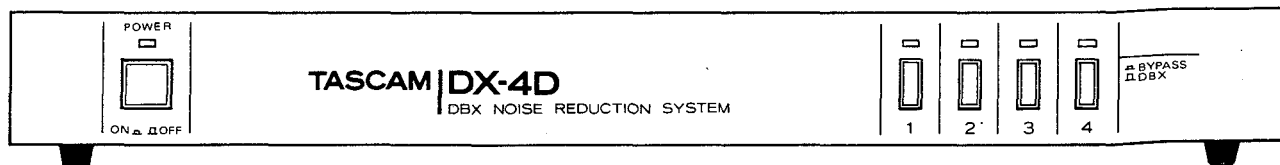
The wires in this mains lead are coloured in accordance with the following code:

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| BLUE: | NEUTRAL |
| BROWN: | LIVE |

As the colours of the wires in the mains lead of this apparatus may not correspond with the coloured markings identifying the terminals of your plug, proceed as follows.

The wire which is coloured BLUE must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter N or coloured BLACK. The wire which is coloured BROWN must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter L or coloured RED.

4-14. CONNECTION AND OPERATION OF THE DX-4D

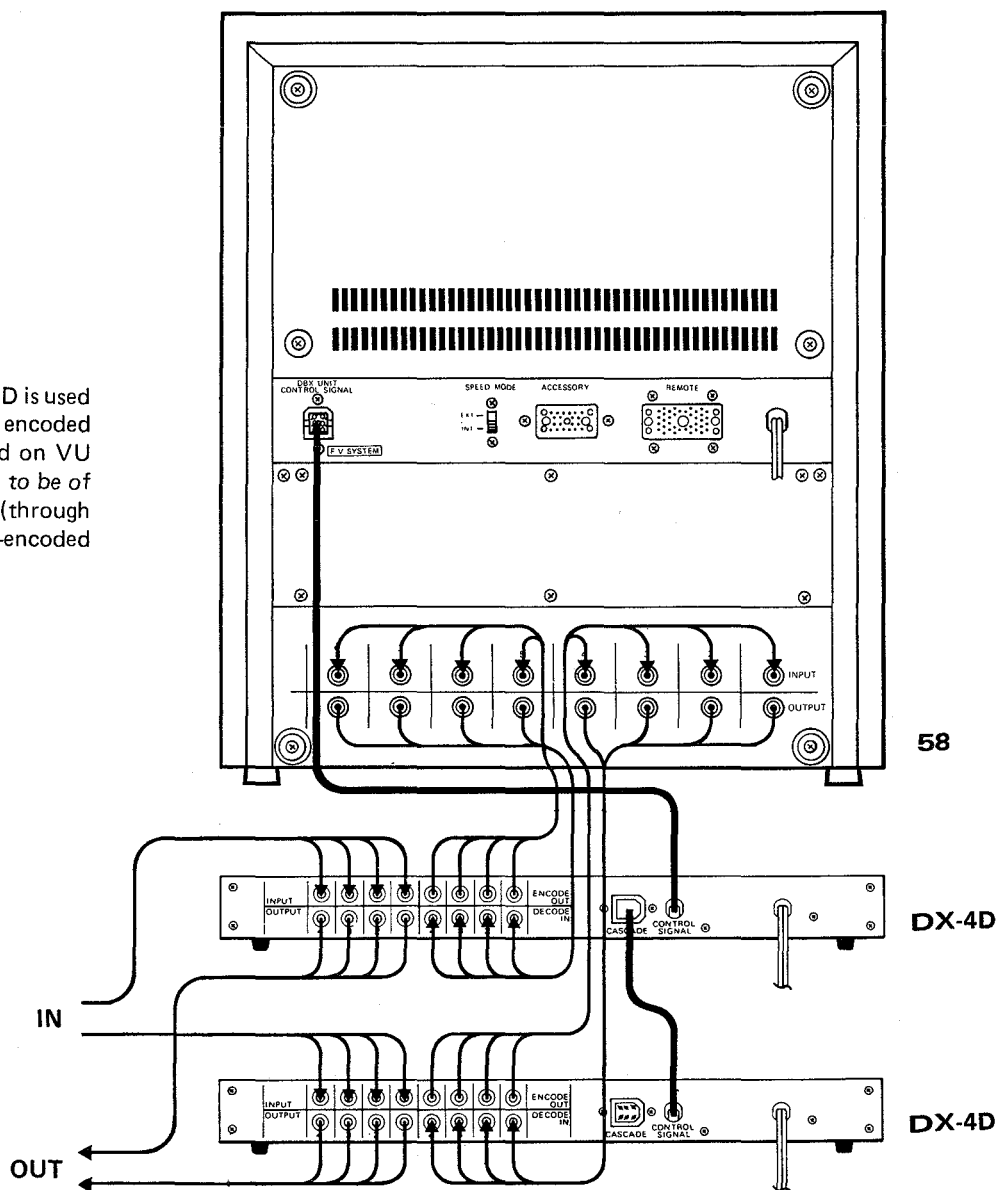


Hook up

Because the DX-4D is a 4-channel dbx system, it is necessary to connect two of the DX-4D's to facilitate the 58's eight channel function. There is no specific order in which the two units are to be connected, but be consistent or you may

become confused. Make sure that each track ENCODE/DECODE pair is connected to the same section, or your bypass switch functions will not work properly.

Note: When the DX-4D is used together with the 58, encoded signal levels displayed on VU meters will be found to be of somewhat less value (through compression) than no-encoded signal levels.



DBX Bypass Switch

1. With this DBX NOISE REDUCTION SYSTEM, both ENCODE/DECODE are in operation while this switch is in the (\square DBX) position. With this switch in the (\equiv BYPASS) position, the DBX circuit is bypassed, which deactivates ENCODE/DECODE. The switches for each channel (1 — 8) work independently to facilitate separate functioning.
2. With this switch in the (\equiv BYPASS) position, the LED cuts off, and the DBX circuit is bypassed. Keep this switch in this position when not using the DBX NOISE REDUCTION SYSTEM.

How the DX-4D functions

The DX-4D functions only when connected to the DBX UNIT CONTROL SIGNAL terminal of the 58.

Once the DX-4D has been connected, you may virtually ignore it. The unit is completely automatic. And, because of the design and nature of this noise reduction system, there is no need for record or reproduce level match adjustments — the level is non-critical within nominal tolerances; the circuit is stable.

Since decode and encode functions are actuated by the respective channels of the DX-4D, simultaneous dbx NR Encoding/Decoding is possible without having to switch between ENCODE or DECODE.

EXAMPLE 1.

Original Recording

Suppose you are going to record, with OUTPUT SELECT and pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) switches in the SYNC position, depress REC function switches 1 thru 4. LED indicators will light, signaling ready-to-record on those tracks.

An encoded signal will be automatically reproduced when the 58 is started because of the DX-4D's ability to simultaneously encode and decode while the DBX switch is in the (\square DBX) position.

EXAMPLE 2.

Overdubbing

In this example, suppose you have recorded on tracks 1 thru 4, and now wish to record on tracks 5 thru 8, in sync.

Set up the OUTPUT SELECT, pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) and REC function switches in the same manner as in Example 1. The DX-4D will auto-

matically encode the signals going to tracks 5 thru 8, and decode the signals on tracks 1 thru 4.

The same process occurs when you punch-in during any recording session. When the 58 is in the record mode, the DX-4D is encoding; in reproduce (sync monitoring), it's decoding.

HOW THE DX-4D WORKS

The DX-4D is a wide-band compression-expansion system which provides a net noise reduction (broadband, not just hiss) of a little more than 30 dB. In addition, the compression during recording permits a net gain in tape headroom of about 10 dB.

A compression factor of 2:1 is used before recording; then, 1:2 expansion on reproduce. These compression and expansion factors are linear in decibels and allow the system to produce tape recordings with over a 100 dB dynamic range — an important feature, especially when you're making live recordings. The DX-4D employs RMS level sensors to eliminate compressor-expander tracking errors due to phase shifts in the tape recorder, and provides excellent transient tracking capabilities.

To achieve a large reduction in audible tape hiss, without danger of overload or high frequency self-erasure on the tape, frequency pre-emphasis and de-emphasis are added to the signal and RMS level sensors.

If you're an electronic engineer, all of the above gab may tell you the whole story of what's going on inside the DX-4D, but if you're not, to make things a little easier to understand we'll ask you to use your imagination.

Imagine four little recording engineers in the box with each of their hands on a volume control. They are incredibly fast but very stupid, so you must give them a set of rules. You tell them to raise signals that are below "0 VU", and reduce signals that are higher than "0 VU".

The lower the signal is, the more they raise it, and the higher levels above "0 VU" get lowered more and more as they go up in level past "0". This is the 2:1 compression. You also tell them to call "0.316 V" "0 VU". Here they do nothing, no change except frequency pre-emphasis or boost. Since you know they are going to keep the high levels under control, you can raise the "top end" a bit and still not overload the tape.

Just to keep it simple for them, the boost in highs is fixed. They put it in all the time, no matter what level changes they are making. Now we play tape back, and say OK, do everything backwards. Levels above "0.316 V" "0 VU" are raised and levels below "0.316 V" are lowered, and while you're at it, fellows, take off the extra top end as well. Follow the rules in reverse. As long as you don't confuse them by shifting the "0 VU" point, they work just great, but — don't put in more than "0.316 V" as zero VU, and don't make the tape playback zero anything other than "0.316 V" either. As we said they're very dumb and will follow instructions very precisely. Differing levels will produce decoding errors.

The reason these errors may not be objectionable is that people could have played or sung or whatever with a little more or less dynamics. A small change won't be as noticeable as a mistake, but it is not perfect. The tolerance here is not electronic, it's human. To get exactly what you put in, it is necessary to get an exact "0 VU", 0.316 V in and out. The system is level sensitive although it is realistic to say it is "artistically" forgiving.

One common mistake we find, is that people don't check the OUTPUT voltage of the mixer or other device feeding the DX-4D, and don't remember that the DX-4D is the first item in the system (58/DX-4D). "Breathing" and "pumping" can result especially on instruments like piano and acoustic guitars, if the levels are seriously mismatched, because of the way the DX-4D works. If your mixer "0" VU is not 0.3 volt, (the DX-4D "standard zero") the code process will reflect the fact that all levels are higher (if the mixer "zero" is 1 volt.) Now, when you DECODE, the troubles start. The 58 playback electronics cannot safely be set to this "high" output level, and the decoder will not "see", the same levels in playback. Decode errors will occur.

Consider also the fact that the DX-4D will increase your signal to noise ratio by 30 dB. If you record at a generally lower level you will avoid dbx problems and still have quiet tapes. Try using -5 or -7 VU as "zero".

Mixing

Program material must be in uncompressed form for mixing and sound-on-sound recording. You must first decode the program material which has been encoded by the DX-4D in order to mix it with any other material —compressed or uncompressed. Of source, mixed material may be compressed again for recording. If this precaution is not followed, you'll get cross-modulation of the separate signals or tracks.

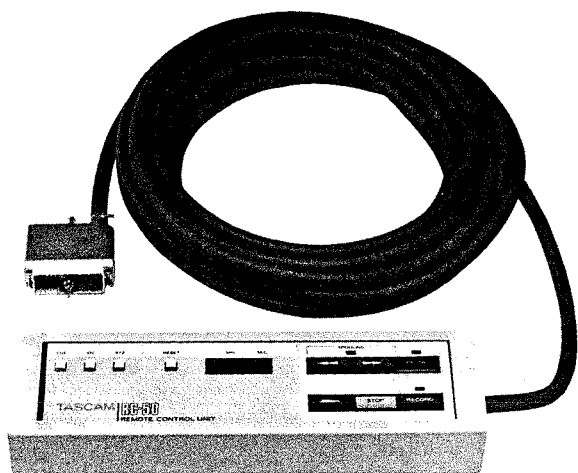
The little guys in the box will look at their "chart" and give you some really entertaining level shifts, as we have said, they're fast but dumb.

Subsonics and Interference

The DX-4D incorporates an effective bandpass filter with -3 dB response at 20 Hz and 30 kHz. This filter suppresses undesirable sub- and super-sonic frequencies to keep them from introducing errors into the encode or decode process. However, if rumble from trains or trucks is picked up by your microphone and fed to the DX-4D — filters are not perfect — modulation of the program material during low level passages may occur. This low frequency component will not itself be passed through the recorder and so, will not be present at reproduce for proper decoding. If this low level decoding error is encountered, and subsonics are suspected, we suggest the addition of a suitable high pass filter ahead of the DX-4D and after the mic preamplifier for further attenuation of these subsonic frequencies.

4-15. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT AND USEFUL ACCESSORIES

RC-50 Remote Control Unit



The RC-50 is designed for remote control of the transport, auto locator and counter read-out functions.

SPECIFICATIONS

Functions

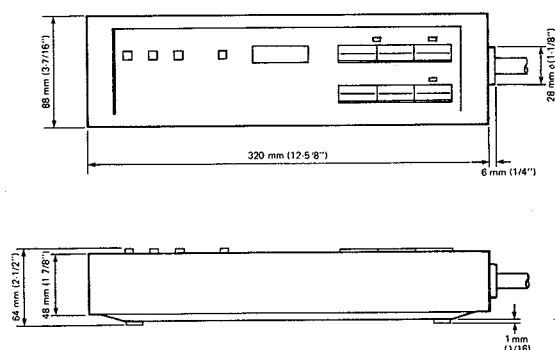
Transport: Play (▶), STOP, fast-forward (▶▶), rewind (◀◀), spooling, RECORD and PAUSE

Tape Counter: 4-digit, minute and second read-out, with RESET button

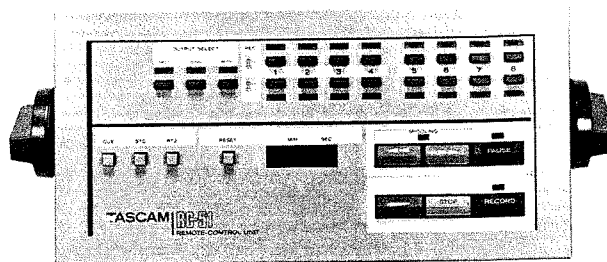
Auto Locator: CUE, Single-point memory RTZ, Return-To-Zero STC, Search-To-Cue

Dimensions
(W x H x D) 320 x 48 x 88 mm
(12-5/8" x 1-7/8" x 3-7/16"),
not including connector and switches

Weight Approx. 2.7 kg (5-15/16 lbs),
including cable



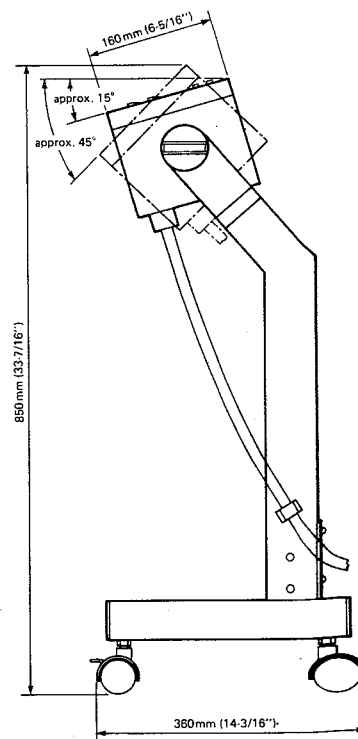
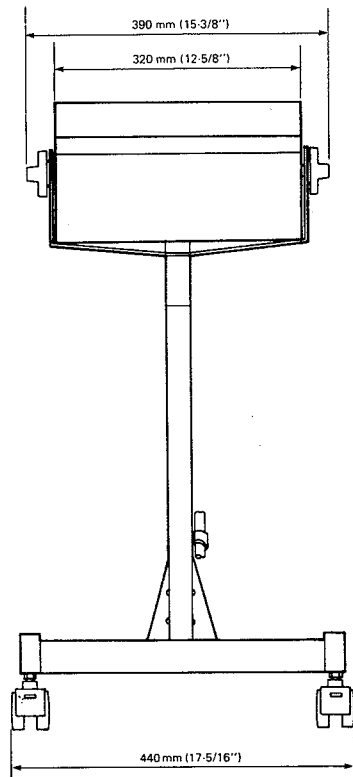
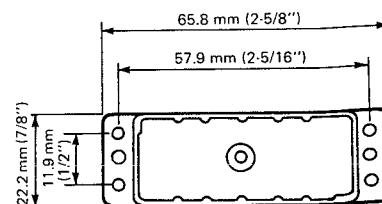
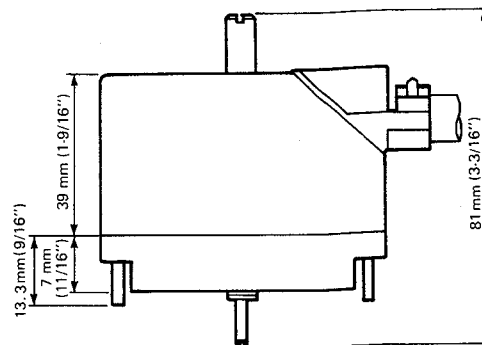
RC-51 Remote Control Unit



The RC-51 is a full function remote control unit provided with a roll-around stand, and allows remote operation of the 58 from as far away as 8 meters. All transport controls (except EDIT) and front panel functions, including auto-locator, counter read-out, OUTPUT SELECT, pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) and record (REC ON/OFF) functions of the 58 can be remote-controlled from this control unit.

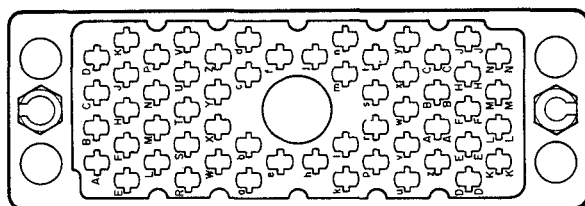
SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Description | Remote control unit with provided roll-around stand |
| Function | |
| Transport: | Play (▶), STOP, fast-forward (▶▶), rewind (◀◀), spooling, RECORD and PAUSE |
| Tape Counter: | 4-digit, minute and second read-out, with RESET button |
| Auto Locator: | CUE, Single-point memory RTZ, Return-To-Zero STC, Search-To-Cue |
| OUTPUT SELECT: | INPUT, SYNC and REPRO |
| REC Function: | Channel 1 – 8 |
| Pre-Load (SYNC/INPUT): | Channel 1 – 8 |
| Construction | |
| Main Unit: | Metal (with angle adjust) |
| Stand: | Metal |
| Connecting Cable: | 8 m, 5-core shielded, with 56 pin connector (Marco 354) |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | 320 x 850 x 360 mm (12-5/8" x 33-7/16" x 14-3/16") |
| Weight | Approx. 12 kg (26-7/16 lbs), including cable |



Configurations are subject to change without notice or obligation.

"REMOTE" Connector Signals

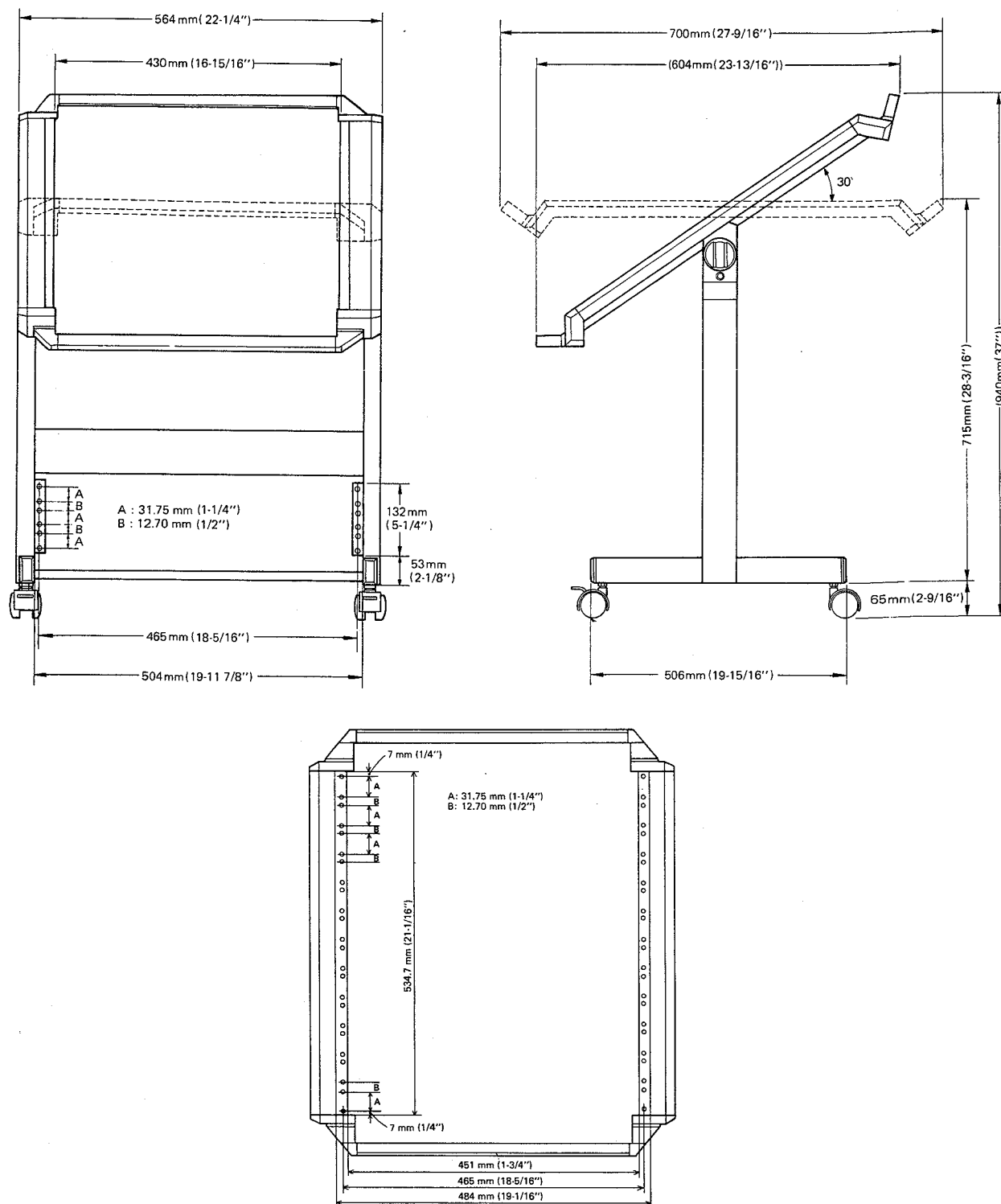


| Pin # | IN(put)–OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|--|
| A | (–) SIGN | OUT | Outputs counter display signal (Connected in parallel to deck) |
| B | P3 | OUT | |
| C | P2 | OUT | |
| D | P1 | OUT | |
| E | P0 | OUT | |
| F | \bar{a} | OUT | |
| H | \bar{b} | OUT | |
| J | \bar{c} | OUT | |
| K | \bar{d} | OUT | |
| L | \bar{e} | OUT | |
| M | \bar{f} | OUT | Inputs transport control signal (Via interface circuit) |
| N | \bar{g} | OUT | |
| P | PLAY | IN | |
| R | \overline{FF} | IN | |
| S | \overline{REW} | IN | |
| T | \overline{PAUSE} | IN | |
| U | \overline{STOP} | IN | |
| V | \overline{REC} | IN | |
| W | \overline{RESET} | IN | Outputs remote-control indicating signal (Connected in parallel to deck) |
| X | \overline{RTZ} | IN | |
| Y | \overline{CUE} | IN | |
| Z | \overline{STC} | IN | |
| a | $\overline{REC LED}$ | OUT | Outputs service signal |
| b | $\overline{PAUSE LED}$ | OUT | |
| c | $\overline{SPOOL LED}$ | OUT | |
| d | $\overline{UP/DOWN}$ | OUT | Outputs service signal |
| e | CP | OUT | |
| f | $\overline{REMOTE LOW}$ | IN | |
| h | Open terminal | IN | Outputs service signal |
| i | +5 V supply voltage | OUT | |

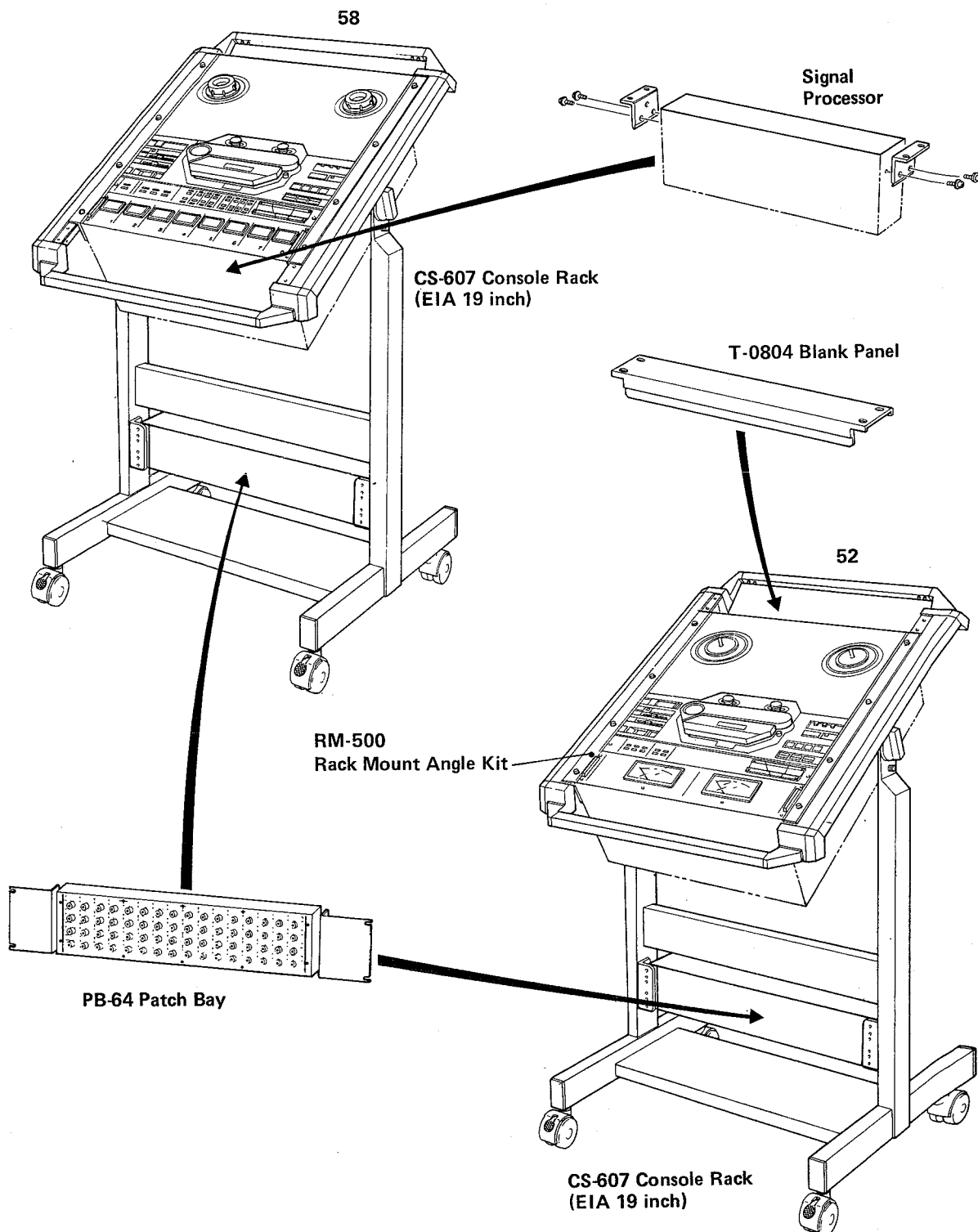
| Pin # | IN(put)–OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|--|
| k | 0 V (+5 V Vcc) | | FUNCTION Input/Output signal (For conversion between the remote control unit and deck) |
| l | | | |
| m | | | |
| n | Open terminal | | |
| p | | | |
| r | | | |
| s | | | |
| t | +15 V supply voltage | OUT | |
| u | MUTE | IN | |
| v | SYNC | IN | |
| w | $\overline{CH-1}$ | IN | FUNCTION Input/Output signal (For conversion between the remote control unit and deck) |
| x | $\overline{CH-2}$ | IN | |
| y | $\overline{CH-3}$ | IN | |
| z | $\overline{CH-4}$ | IN | |
| AA | $\overline{CH-5}$ | IN | |
| BB | $\overline{CH-6}$ | IN | |
| CC | $\overline{CH-7}$ | IN | |
| DD | $\overline{CH-8}$ | IN | |
| EE | INPUT | IN | |
| FF | REC MODE | IN | |
| HH | FUNCTION LED | OUT | FUNCTION Input/Output signal (For conversion between the remote control unit and deck) |
| JJ | PRE-LOAD LED | OUT | |
| KK | PLAY MUTE | OUT | |
| LL | 0 V (+15 V Vcc) | | |
| MM | Open terminal | | FUNCTION Input/Output signal (For conversion between the remote control unit and deck) |
| NN | Main body GND | | |

CS-607 Console Rack (EIA 19-inch)

The CS-607 is a standard 19-inch console rack to be used with the RM-500 for mounting of the TASCAM 58.

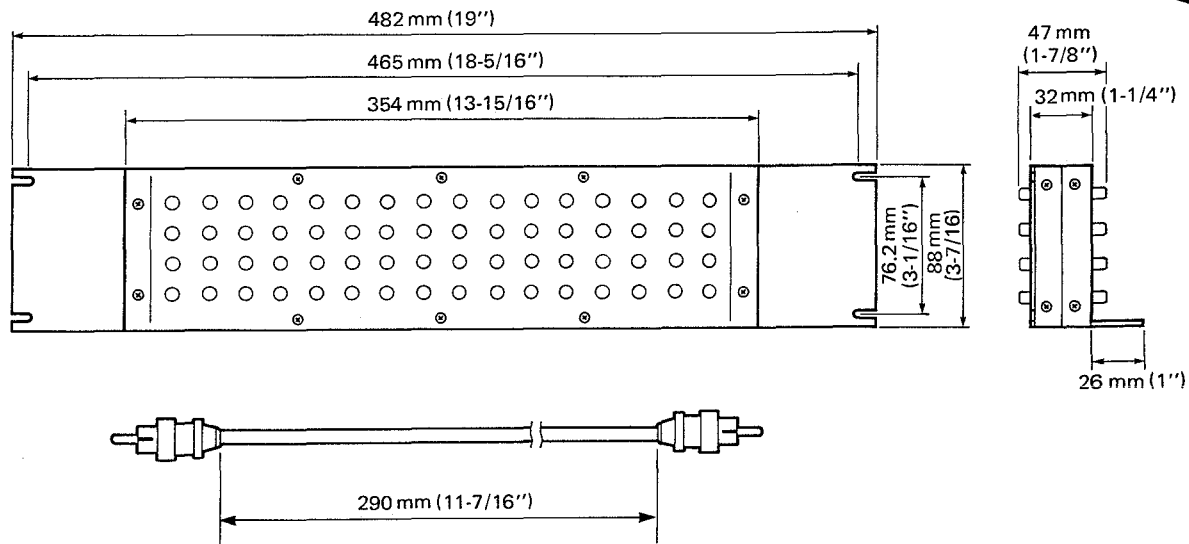
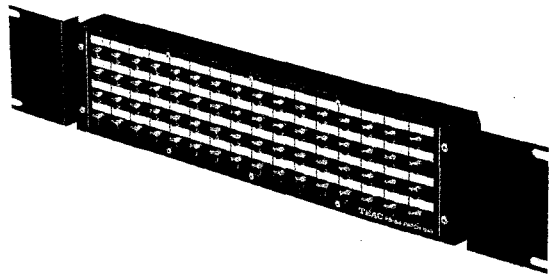


Mounting Application Example using the CS-607



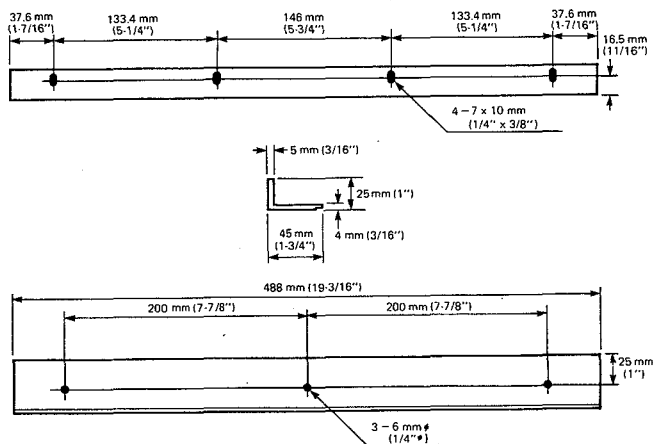
PB-64 Patch Bay

A tangle of cables is one of the growing vexations of any audio system. With all of the inputs and outputs plugged into the rear panel, jumper cables plugged into the front make any hookup you need neatly.



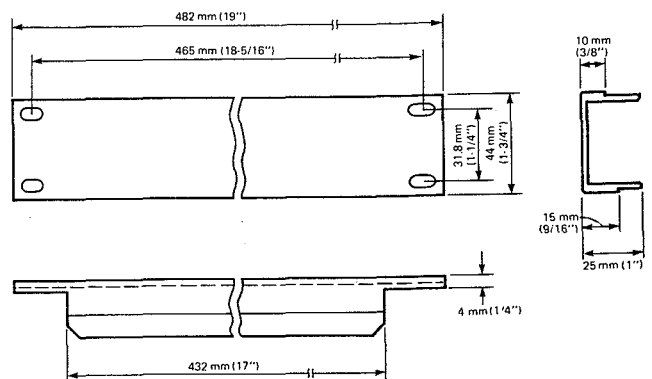
RM-500 Rack Mount Angle Kit (EIA 19-inch)

The RM-500 is a rack mount angle kit for the TASCAM 58 recorder/reproducer to enable mounting in the CS-607, or equivalent EIA standard 19-inch rack.



T-0804 Blank Panel (EIA 19-inch)

The T-0804 is designed to cover up the unavoidable blank spaces on the TASCAM CS-607, or equivalent EIA standard 19-inch rack.



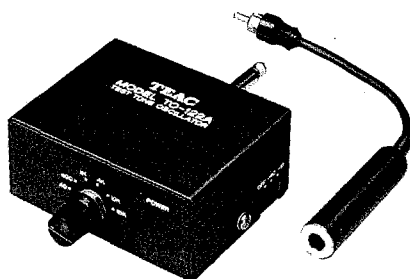
TO-122A Test Tone Oscillator

Checks input/output balance or other electric characteristics of the system chain. This unit is also useful for tape deck maintenance work.

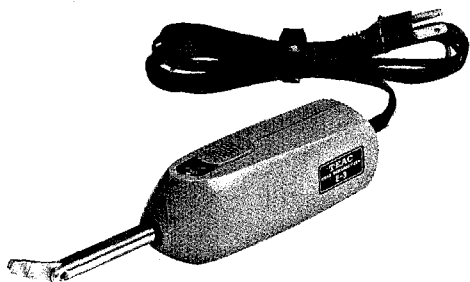
*Output pin jack

*Output level -10 dB, -40 dB (0 dB/1 V)

*Selectable frequencies 40 Hz, 400 Hz,
1 kHz, 4 kHz, 10 kHz,
15 kHz



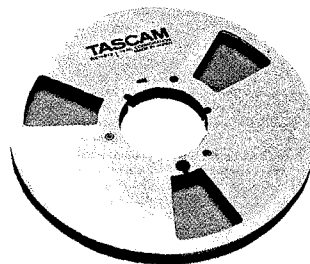
E-3 Head Demagnetizer



E-2A Bulk Eraser



RE-1013 Metal Reel (10-1/2", 1/2" tape)



Professional Low Loss Cable

There are vast differences in cable design and performance, and those differences can make or break an otherwise excellent sound system. When you're investing in the kind of high quality audio equipment represented by the TASCAM Studio Series, it makes sense to use TASCAM professional audio cables. Anyone who's switched to them will tell you they're worth every cent.

LOW CAPACITANCE

Our cables feature very low capacitance under 15 picofarads per foot, so they don't act as high-frequency roll-off filters as do typical cables of 100 or 300 pF/foot. In addition, our cables use an ultra-high density bare-copper braided shield (99 % coverage), so electrostatic noise (buzz or hum) and RFI (CB or broadcast signals) are kept out of your program.

Low capacitance is important, and so is consistent capacitance; that is, you want the electrical coupling of center conductor-to-shield to remain the same throughout the cable, even if it is sharply bent, crushed, flexed, or tugged. Should the local cable capacitance change, noise and/or signal losses often result. We utilize the unique dielectric known as Datalene. This special insulation keeps the stranded signal conductor perfectly centered within the shield. Datalene is about as flexible as foam core dielectrics but far more resistant to extreme heat or cold, and it has a "memory", so it retains its shape after flexing. Datalene also acts as a mechanical shock absorber, guarding against external impacts which, in other cables, might sever the center conductors and cause intermittent contact.

When we join the connector to the cable, we insert the cable's stranded center conductor all the way into the pin and then fill the pin with solder. The braid is wrapped and soldered a full 120° around the shell, not tacked at one spot, so you get maximum shielding and strength.

5. THEORY OF OPERATION

5-1. LOGIC SYMBOLS

The logic operation elements used in this unit and their definitions are as follows:

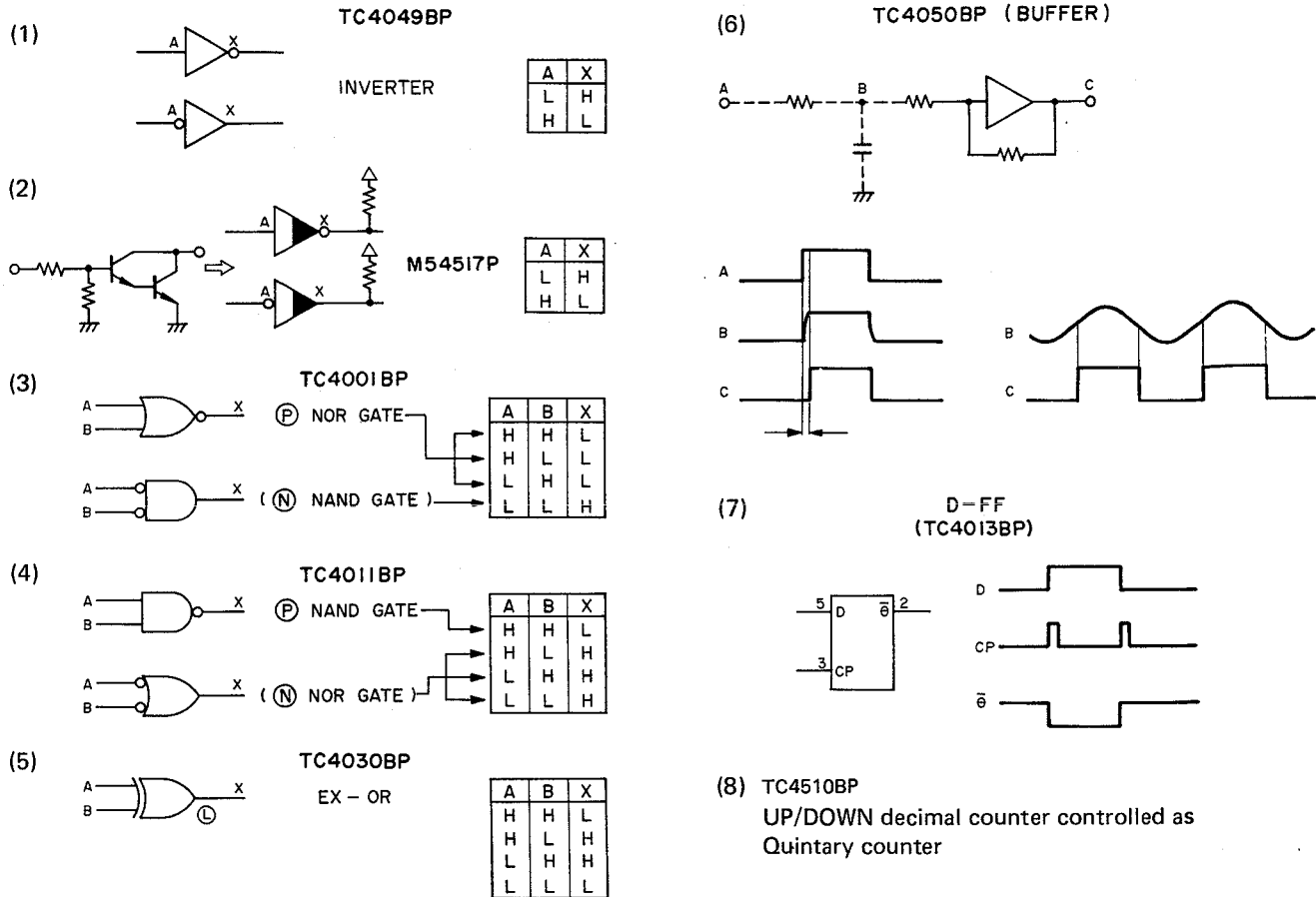


Fig. 5-1. Logic Symbol Chart

5-2. SENSOR CIRCUIT

A microcomputer is used to properly control all operating conditions such as running status of tape, direction of tape travel, etc. Running speed, tape direction, tape tension, stop condition, etc. are detected and input to the microcomputer, and for this reason, there are five photo-interruptor sensors employed in the unit.

5-2-1. Tape End Sensor Circuit

The end sensor circuit is comprized of a photo interruptor unit which consists of an LED, a photo transistor and a movable light shield plate placed between the LED and photo transistor, the switching transistor Q18 and the wave shaping circuit U13 (9, 10). The light shield

plate, mounted on the tape tension arm post, is placed between the LED and the photo transistor so that it blocks the light from the LED when the tape is completely wound or when the tension arm drops backwards due to tape slack. This causes the photo transistor to cut off, causing the output of U13 to go H. Furthermore, when the REMOTE switch is turned on or off during the record, record pause modes, a STOP L level signal is applied to the base of Q18, cutting it off. This also causes pin 10 of U13 to develop an H level signal, which is used as a signal to stop the tape transport when erroneous operating conditions occur.

5-2-2. Tension Sensors (L & R)

Two separate sensors are provided for the left and right reels, and since their functions are identical, this description will be made to describe the operation of the left sensor only. The operation theory is the same as that of the end sensor except that the structure of the light shield plate is different. The edge of the plate is eccentrically curved so that the amount of light blocked by the plate varies proportionally to the amount of tape tension or variations of tape tension.

Consequently, internal resistance between the emitter and collector of the photo transistor varies proportionally to the angle of the moved tension arm. That is, voltage which is proportional to the amount of tape slack is developed at

TP-1. The voltage output is led to a comparator in the motor control circuit and compared with a reference voltage specified by the operation mode. The resultant output, precisely controls the motor torque so that the tape tension is maintained within a specified range. The output voltage of TP-1 has been adjusted to approx. 5 V during the edit and play modes of operation, depending upon the tape tension variations for normal operation. Refer to Fig. 5-3 below and Fig. 7-17 on page 7-12.

A switching transistor Q1 connected in parallel with the sensor output is provided to disable the sensor as required. This operation will be described later on.

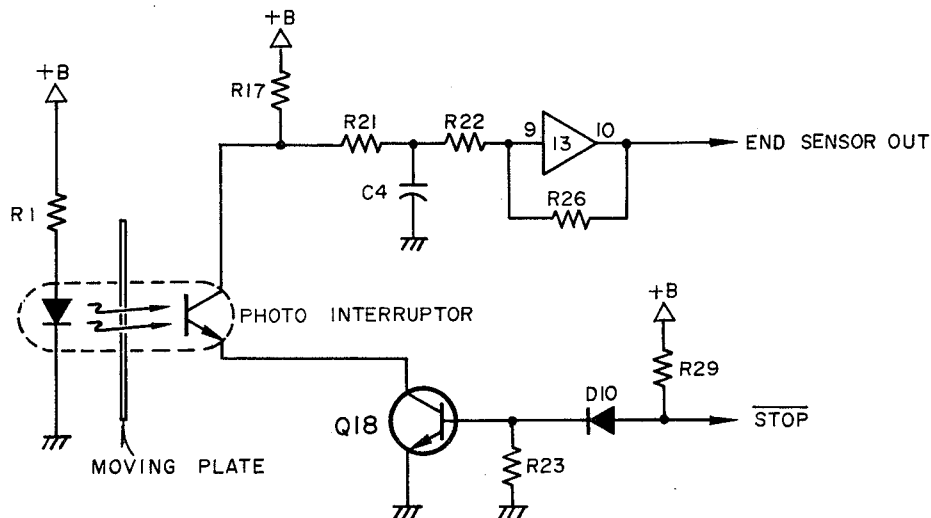


Fig. 5-2. Tape End Sensor Circuit

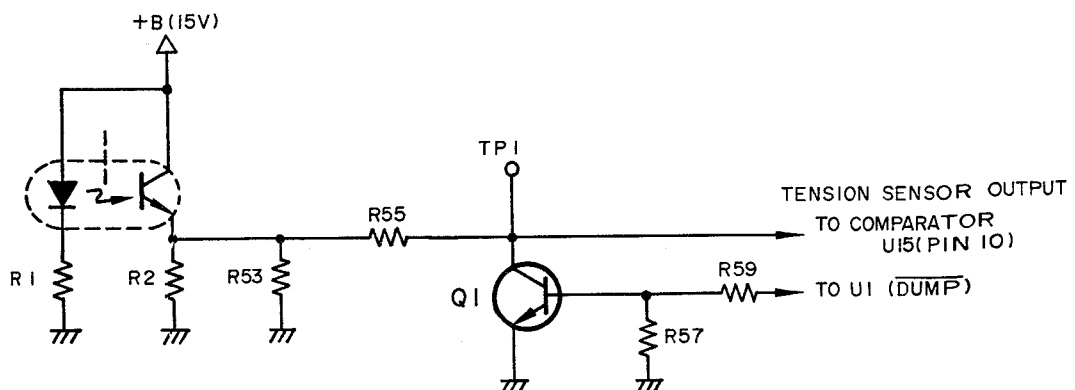


Fig. 5-3. Tension Sensors (L & R) Circuit

5-2-3. Speed Sensor Circuit

The sensor circuit detects both tape speed and transport directions of the tape. For these purposes, two photo interruptors are provided and each interruptor is positioned so that its pulse output has a 90° phase difference (Refer to Fig. 5-5, "External Counter Timing Chart", TP-4 and TP-5.). The pulse developed at TP-4 and TP-5 is proportional to the running speed of the tape and is respectively applied to pins 3 and 5 as a rotational pulse after waveshaping. As the result, an L level output is developed at (PLAY, FF) pin 2 output of flip-flop U6 when the tape is running in the forward direction, and an H level output is developed when the tape is running in the reverse direction. These signals are used so that the microcomputer is able to determine tape running conditions. U5, which is connected to the latter stage of U6, is a 1/5 divider provided to allow count-down of the rotational pulse frequency to match the computer's

processing ability. The output divided by one-fifth is obtained from D OUT during forward operation, and from output of the AND circuit (D11, D12, D13) during the reverse operation. The signal is then sent to the IRQ terminal (pin 4) of the microcomputer through the NOR gate U4, and is used to indicate the running time of the tape.

When the power is turned on, a positive pulse is generated from the SO terminal of the microcomputer and this turns the input to pin 9 of U5 positive. Then, the 1/5 divider is cleared and the external counter is reset.

Since the rotational pulse frequency output from the EX-OR gate (pin 11 of U12) is proportional to the running tape speed as mentioned previously, the pulse output is also used to control the motors. This operation will also be described later on.

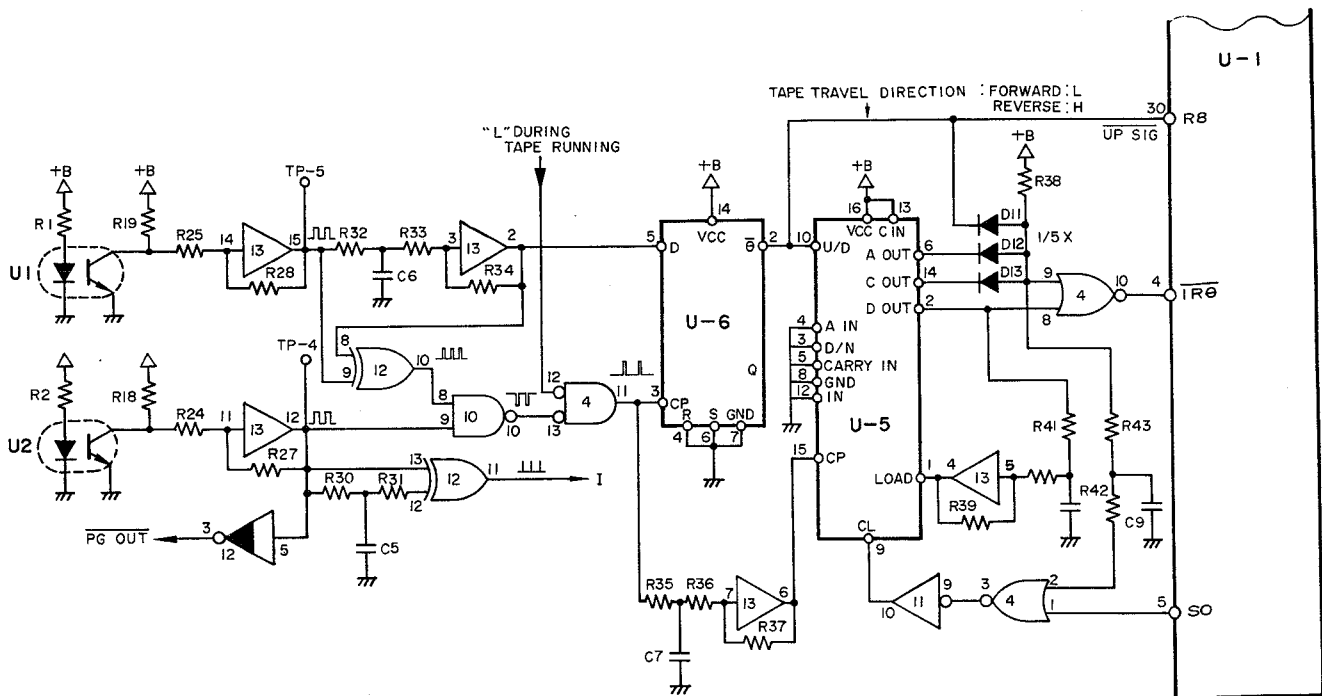


Fig. 5-4. Tape Speed & Direction Detector Circuit

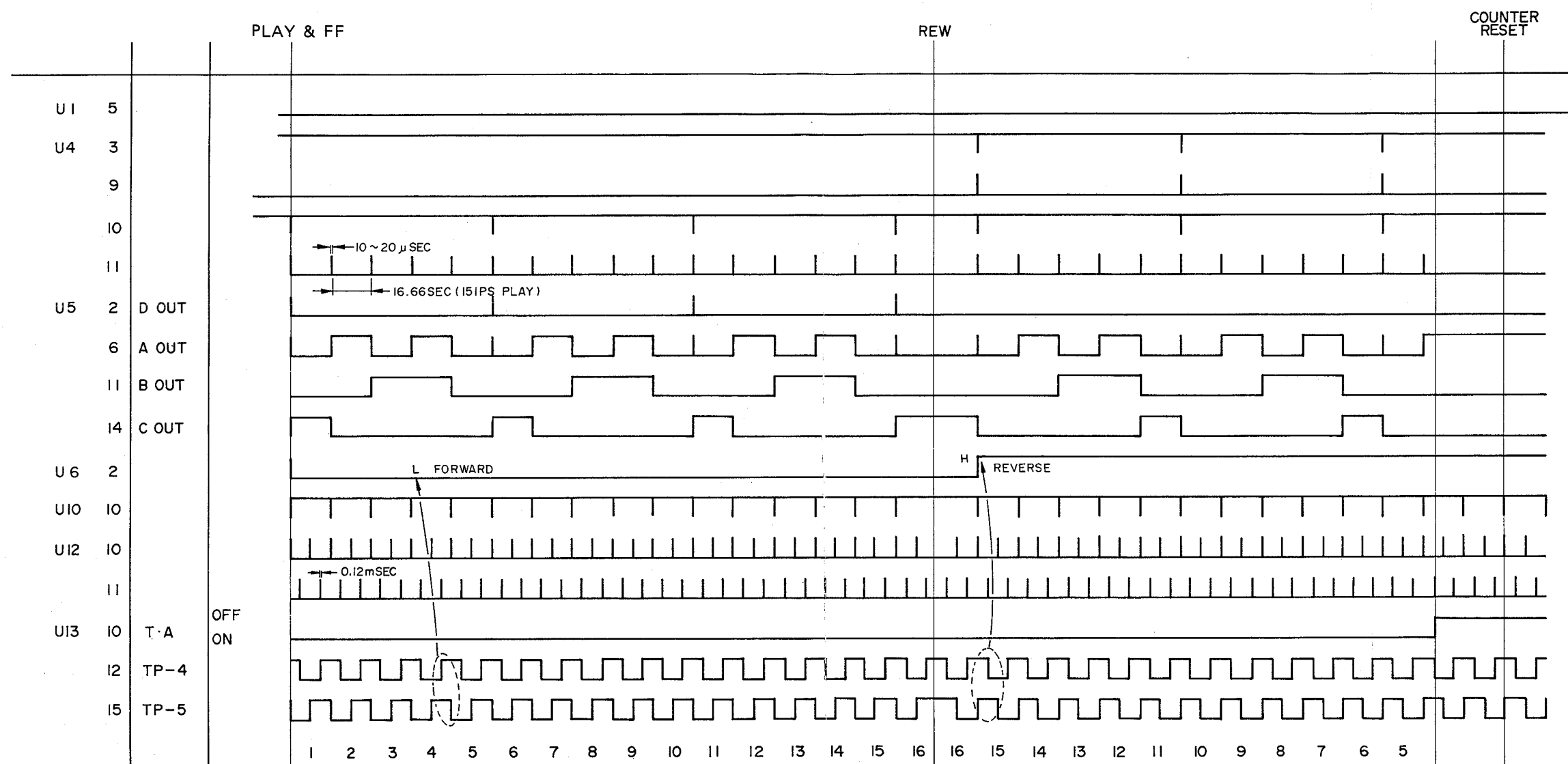


Fig. 5-5. External Counter Timing Chart

5-3. POWER ON/OFF RESET

To prevent erroneous operations of the micro-computer and any other circuits due to transient voltage variations of power lines when power is turned on or off, a power on/off reset circuit (Fig. 5-6) is provided so that the microcomputer will be automatically reset immediately after the power is turned on or off.

In operation, capacitor C1 is charged from the +5 V line first when the power is turned on, disabling the reset terminal of U1 (pin 3) from going high and causing it to remain low until C1 is completely charged. That is, the microcomputer is automatically set to a specified condition and rejects further instructions until all circuits, including amplifiers have been stabilized for approx. 3 seconds, during which, the PAUSE LED blinks to show that the system is in the initially specified condition. After C1 is fully charged and the 3 second period has elapsed, the reset terminal goes H and the computer is now able to accept instructions.

When the power is turned off, the electric charge stored in C1 is rapidly discharged through the low resistance of D9 and R137, indicated by the arrow in the illustration. This turns the reset terminal of U1 to an L level before the power line voltage for the microcomputer decreases, thus causing the computer to return to the reset condition.

The diode D38 is provided to discharge the reset terminal when the power line voltage is reduced, caused by a possible short-circuit from an external circuit such as a remote control circuit, etc.

The diode D36 in Fig. 5-6 is also provided to make D9 cut off by applying a higher voltage to the cathode of D9 than that of its anode. The voltage is generated by rectifying the 6 V AC voltage.

D35 and U19 detect the power off condition, and automatically sets the unit to the power off mode when the power is interrupted because of power failure, etc. In the normal state, a pulse signal, generated by rectifying and wave-shaping the 6 V AC, is applied to pin 32 of U1. The pulse is periodically checked by the microcomputer, and if two successive pulses are not applied continuously, the microcomputer determines that the power has been turned off or interrupted and generates a stop signal.

Furthermore, when the power is turned on, the microcomputer generates an H level signal from its own pin 37 (STB) for approx. 3.3 sec. (Reset + 3 sec.) to shorten out the amplifier circuits, thus preventing transient noises, etc. that are caused in initial operation. This power muting function is also actuated if two pulses are not successively input when the power is turned off.

Refer to Fig. 5-7 for the Timing Chart.

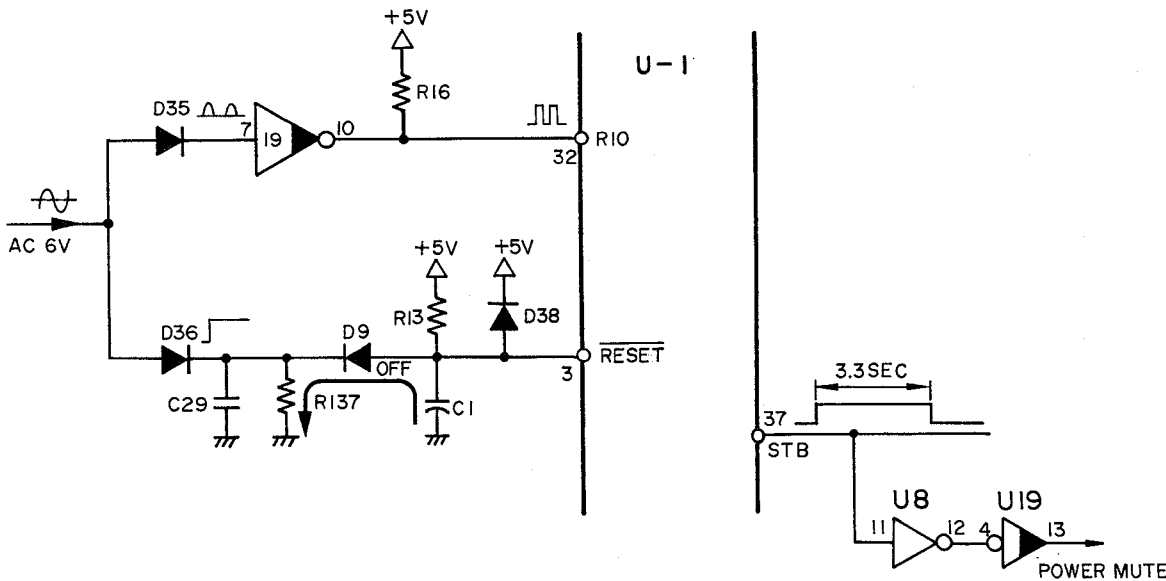


Fig. 5-6. Power On/Off Reset Circuit

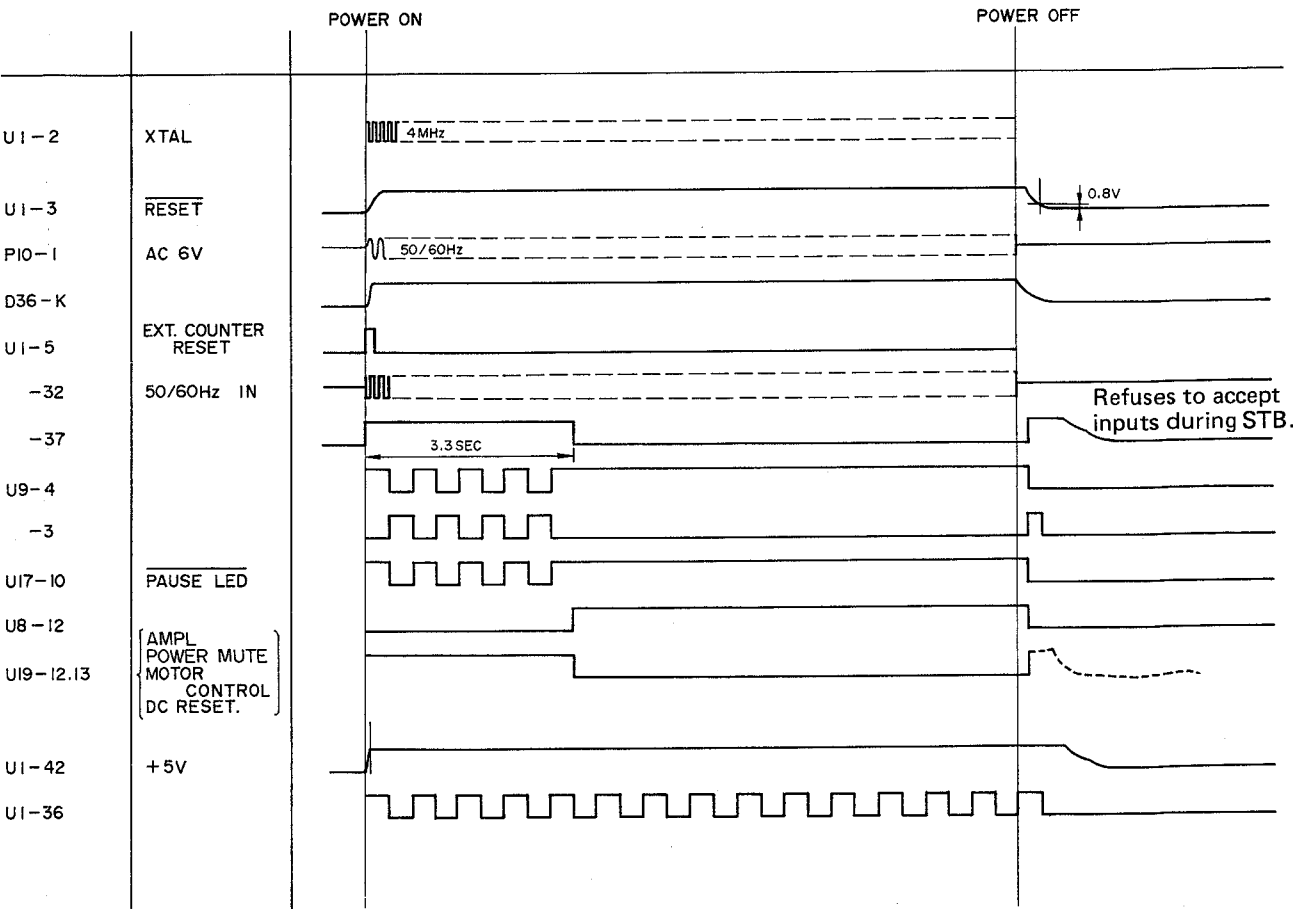


Fig. 5-7. Power On/Off Operations Timing Chart

In this tape deck, all operation signals are first sent to the internal logic circuits of the computer and processed according to the programs predetermined to adjust operating time and periods timings, etc. After that, the computer outputs the resulting outputs as operating instruction signals. The next description will be made on how the computer interprets the instructions.

been conducted because its own K0 terminal is set to H at time 'to'. Next, when the (►) and REC function buttons are pressed, K0 goes H at 'to' as mentioned above, and K1 also goes H at 't1'. Now, the computer understands that an operation for recording has been made, and all signals required for recording such as reel motor drive signals, record-reproduce switching signals, record indicator signal, etc. are generated. Sixteen instructions are possible since four scanning pulses and four instruction input terminals are used. However, in an actual unit, the instructions corresponding to the simultaneous depressing of two buttons or the depressing of a single button twice in succession, etc. are also programmed inside the computer U1; the actual instructions available are more than 16, and this makes the deck very easy to use.

In this way, most of the signals required to execute these various instructions are processed within the computer, resulting in the simplifying of external circuits. Thus, increasing reliability and making maintenance, troubleshooting, etc. easier to perform.



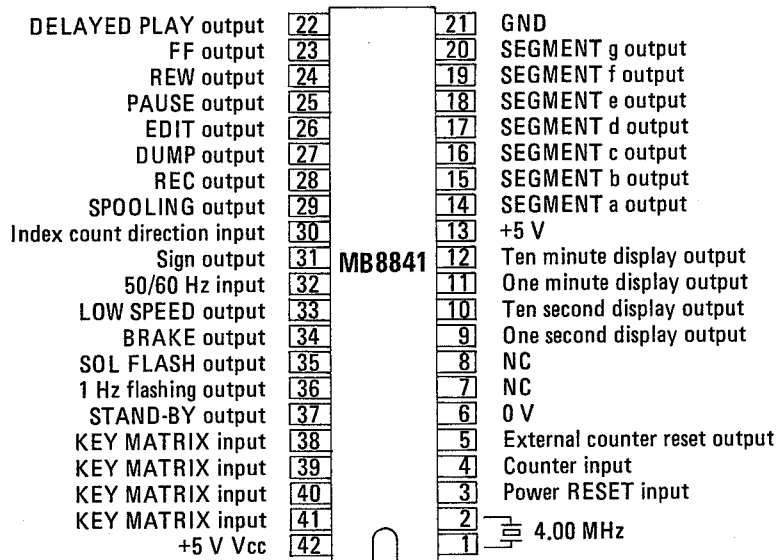


Fig. 5-9. U1 (MB8841) Pin Assignment and Function

5-5. TAPE TRANSPORT CONTROL CIRCUIT

This section provides information on the various tape transport modes and their associated circuits, including indicator circuits.

Refer to the section of the timing chart that corresponds to the mode in description. The small alphabetic letters at the beginning of each description are represented encircled in the timing chart. The encircled letters also indicate the timing sequence in the chart.

5-5-1. Reproduce Mode

When the play (▶) button is pressed, the micro-computer detects the play instruction as previously mentioned and the following signals develop.

- Pin 34 (BRAKE) goes L; Q11 turns off and its collector voltage is increased. This makes Q15 conductive, connecting the ground circuit of the brake solenoid. That is, the brake solenoid becomes energized and the brakes are released. Pin 15 of U19 goes from H to L, and this also releases the muting circuit in the playback circuit. Transistor Q7 is also turned on; Q1 goes off

and left tension sensor output is applied to pin 10 of U15 — the comparator circuit.

- Since pin 27 of U1 is at an H level, pin 13 of U7 becomes L. Q2 is still in the off condition and now, right tension sensor output is applied to pin 5 of U15 — another comparator circuit.
- Pin 22 (PLAY) of U1 goes L and Q12 turns on, followed by Q17 turning on which connects the ground side of the pinch roller solenoid to activate the pinch roller. Because the collector of Q13 is now H, a differential pulse is applied to the base of Q9 through C20, making Q9 turn on for a time period determined by the time constant provided. As a result, the take-up motor drive circuit is actuated in the fast forward mode for a brief time period to supply flashing voltage required for starting the motor, as described later.
- Pin 35 (FLASH) of U1 develops one negative pulse as shown in the timing chart. Then, Q10 and Q14 are turned on. Since Q14 collector voltage is applied to the base of Q8 of the power supply circuit, Q8 supplies a large

flashing voltage to the plunger solenoids which operate in the play mode for approx. 0.3 sec. to assure stable starting operations.

- e. In the play mode of operation, pin 23 (FF) and pin 24 (REW) of U1 are turned high, and pin 10 of U3 remains low. Pin 15 of U7 becomes H, and Q3 and Q4 are turned on accordingly. That is, the common junction point of R1, R2 and R3, R4 becomes grounded, and a reference voltage that's required for the comparator circuit of the left and right reel motor control circuits is determined. Namely, tension that's applied to each motor is determined. Furthermore, voltage proportional to the tension variations (approx. 5 V under normal operation) is applied from the left and right tension sensors to pin 10 and pin 5 of U15, respectively. Then, both comparators control the respective motors so that the tape is driven at the specified tension.
- f. The second stage circuit of the motor control circuit, or the circuit that includes U15 — the operational amplifier (12, 13, 14), and Q5 and Q21 that make up the constant current control circuit operates to ensure that a constant current is always supplied to the motor by applying the feed back voltage developed across resistor R1 to pin 13 of U15.

5-5-2. Fast Forward Mode

- a. When the fast forward (▶▶) button is pressed, pin 35 (FLASH) of U1 goes L and a flashing current flows into the plunger solenoids as mentioned in the reproduce mode.
- b. Pin 23 (FF) of U1 goes L and this causes pin 10 of U3 to develop an H level to make pin 15 of U7 go L. As the result, transistors Q3 and Q4, which determine the reference voltage for the comparators, are turned off and R1, R2 and R3, R4 are respectively connected in series to provide a reference voltage for the fast forward mode of operation.
With pin 23 (FF) L, contacts 1 and 2 of the analog switch U14 are closed because output pin 11 of U7 is sent H, and the control voltage described in the following section is applied to the non-inverting input terminal of the comparator U15 in the take-up motor control circuit.
- c. Rotational Pulse Control
As mentioned in 5-2-3, "Speed Sensor Circuit", pin 11 of U12 (EX-OR) always develops

rotational pulses, the frequency of which, is proportional to the tape transport speed. (Refer to Fig. 5-10, Waveform (A).) Since pins 29 and 33 of U1 are H, pin 11 of U2 goes L, and U14 contacts 10 and 11 are closed. Capacitor C21 is charged from a +15 V line through R115, R116 and R113, R114 — a parallel network. The rotational pulses, however, owing to having a frequency proportional to the tape speed, are applied to C21 through resistor R117 as shown in Fig. 5-10, waveform (B). The charged voltage across C21 turns high as the tape speed decreases or low as the tape speed increases. The charging and discharging voltages across C21 are rectified and filtered by C22 and R118. Thus, the voltage developed is applied to the operational amplifier through the analog switch U14 (1 — 2), just described to control the takeup reel motor so that the tape speed is always constant regardless of the amount of tape wound on the tape reels. The reference voltage for back tension, or at TP-1 is approx. 7.4 ~ 8 V during the fast forward mode of operation. Another reference voltage obtained by rectifying the rotational pulses at R118 (hot side) is approx. 1.2 ~ 1.25 V under stabilized tape running condition.

- d. During the forward spooling mode, pin 29 (SPOOL) of U1 goes L. Then, terminals 8 and 9 of the analog switch U14 close and R111, R112 and R115, R116 are connected in parallel. The time constant for the rotational pulse control voltage generating circuit is then decreased to within a specified value for the spooling mode.
- e. The L output from pin 29 is also applied to pin 6 of U17 through output pin 15 of U17, causing the SPOOLING indicator LED to light.
- f. During the fast forward mode, pin 10 of U3 is H and pin 11 of U3 is L, causing Q12 to turn on, followed by Q16 also turning on. At this time, the lifter solenoid is activated and the tape is lifted from the head surface to prevent abrasion.
- g. The operation of the spooling mode is programmed to be performed by the pressing of the (▶▶) button twice in succession.
- h. For details regarding the motor control circuit, refer to the Fig. 5-12, "Motor Control Timing Chart".

5-5-3. Rewind Mode

- a. When the rewind (◀◀) button is pressed, pin 24 (REW) of U1 goes L. Then pin 10 of U3 goes H, and Q3 and Q4 also go on the same as in the fast forward mode. With this, the reference voltage for fast winding is set.
- b. With the REW output turned L, terminals 3 and 4 of the analog switch U14 are each closed. The rotational control voltage described in 5-5-2, "Fast Forward Mode" is applied to pin 12 of U15 in the supply reel motor control circuit to control the motor so that constant tape speed is maintained regardless of the amount of tape on the reel.
- c. The operation of the spooling mode in the rewind mode is the same as that in the fast forward mode, except for rotational direction of the motors.

5-5-4. From Rewind to Play Mode

- a. When the play (▶) button is pressed during the rewind mode of operation, pin 23 of U1 goes L first, and the tape deck is temporarily set to the fast forward mode to apply electromagnetic braking to the supply reel motor. When the tape speed is decreased to 40 ips (100 cm/sec.), the electromagnetic brake is automatically released and the mechanical brake is activated to make the motor stop.
- b. Approx. 0.5 sec. after the mechanical brake is activated, or upon a play instruction, the microcomputer U1 develops an L level signal at its own pin 22. The tape deck will now operate in the play mode as described in 5-5-1.

5-5-5. Pause Mode

- a. When the PAUSE button is pressed, pin 25 of U1 goes L, and as a result, pin 15 of U19 goes L and the play mute operation is released.
- b. Pin 34 (BRAKE) goes H, and brakes are applied to both reel tables.
- c. With pin 25 of U1 turned L, pin 3 of U9 goes H, causing pin 10 of U17 to go L. This in turn, causes the PAUSE LED (D4) to light.

5-5-6. Edit Mode (Manual)

- a. When the EDIT button is pressed, pin 26 of the microcomputer U1 goes L, causing pin 4 of U2 to go high, followed by pin 16 of U18 going L to turn the EDIT indicator LED on.
- b. Pin 34 (BRAKE) of U1 also goes L, releasing the mechanical brakes from the reels which allows the reels to be manually rotated.
- c. During the edit mode of operation, all mechanical operations are in the play mode of operation, except for the pinch roller being disabled.

5-5-7. Edit Play Mode (Dump)

- a. In this mode of operation, pin 27 of U1 goes L, and pin 4 of U2 goes H to turn the EDIT indicator LED on.
- b. Pin 4 of U7 also goes L and Q2 is turned on because of its base potential increasing to a high level. With Q2 on, pin 5 of U15 — the comparator of the right reel motor control circuit, is grounded causing the right reel motor to stop. However, as pin 22 of U1 is being maintained at an L level, the pinch roller is activated, so the tape threaded can be fed during the play mode.
(This circuit functions if the END sensor is actuated — output goes H.)

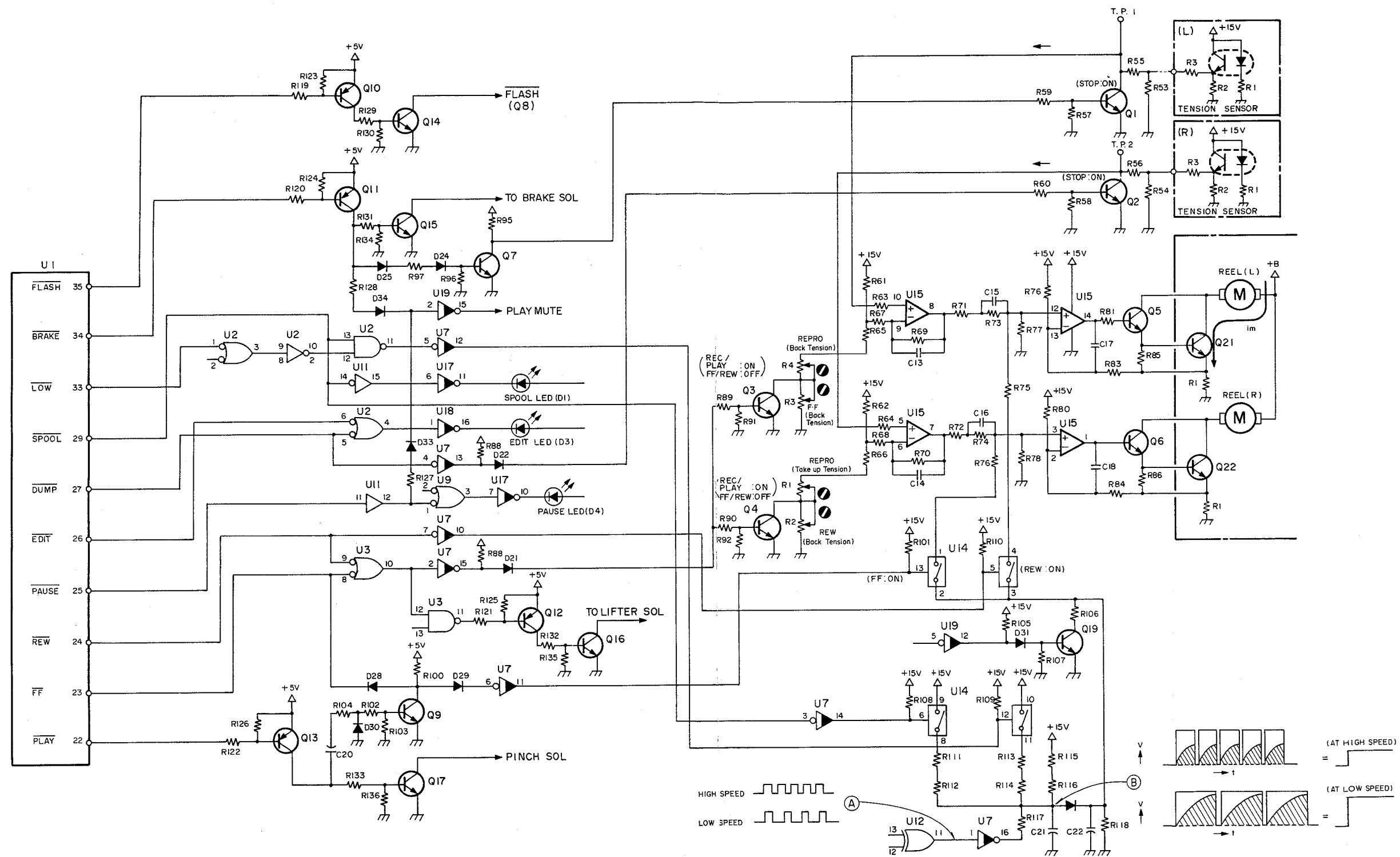


Fig. 5-10. Reel Motor Control Circuit

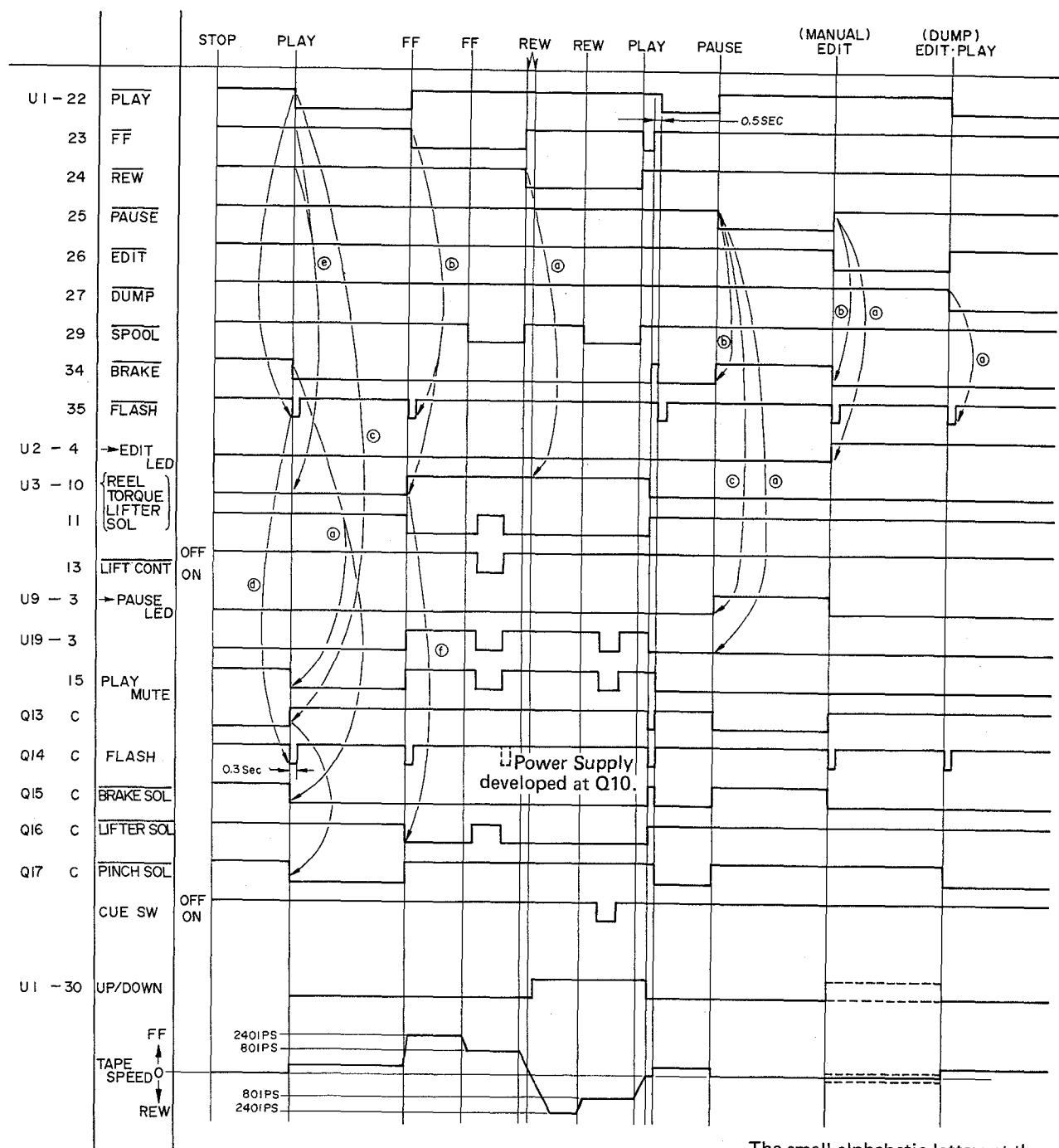
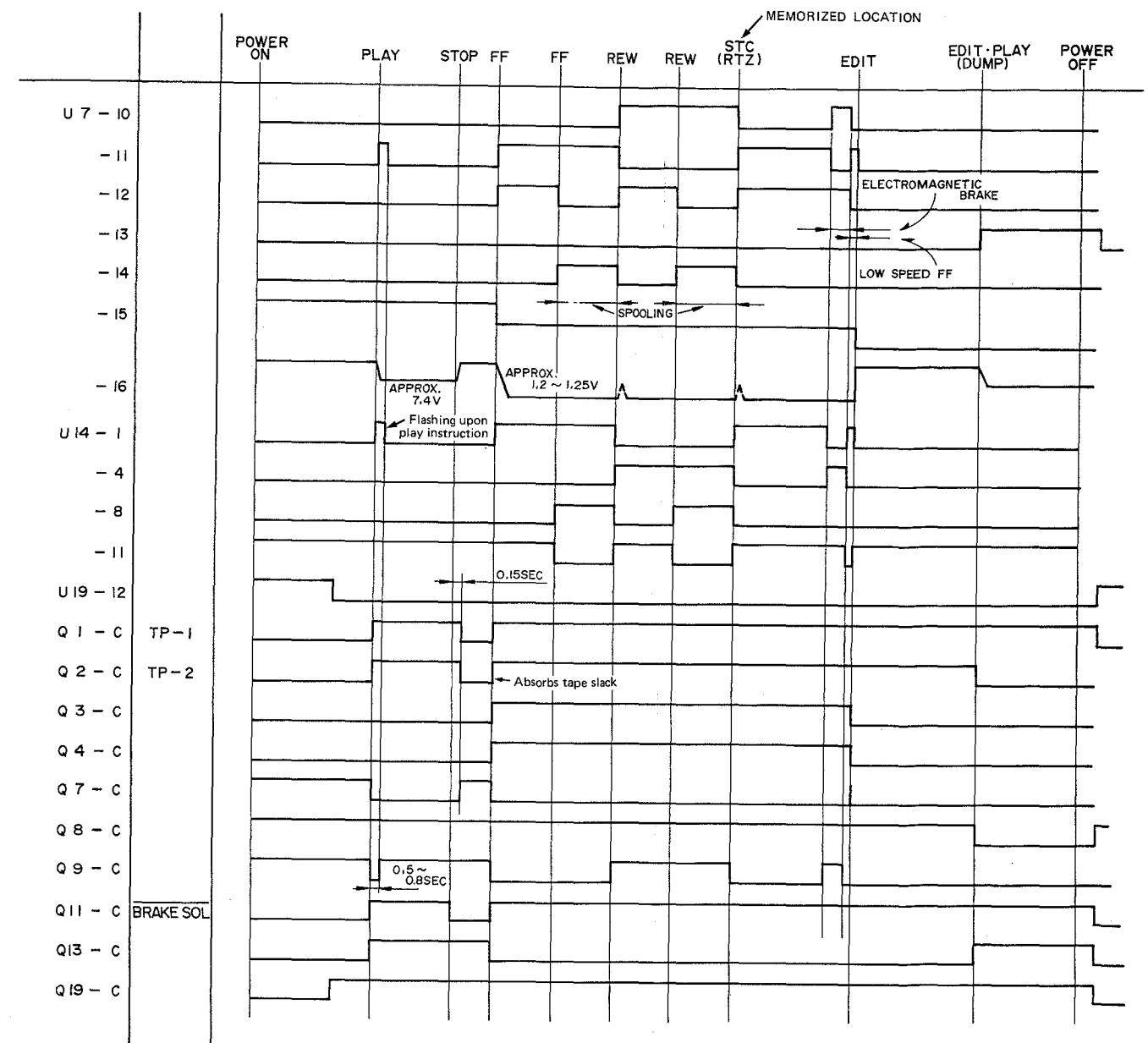


Fig. 5-11. Control Circuit Timing Chart

The small alphabetic letters at the beginning of each description are represented encircled in the timing chart. The encircled letters also indicate the timing sequence in the chart.



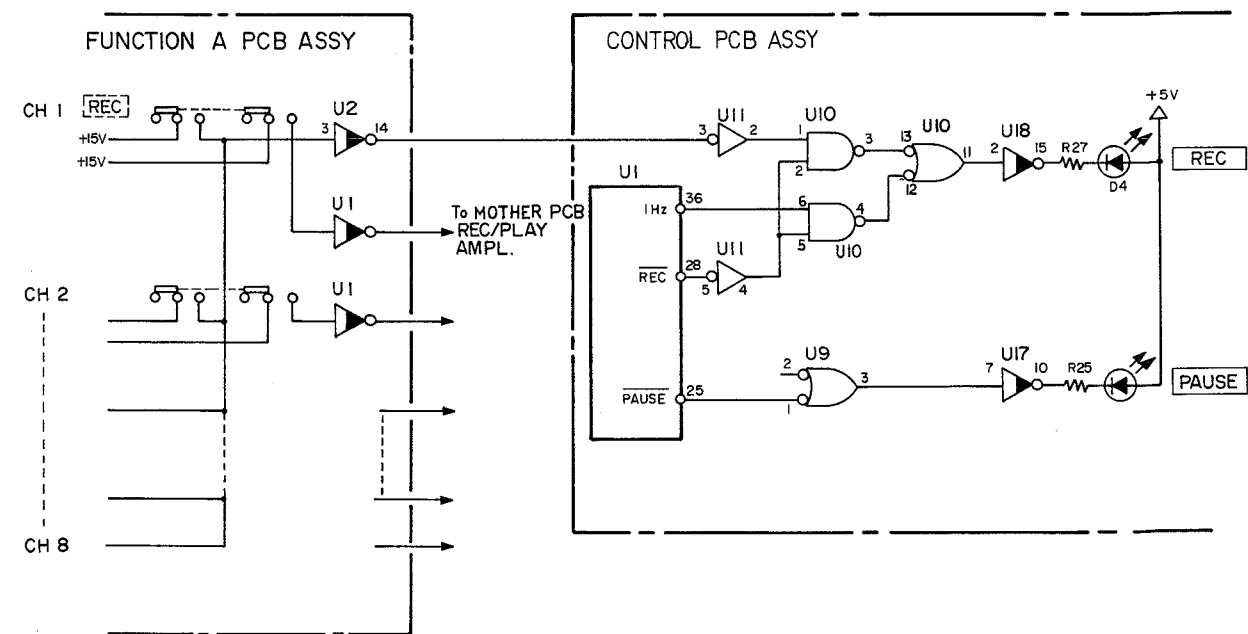
Note: Only functions ON/OFF, except for U7-16.

Fig. 5-12. Motor Control Timing Chart

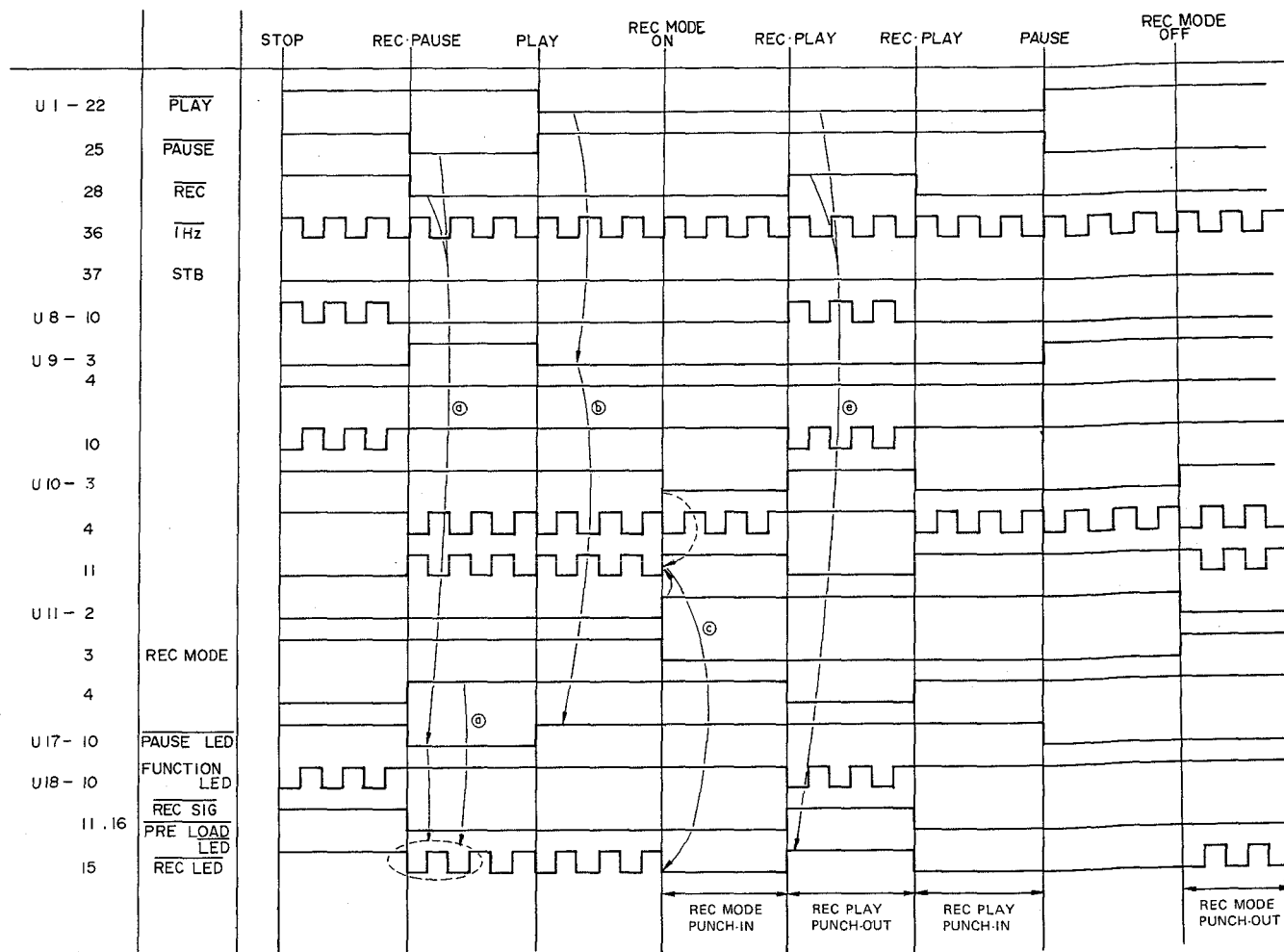
- a. When the RECORD and PAUSE buttons are pressed for record level setting, each portion of the circuit operates as indicated in the "Timing Chart for Recording Operations" shown in Fig. 5-14. The PAUSE indicator LED lights and the RECORD indicator LED begins blinking when the REC function switch is placed in the OFF position. The RECORD indicator LED will remain on if pin 3 of U11 is H and if the REC function switch is in the ON position. (Refer to Fig. 5-13). Pin 25 (PAUSE) of U1 goes L and the transport mechanism switches to the pause mode.
- b. Next, when the play (►) button is pressed to release the pause mode to enable recording, pin 3 of U9 goes L and the PAUSE LED is turned off.
- c. Under this condition, the RECORD LED continues to blink off and on, indicating that recording can not be conducted. Next, when one of the eight REC function switches is pressed, designating a channel selection for recording, pin 14 (REC MODE Sig.) of U2,

shown in the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY goes L, causing pin 3 of U11 shown in the CONTROL PCB ASSY below to increase to an H level. Then pin 3 of U10 goes L and pin 11 of U10 goes H, and at this point, the RECORD LED remains on instead of blinking. Furthermore, if one or more of the REC function switches are turned on, the REC READY Sig. terminal(s) corresponding to the channel(s) designated goes L and the designated record circuit(s) are actuated to enable recording operations. (Refer to 5-7-4, "Record Mode".)

d. When RECORD and play (▶) buttons are pressed together during recording, the recording mode changes to the punch-out mode. The punch-out mode can be changed to the punch-in mode by pressing these two buttons once again. These operations are controlled through the microcomputer and no external circuits are concerned. Therefore, if these operations are not executed as anticipated, the operation mode switches or the microcomputer may be suspected.



5 - 16



Note.

- 1 The record mode can be released by depressing any mode selection button other than PAUSE and play (▶).
- 2 The record mode is disabled during the STC-Play or RTZ-Play modes of operation.

The small alphabetic letters at the beginning of each description are represented encircled in the timing chart. The encircled letters also indicate the timing sequence in the chart.

Fig. 5-14. Timing Chart for Recording Operations

5-5-9. STC Mode (Search-to-Cue)

The microcomputer has another tape counter inside to register tape positions for searching a cue position on a tape. By pushing the STC button, the STC mode can be set regardless of the transport mode selection. The microcomputer starts the search of the cue position which was previously set through the CUE button, and automatically stops the deck when that designated position is detected. For example, assuming that the beginning of the tape is 00 min. 00 sec., and the CUE button is pressed after the tape has run for 10 min. 00 sec., the 10 min. 00 sec. point is entered into the counter memory and operations continue for the desired length of time (i.e. indicated as 5 min. 00 sec. in the timing chart). When you want to rewind the tape to the 10 min. 00 sec. position, set through the CUE button previously, press the STC button and the tape will be rewound and automatically stopped when it reaches the specified position. This operation is conducted as shown in the Timing Chart in Fig. 5-15. In this figure, description is made with the tape hypothetically running in the fast forward mode, but the same theory can be also applied for operations in the rewind mode.

If the STC button is pressed 5 minutes after the time stored in the internal counter memory (This position is equivalent to -5 min. 00 sec. in the timing chart), the operation mode of the unit is changed to the fast forward mode, and the tape is rapidly wound. When the tape comes within approx. 18 feet (5-1/2 meters) of the designated stop position, the electromagnetic brake is automatically applied (Namely, fast forward mode is changed to rewind mode) to decelerate the tape speed. The electromagnetic brake is released when the tape speed is decreased to less than 40 ips (100 cm/sec.), and the mode changes to the LOW speed fast forward mode (Approx. 30 ips (76 cm/sec.)). The tape is then driven at a low speed and when the position corresponding to 10 min. 00 sec. is reached, the mechanical brake is actuated to stop the tape movement. All operations mentioned above are controlled by the internal logics of the microcomputer, to which, signals that indicate the tape running speed and its directions are input, meaning that this operation process can not be seen externally. (Refer to Fig. 5-15.)

NOTE:

1. If the STC button is pressed within 18 feet (5-1/2 meters) of the cue position, memorized by the CUE button, the tape is driven at a low speed right from the beginning.
2. When the tape speed is not decreased to 40 ips (100 cm/sec.) at the specified position (18 feet (5-1/2 meters) from the setting of the cue position), which is caused by the amount of tape wound on the left and right reels, the tape may overrun the cue position once, but it will return and stop. The stop error indicated is approx. 1 sec.
3. If the CUE button is not pressed, the 00 min. 00 sec. factor will be automatically memorized as a cue position when the power is turned on the next time. The cue position is always determined by the pressing of the CUE button. The tape position corresponding to the cue position will not change even if the RESET button is pressed after the cue position is set.

5-5-10. RTZ Mode (Return-to-Zero)

Operations are the same as those in the STC mode except that the memorized position corresponds to the 00 min. 00 sec. position on the digital counter.

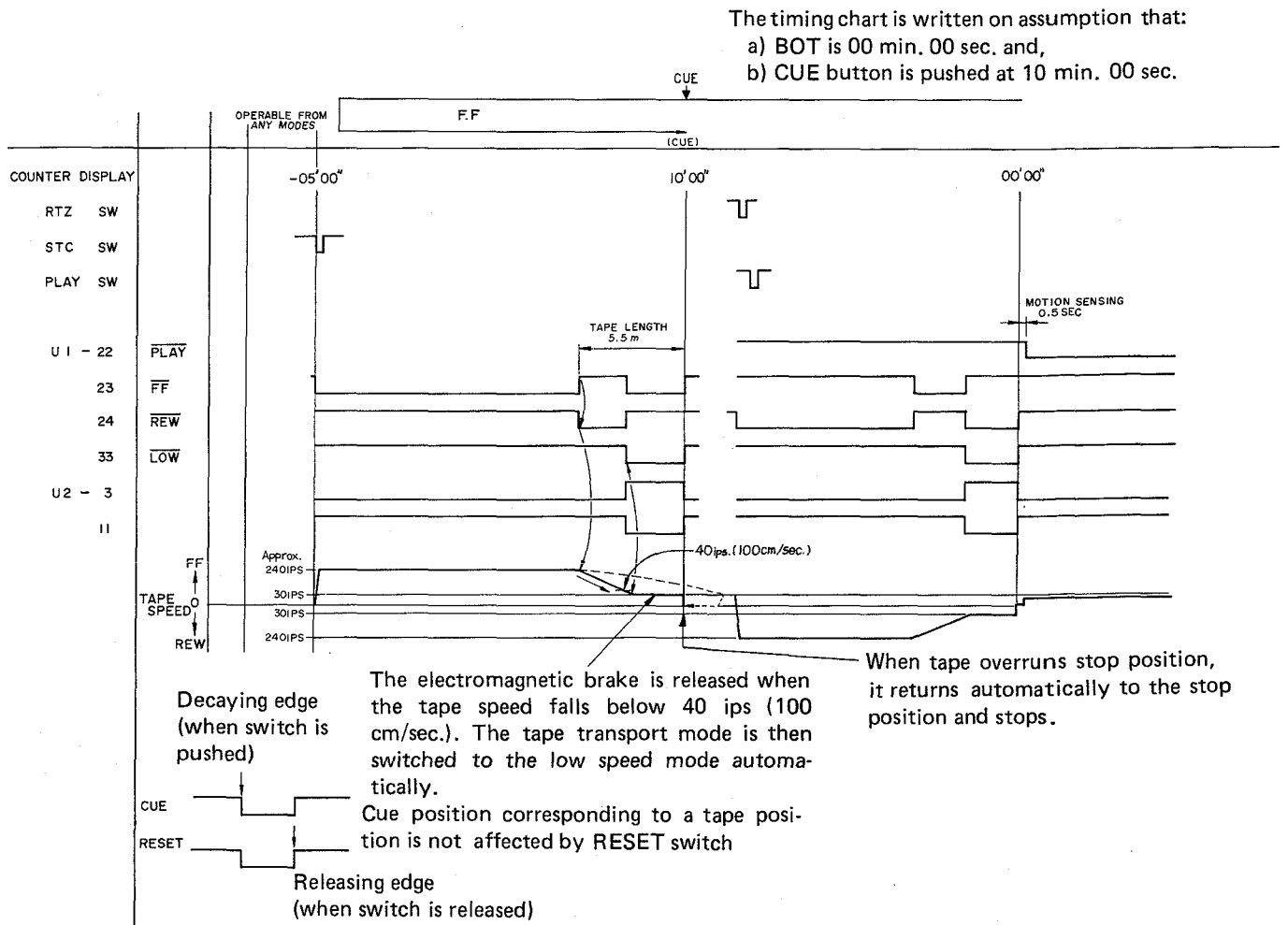
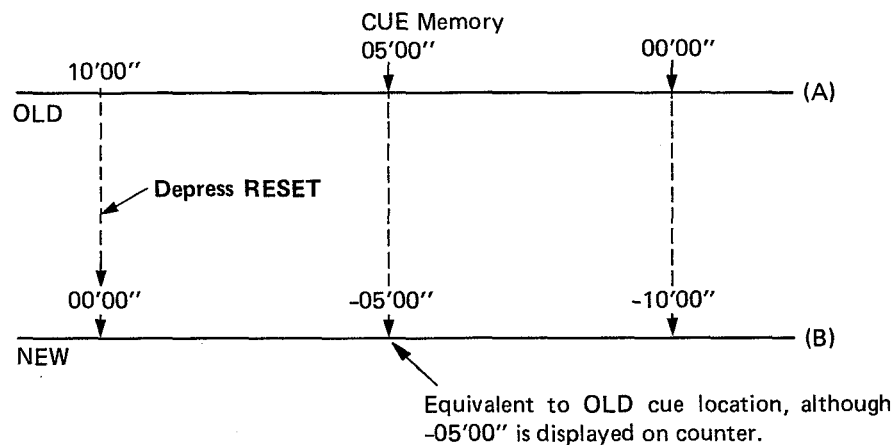


Fig. 5-15. Timing Chart for Search Mode



5-6. EXTERNAL CONTROL CIRCUIT

For operation flexibility of the 58, multipin connectors (REMOTE, and ACCESSORY) for external control units have been provided on the rear panel. This section describes the interface circuits used for the external controls.

5-6-1. Remote Control Circuit

Remote control terminals are provided to allow duplication of the 58's front panel controls. Since a parallel-operation type remote control system is employed, the operation theory of the remote control is entirely the same as that described under 5-4 "Entry of Operation Instructions". However, since extending the scanning pulses from the computer to the external remote control circuit may require more complicated circuitry in the operation instruction circuit, an interface circuit, as shown in Fig. 5-16, has been provided between the pin terminals and the microcomputer itself.

1. In the 58's control panel, four phase scanning pulses, sent from the microcomputer, are properly picked-up with the control switches disclosed in a matrix array and returned to the microcomputer under a specific timing

status, depending upon the instruction to be performed. However, in the units remote control circuit, as stated, the interface IC U1 (LC7800) is used as an interpreter, which transfers remote control instructions expressed in low logic level signals (non pulse) to the computer, instead of to the switch(es) on the front panel. Since no pulses are used in the remote control circuit and all instructions are transferred to the computer through the interface IC by simply grounding a line corresponding to an operating instruction, remote control operation is carried out in a stable manner.

2. Diodes, D1~D30, connected to terminals 1~6, 9~12, 16, and 23~26 of U1, are provided as protector circuits for abnormal input and output signals.
- Transistors Q1~Q4 are used to invert scanning pulses sent from the computer.
3. Numerous other control lines are connected to the REMOTE control connectors. For their uses, refer to the operating function table on page 5-25.

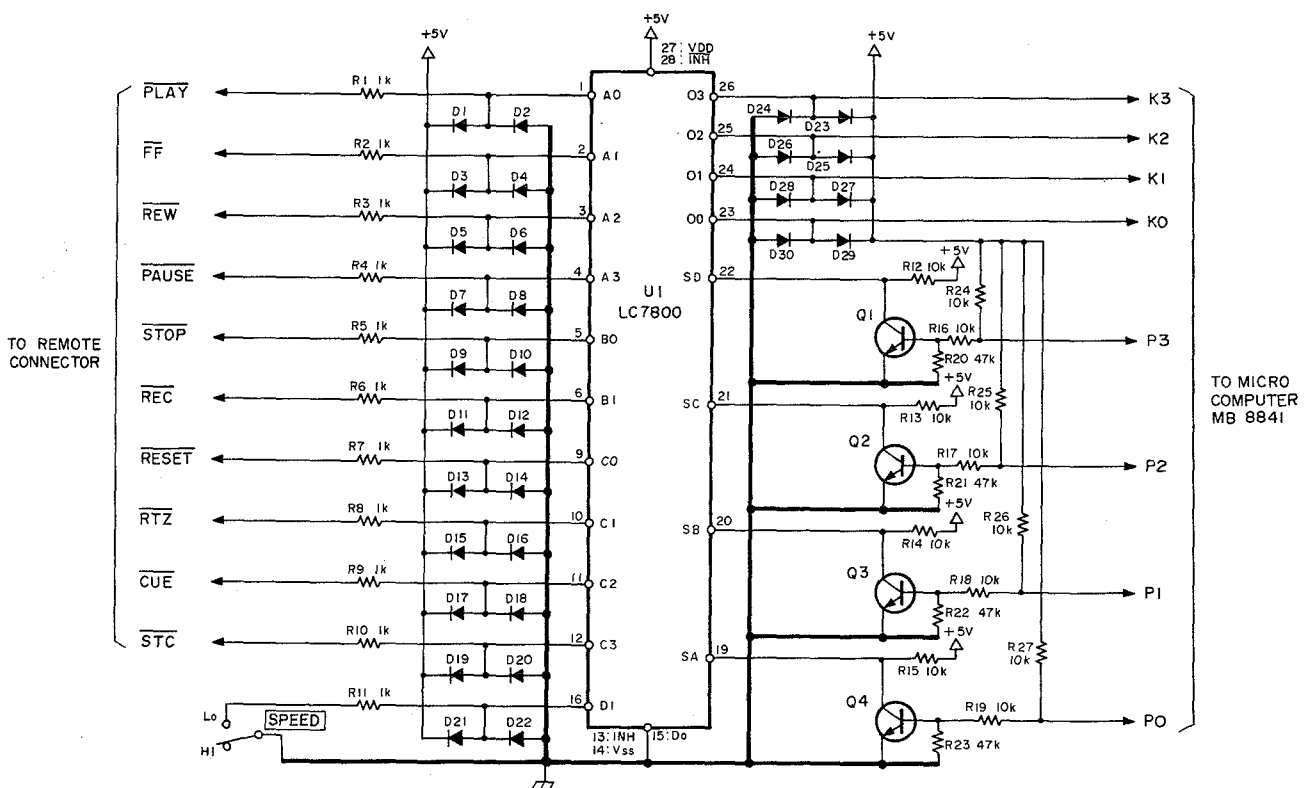


Fig. 5-16. Remote Control Interface Circuit

5-6-2. ACCESSORY Circuit for External Synchronization

This section describes some interface circuits that are connected to the ACCESSORY connector.

A. Remote Control Circuit

Control lines connected to pins A~F are identical to lines described under 5-6-1 "Remote Control Circuit", so description regarding this circuit will be omitted.

B. Fast Forward and Rewind Tally Circuits (pins N, P)

These circuits supply information that the deck is operating in fast forward or rewind mode to the external equipment connected to the 58, and operate as follows: (Refer to Fig. 5-17.)

1. The anode side of D36 is connected to pin 15 of U7 on the control circuit and logic L level signal is applied to the anode during FAST tape travel, and an H level signal is applied during the other remaining tape travel modes. As the result, Q9 is cut off during FAST tape travel mode, resulting in D32 and D35 cutting off. When Q9 is turned on during the remaining tape travel modes, both Q5 and Q8 base

voltages decrease to L, turning them off. In other words, Q5 and Q8 operating status do not change during any mode other than the FAST mode of operation if the UP/DOWN signal is changed.

2. During forward mode of operation, anode side of D33 goes H and this turns on Q7, which in turn makes Q6 and Q8 cut off. Then Q5 is turned on and its collector voltage goes L, thus indicating that the deck is being operated in a FAST forward mode. On the other hand, if the deck is being operated in the rewind mode, input to D33 becomes L, then Q5 is cut off and Q8 is turned on (showing L level), thus indicating to the external circuit that the deck is in the rewind mode.

C. Play Tally Circuit (pin M)

A resistor R40 is connected to the Q13 collector which develops an H level signal during play mode of operation (refer to the below control circuits.).

Accordingly, Q10 is turned on during play mode and its collector voltage falls to L, thus indicating to the external circuit that the deck is being operated in the play mode.

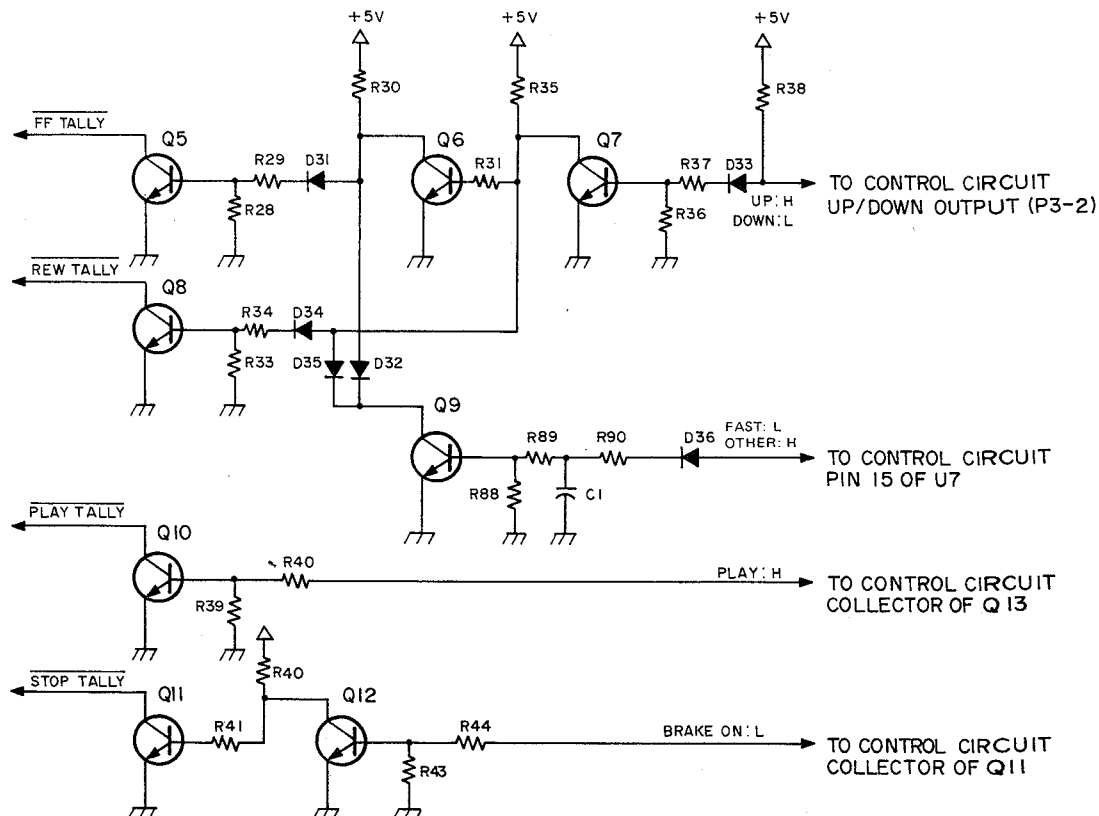


Fig. 5-17. Tally Circuit

D. Stop Tally Circuit (pin R)

This circuit obtains its drive signal from the motor brake circuit, and R44 is connected to Q11 collector (on Control Circuit, not Q11 in Fig. 5-17), which develops an L level signal when the deck is in the stop mode. Consequently, Q12 is cut off and Q11 is turned on during the stop mode of operation, thus indicating to the external circuit that the deck is being stopped.

E. External Pitch Control Circuit (pins KK, LL)

This circuit is used to synchronize the 58's tape speed with external equipment used with the 58, and synchronization is carried out by external pulses supplied from that equipment.

1. The synchronous 9.6 kHz pulse (for nominal tape speed) is first applied to Q13 base and amplified/inverted, and then applied to both Q19 and Q14 bases. However, as each pulse applied to Q19 is differentiated by C7 before it is applied to Q19, Q19 collector develops a very narrow L level pulse with the same period as that of input pulse, as shown in Fig. 5-18 (TP-2), and used as a sampling pulse.
2. On the other hand, each pulse applied to Q14 base is processed as they pass through Q14, Q15, and Q16 to produce an integrated signal across the integrating capacitor C5, (TP-1), as shown in Fig. 5-18 (TP-1). While, the sampling pulse is being applied to Q17 gate, Q17 is turned on during a short sampling (L level) time period. Consequently, only the hatched area of the integrated sawtooth signal is sampled and charged to C6. Since the input and output impedance of FETs Q18 and Q19 are respectively very high, the charges stored in C6 are held without any change until the next sampled pulse is input, thus Q18 source develops an output voltage proportional to the charged voltage held in C6. Since the amplitude of the integrated sawtooth voltage to be sampled is inversely proportional to the frequency of input synchronous signal, the control voltage developed at Q18 source will increase as the frequency of the synchronous signal decreases. The thus obtained DC control signal, which is inversely proportional to the synchronous signal frequency, is applied to pin 3 of the U2 comparator and compared with the reference signal being applied to pin 2 of the compara-

tor, and the amplified difference output controls the speed of the capstan motor, thus maintaining the synchronization to the external equipment.

R7 (mounted on the Pitch Control PC board) is the trim pot for reference voltage adjustment.

3. On the other hand, Q18's source output is applied to non-inverting terminal pin 5 of U2. In the event where Q18's source output voltage increases too high or the input voltage at pin 5 exceeds the reference voltage at pin 6, pin 7 develops an output voltage and this makes Q20 turn on. As Q20 is turned on, Q21 is turned off. Then, the relay K1 is deenergized and the external pitch control circuit is disconnected and the internal normal pitch control circuit is actuated. Namely, U2 (5, 6, 7) and Q20 function to automatically disconnect the external pitch control circuit when abnormal synchronous signals above the specified range enter.
- F. For functions of remaining connector terminals, refer to pages 5-26 and 5-27.

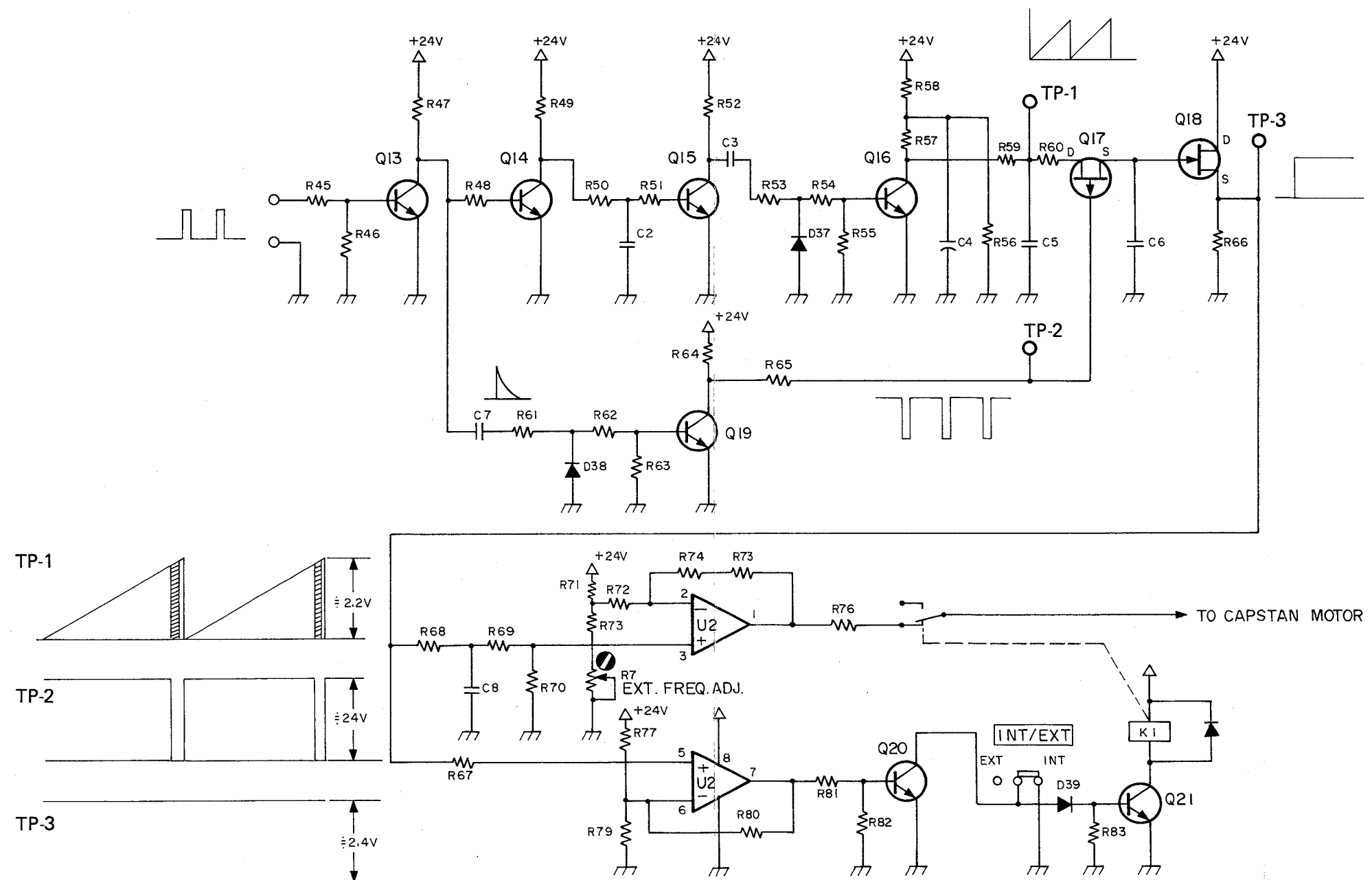


Fig. 5-18. External Pitch Control Circuit

5-6-3. "REMOTE" Connector Signals

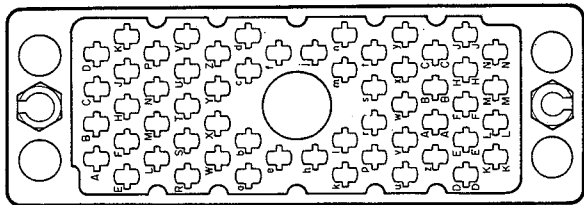


Fig. 5-19.

| Pin # | IN(put)—OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|--|
| A | (-) SIGN | OUT | Outputs counter display signal (Connected in parallel to deck) |
| B | P3 | OUT | |
| C | P2 | OUT | |
| D | P1 | OUT | |
| E | P0 | OUT | |
| F | \bar{a} | OUT | |
| H | \bar{b} | OUT | |
| J | \bar{c} | OUT | |
| K | \bar{d} | OUT | |
| L | \bar{e} | OUT | |
| M | \bar{f} | OUT | Inputs transport control signal (Via interface circuit) |
| N | \bar{g} | OUT | |
| P | PLAY | IN | |
| R | FF | IN | |
| S | REW | IN | |
| T | PAUSE | IN | |
| U | STOP | IN | |
| V | REC | IN | |
| W | RESET | IN | |
| X | RTZ | IN | |
| Y | CUE | IN | Outputs remote-control indicating signal (Connected in parallel to deck) |
| Z | STC | IN | |
| a | REC LED | OUT | |
| b | PAUSE LED | OUT | |
| c | SPOOL LED | OUT | |
| d | UP/DOWN | OUT | |
| e | CP | OUT | |
| f | REMOTE LOW | IN | |
| h | Open terminal | IN | |
| j | +5 V supply voltage | OUT | |

5-6-4. "ACCESSORY" Connector Signals

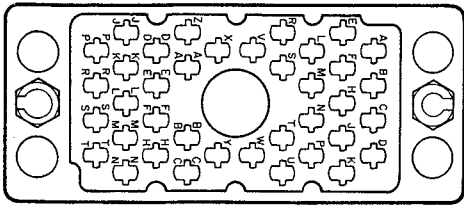


Fig. 5-20.

| Pin # | IN(put)—OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|---|
| A | PLAY | IN | Inputs PLAY signal at L level. |
| B | FF | IN | Inputs FF signal at L level. |
| C | REW | IN | Inputs REW signal at L level. |
| D | PAUSE | IN | Inputs PAUSE signal at L level. |
| E | STOP | IN | Inputs STOP signal at L level. |
| F | REC | IN | Inputs REC signal at L level. |
| H | LIFTER CONT | IN | Inputs LIFTER shift cancellation signal at L level. |
| J | PG | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (60 Hz pulse at 15 ips.) |
| K | UP/DOWN | OUT | Outputs tape running control signal at H or L level. |
| L | CP | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (12 Hz pulse at 15 ips.) |
| M | PLAY TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during PLAY mode.) |
| N | FF TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during FF mode.) |
| P | REW TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during REW mode.) |
| R | STOP TALLY | OUT | Outputs open-collector signal (LOW level during STOP mode.) |

| Pin # | IN(put)—OUT(put) signals | | Function |
|-------|--------------------------|-----------|--|
| S | ↑ open terminal ↓ | | |
| T | | | |
| U | | | |
| V | | | |
| W | | | |
| X | | | |
| Y | | | |
| Z | | | |
| AA | | | |
| BB | | | |
| CC | | | |
| DD | | | |
| EE | | | |
| FF | | | |
| HH | | | |
| JJ | | | |
| KK | EXT FREQ | IN (HOT) | Inputs speed control signal at input signal level of 2.0 V or more. (HOT side) |
| LL | EXT FREQ | IN (COLD) | Inputs speed control signal (COLD side) |
| MM | INT/EXT | IN | Inputs internal/external speed control select signal Internal: LOW level (0 V) External: HIGH level (2.0 V or more) When "INT/EXT" switch on rear panel is in the "EXT" position. |
| NN | open terminal | | |
| PP | +15 V supply voltage | OUT | Maximum: 50 mA |
| RR | 0 V terminal | | |
| SS | +5 V supply voltage | OUT | Maximum: 50 mA |
| TT | Main unit GND | | |

5-6-5. "ACCESSORY" Connector Pins and External Signal Connections

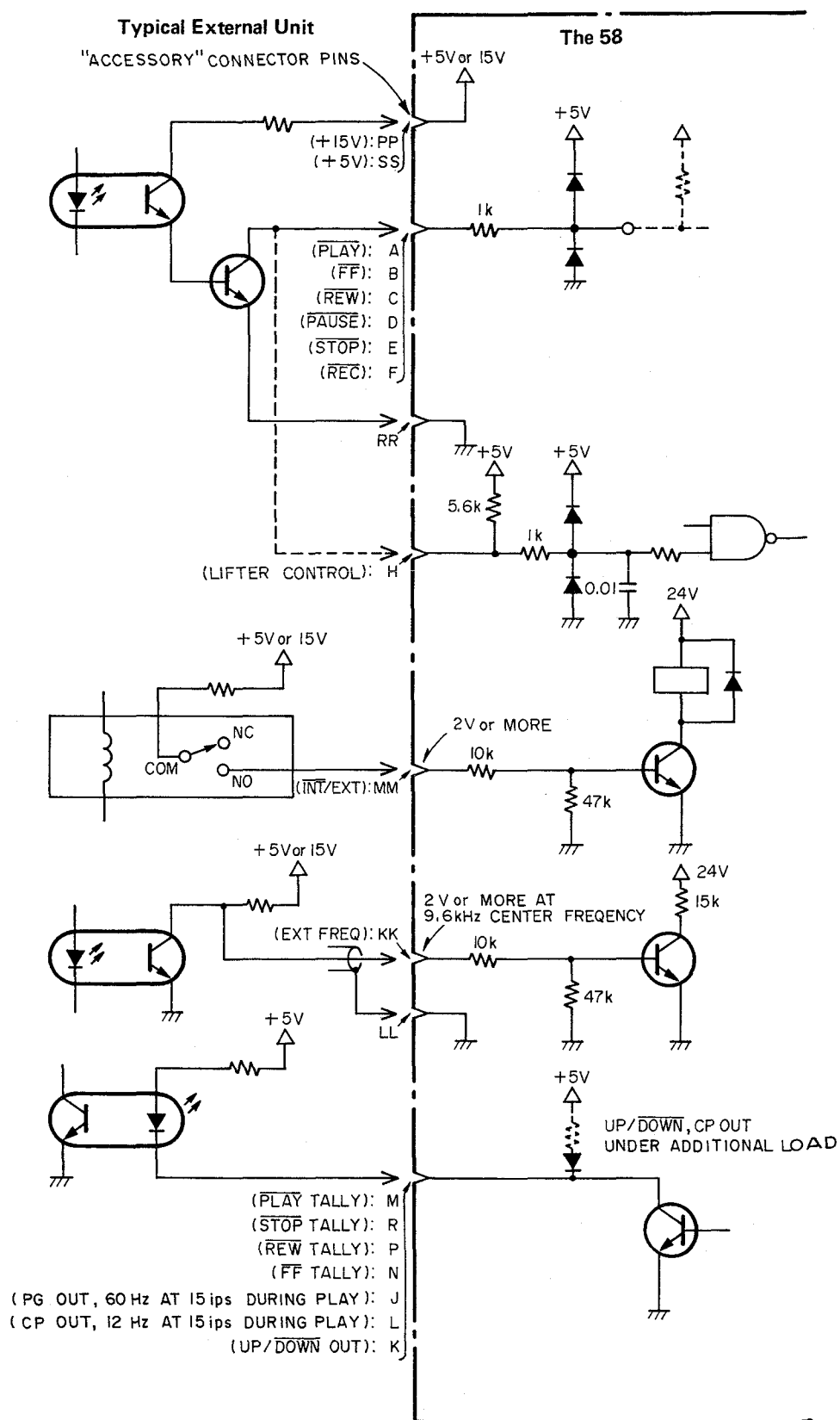


Fig. 5-21.

5-7. AMPLIFIER CONTROL CIRCUIT

The description will be made on the REC/PLAY AMPL, FUNCTION A and FUNCTION B PCB ASSY circuits shown in Fig. 5-24 on page 5-34, so fold out this page and refer to it while following this description.

5-7-1. Input Mode

When the OUTPUT SELECT switch on the FUNCTION B PCB is placed in the INPUT position, a +15 V line voltage passes through the contacts of the INPUT switch to flow to the inverter U2 (2, 15) on the FUNCTION B PCB ASSY, causing U2 to develop a L level output at its output terminals or INPUT Sig. terminal. Thus produced, the L level output is then fed to the INPUT terminal of the REC/PLAY AMPL PCB ASSY.

The L level signal sent to the INPUT terminal is fed through U6 (11, 12) to D13, and then sent back to the inverter U6 (14, 15) for voltage shifting to approx. -5 V via a resistor network consisting of R60, R61 and R62. The negative voltage is applied to the FET switch Q12 through D2, making it turn off.

On the other hand, the output voltage from pin 15 of U6 inverter is also fed to pin 3 of another U6 inverter, and its output voltage is fed to Q13 gate after the voltage is shifted to approx. +5 V via a resistor network consisting of R64, R65 and R66, thus making Q13 conductive. The INPUT signals are accordingly output to the OUTPUT terminals after passing through C19, U3 (1, 2, 3) — an input buffer amplifier, R206, Q13, U2 (1, 2, 3) — an output amplifier, and C17 and R37. In other words, input signals are output via an OUTPUT terminal regardless of operations such as REC, PLAY, etc.

With the INPUT switch placed in the ON position, a +15 V line voltage is also applied to the INPUT indicator LED D2 (red) on the LED PCB to turn the LED on.

5-7-2. Reproduce Mode

When the OUTPUT SELECT switch is placed in the REPRO position with the reproduce mode selected, the mode indicator LED D1 (Green) on the LED PCB is connected to the +15 V line and turned on. Since the PLAY MUTE Signal goes L during the reproduce mode as described in 5-5-1, an L level signal is input to pin 7 of the inverter U2 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY, and its

output pin 10 develops an H level signal. (Hereinafter, description will be made on the REC/PLAY AMPL PCB ASSY, so refer to this diagram.) The H level output is connected to terminal 19 of the REC/PLAY AMPL PCB ASSY to turn Q15 on. This in turn, turns on PLAY MUTE transistor Q9 to release the muting circuit. With the reproduce mode selected, U6 (11, 12) input is supplied from the +15 V line, causing it to go H as terminal 16 (INPUT) is opened. Therefore, U6 (11, 12), U6 (14, 15) and U6 (2, 3) are inverted from as originally described under the INPUT mode of operation which causes Q13 to turn off and Q12 to turn on. In other words, reproduce signals are now obtainable from the OUTPUT terminals.

Furthermore, because the SYNC signal is in a non-SYNC state (H), Q17 is turned off and relay K1 is switched to the REPRO side, causing Q10 to turn on. This means that the reproduce circuit is able to function normally.

5-7-3. SYNC Mode

When the OUTPUT SELECT switch is placed in the SYNC position:

- A +15 V line voltage is supplied to the SYNC indicator LED D2 (yellow) on the LED PCB to turn the LED on.
- The +15 V voltage being charged in C4 (FUNCTION B PCB ASSY) is applied to pin 5 of U2 (FUNCTION A PCB ASSY) and makes the output pin 12 change to an L level. Then, in turn, the charges stored in C2 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY are rapidly discharged through resistor R18 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY, and therefore, the inverting input level of pin 6 of U3 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY is virtually kept at an L level until the level increases to the same potential as that of the non-inverting input circuit (pin 5), or until the time approximately equal to the charging time constant of C2 ($R17 + R18$) has elapsed. U3 outputs a positive pulse with a pulsewidth determined by the charging time constant C2 ($R17 + R18$). The pulse is then inverted with U2 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY and an L level pulse output is obtained from pin 10 of U2.

When the SYNC switch is turned off, electric charges stored in C3 on the FUNCTION B PCB ASSY is applied to pin 5 of U2 and the

same operation just described above is actuated. Namely, when the SYNC switch is turned on or off, a PLAY MUTE signal is developed at pin 10 of U2 for a brief period of time to suppress switching noises. Refer to Fig. 5-22.

c. When the SYNC mode is selected, a +15 V line voltage is applied to input pin 4 of U2 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY and causes its output pin 13 to turn to an L level. Then, the charges stored in C1 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY discharge through R12 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY to keep the input terminal 2 of U3 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY positive until the inverting input terminal potential exceeds the potential at the non-inverting input terminal of U3. Therefore, pin 1 of U3 becomes H, after the time approximately equal to the discharging time constant of C1 and R12 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY has elapsed. In the same way, when the SYNC switch is placed in the OFF position, pin 1 of U3 goes H, after being delayed for a

time period approximately equal to another charging time constant of C1 (R11 + R12).

The thusly obtained H level signal is fed to U2 on the FUNCTION A PCB ASSY and inverted as a SYNC Sig. The inverted L level SYNC Sig. is applied to U6 (9, 10) on the REC/PLAY AMPL PCB ASSY and then fed to transistor Q17 on the same PCB to make it turn on. Then, relay K1 is actuated during the time that the PLAY MUTE operation is activated, and its contacts are switched to the SYNC side for selection of the SYNC head to turn Q11 on, etc. and to perform other required switching operations.

d. When the OUTPUT SELECT switch is placed in the SYNC position, input signals are selected and processed as shown in the table below, depending upon the combined settings of the PLAY and REC operating buttons, INPUT/SYNC (preload) switch, and REC function (ON-OFF) switch. The corresponding LEDs are also actuated as shown in the table.

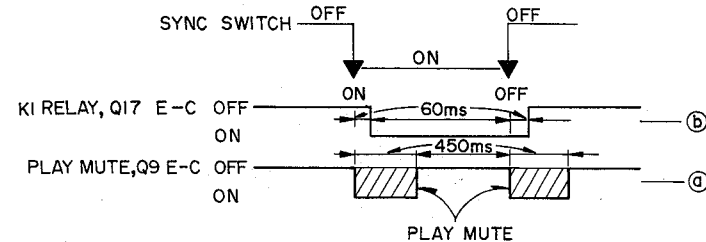


Fig. 5-22. Play Muting

| OUTPUT SELECT Switch | REC Function Switch | Pre-load (SYNC/INPUT) Switch | RECORD Switch | Operating Mode | LINE OUTPUT Source |
|----------------------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------|
| REPRO | — | — | — | — | Repro Head |
| INPUT | — | — | — | — | Line Input |
| SYNC | OFF (□) | — | — | — | Sync Repro |
| | ON (▢) | INPUT (□) | — | — | Line Input |
| | | SYNC (▢) | OFF | In Stop, Fast Winding Modes, or RTZ or STC | Line Input |
| | | | ON | In Play, Pause, Edit and Cue Modes | Sync Repro |
| LED on above the switch pressed. | LED flashes with RECORD switch off, and stays on with RECORD switch on. | LED is on with RECORD switch off, and is off with RECORD switch on. | LED flashes with REC function switch off, and is on with REC function on. | — | Line Input |

* "—" signifies that the setting of the switch or the operating mode has no effect on the line output source.

Table 5-1. Monitor Out Control

Monitor signal switching operations are made as shown in Table 5-1(A) when REC ON-OFF (punch-in and punch-out) operations are conducted.

When the pre-load SYNC switch is set to "off" SYNC position during the record mode, output pin 4 of U5 goes H because pins 5 and 6 of U5 are being set to L, and an H level signal is applied to input pin 14 of U6 through D12. Since the above condition is the same as that of the previously describe INPUT mode, the INPUT signals are output and monitored. When the REC function switch is placed in the OFF position, input pin 5 of U5 goes H and this makes output pin 4 of U5 (NAND unit) L. Consequently, the amplifier circuit is switched to the SYNC reproduction mode and the SYNC signals are monitored.

Table 5-1(B) also denotes the monitor signal switching operations as functions of the pre-load switch.

When the pre-load SYNC switch is set to "off" (INPUT) during the reproduce mode with the OUTPUT SELECT switch set to SYNC and the REC function switch ON, output pin 10 of U5 (NAND unit) goes L, because input pins 8 and 9 are both in L. Namely, the same condition as that of the INPUT mode is established, and the INPUT signals are monitored.

On the other hand, when the pre-load SYNC switch is placed in "on" (SYNC) position, input pin 1 of U1 in the Function A PCB circuits and input pin 8 of U5 in the Record/Playback Amp. PCB are changed to L. Then, output pin 10 of U5 (NAND unit) is changed from H to L which in turn, makes the operations mode of the amplifier change from INPUT to SYNC, and thus the SYNC signals are monitored.

5-7-4. Record Mode

Since general descriptions on recording operations have been made under section 5-5-8, only additional information will be given in this section.

As previously mentioned, when the RECORD button is pressed, the REC MODE Sig. terminal goes L, and if a recording channel is designated by the selection of the REC function (ON-OFF) switch, the REC READY Sig. corresponding to the channel selected also goes L. Then, pins 12 and 13 of U5 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB go L and its pin 11 goes H, and transistors Q18 and Q22 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB turn off because their bases are lowered to L. When Q22 turns off, Q24 goes on and the record relay K2 actuates to switch on the record circuit.

When Q24 turns on, Q25 goes off and pin 5 of U6 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB goes H, and this causes pin 5 of U5 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB to decrease to an L level. If the OUTPUT SELECT SYNC switch is being pressed, pin 6 of U5 also goes L, so output pin 6 goes H and Q12 goes off, causing Q13 to go on as described in the input mode of operation to enable monitoring of the input signals via the OUTPUT terminals.

When Q18 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB is turned off, Q18 collector voltage is applied to the base of Q20, causing it to turn on, followed by Q21 also turning on. Then, the Bias Amplifier module U7 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB starts to function and supplies bias voltage to the recording and erase heads.

Transistors Q19 and Q23 are turned on by the charging currents being respectively applied through C35 and C36 on the Record/Playback Amp. PCB. Immediately after this, Q19 and Q23 are turned off, causing rapid discharge of the charges stored in C37 and C38 through C37 — R96 and C38 — R108.

That is, without Q19 and Q23, the charges that were stored in C37 and C38 could not be discharged so rapidly, and possibly resulting in Q21 staying on when REC ON-OFF (punch-in and -out) operations are repeated quickly. Transistors Q19 and Q23 function to prevent this erroneous operation.

During recording, an H level signal is applied to terminal 10 on the Function A PCB and Q1 on the same PCB, is turned on. However, during punch-out operation, a 1 Hz pulse signal is

applied to the same terminal and the REC function LED(s) designated by the REC (ON-OFF) switch begins blinking.

During the REC mode of operation, an L level signal is being applied to terminal 16 on the Function A PCB, and Q2 on the Function B PCB ASSY is turned off. In addition, as terminal 17 on the Function A PCB is at an H level, Q3 and Q4 on the Function B PCB are turned on, thus switching operations as shown in Table 5-1 can be performed with switching combinations of REC (ON-OFF) and SYNC/INPUT switches.

5-7-5. Record/Reproduction Switching Noise Protection Circuit

Eliminating switching noises caused during record and reproduction switching is very important to enhance operationability of the unit. This section describes how the switching noises are eliminated in this unit. To simplify the description, first suppose that the SYNC and REC function switches are set to ON and the unit is being operated in the sync reproduction mode. For SYNC switch noise protection (generation of muting signals) refer to 5-7-3 "SYNC Mode".

1. When punch-in operation is conducted (or RECORD and play buttons are pushed at the same time), the microcomputer generates record instructions as previously stated and REC terminal 17 on Record/Play Circuit goes L, then output pin 11 of U5 goes H and output pin 6 of U6 also goes L; MUTE terminal 19 on the same circuit schematic also changes from H to L.
2. Since Q15 base bias falls as the MUTE terminal goes L, Q15 is cut off and the voltage at junction R68 and C31 rises for the time period determined by $R70 + R68$ and C31 time constant. Since voltage is applied to the base of Q9, Q9 is turned on after the time constant time (approx. 25 msec), and the sync reproduction signal is shorted at ground through the emitter-collector path of Q9, thus disconnecting sync output from the OUTPUT terminals. Refer to Fig. 5-23(a).
3. Q22 is cut off as output pin 6 of U6 goes L. Then, +15 V voltage is applied to Q23 base for a brief period of time through C36, and makes Q23 turn on to discharge the residual electric charges stored in capacitor C38. When the charging to C38 is completed, Q23 is again cut off, and C38 charging starts. When this charging to C38 is completed, Q24 is turned on and the REC relay K2 is actuated, thus the record/sync head is switched in the record circuit. The time required for this switching has been adjusted to approx. 50 msec through the time constant circuits including C38, R112, C36, R110, etc. Refer to Fig. 5-23(b).
4. Since Q25 base bias decreases as Q24 is turned on, Q25 is cut off, and this turns input pin 5 of U6 to H and output pin 4 to

L. Then input pin 5 of U5 goes L. Pin 6 of U5 is in L because SYNC terminal 20 is L (as the SYNC switch has been set to ON). Thus output pin 4 of U5 becomes L.

5. Then output pin 15 of U6 goes L and output pin 2 of U6 goes H. Consequently, the 5 V positive voltage developed by the dividing network, which consists of R64 and R65, is applied to the cathode side of diode D3 through R66, and transistor Q13 is turned on. In this operation Q13 is gradually turned on because of a large time constant provided by R66 and C32. Therefore, the INPUT signal being applied to the drain side of Q13 is transferred to the output side gradually, thus suppressing switching noises in the monitor signals.
6. On the other hand, another voltage dividing network R60 and R61 develops -5 V, as input pin 3 of U6 is in L, and the negative voltage is applied to D2 cathode via R61, cutting Q12 off. In this case also, the cut off operation is accomplished gradually because of a large time constant provided by R61 and C30.
7. In this way, switching operations for both Q12 and Q13 are made under influence of four time constants, each relating to capacitors C36, C38, C39, & C30, and C36, C38, C39, & C32 (as stated in 4, 5 and 6 above). Accordingly, their total time required for switching operation becomes considerably long as shown in Fig. 5-23 (A).
8. When Q18 is cut off, Q19 is turned on until C35 is charged; thereby, discharging the residual charges stored in C37. Then C37 is recharged through R93, R94, R95 and, when recharging is completed, Q20 is turned on. After this, charging to C45 begins through R101, R102 and the charged voltage reaches approx. 0.6 V, which causes Q21 to turn on to actuate the bias oscillator amp. In this way, the operation of bias amp is influenced by the corresponding C35, C37, and C45 time constants, causing the bias oscillator to start functioning at approx. 75 msec, after the punch-in operation has been set, to gradually increase the bias amplitude as shown in Fig. 5-23(c). Accordingly, the amplitude of the signal being recorded on

the tape is also gradually changed to the steady state, thus eliminating switching noises.

9. Next, when punch-out operation is made, the microcomputer outputs Play instructions to make the MUTE terminal 19 and also the REC terminal change to H. Accordingly, output pin 11 of U5 goes L, output pin 6 of U6 goes H, and both Q18 and Q22 are turned on.
10. The charges stored in C37 is discharged through D16, R94, Q18 (emitter-collector path) as Q18 is turned on. Then Q20 is cut off, followed by Q21 cutting off. The time required to cut Q21 off depends upon the sum of the discharging time constants of C37 and C45, and is set to approx. 205 msec, as shown in Fig. 5-23(d). As the result, the bias oscillator voltage amplitude of the bias amplifier is gradually attenuated as illustrated, and the amplitude of signals being recorded is also attenuated gradually.
11. When Q22 is turned on, the charges stored in C38 is discharged through R107 and Q22 (emitter-collector path), cutting off Q24 as the discharging potential is decreased. Then the REC relay is switched in to the SYNC side. The time required to actuate the REC relay is set to approx. 270 msec, completely after the bias oscillator voltage amplitude has been attenuated to zero. Refer to Fig. 5-23(e).
12. When Q24 is cut off, Q25 is turned on after the time period, determined by the charging time constant of R113, R114, C39, and this makes input pin 5 of U6 change to L. Then, output pin 4 of U6 or input pin 5 of U5 changes to H. (These pins 4 and 5 are in L until C39 is charged.)
13. Accordingly, output pin 4 of U5 goes L, and output pin 15 of U6 goes H. As the result, +5 V developed by the dividing network, consisting of R60 and R62, is applied to D2 cathode through R61 and this makes Q12 turn on. Because of the large charging time value constant of C30, Q12 is gradually turned on.

14. On the other hand, as output pin 2 of U6 goes L, -15 V voltage is applied across R64 and R65, and the resultant divided voltage (-5 V) is applied to D3 cathode through R66, making Q13 cut off. Since the charging time constant of C32 is also of a considerably large value, the gradual cut off operation is made similarly as that of Q12.

15. When punch-out operation is made, when the pre-load switch (SYNC/INPUT) is set to SYNC, SAFE/RDY terminal 18 on Record/Playback Amp. PCB goes H, and this makes output pin 10 of U5 (or input pin 2 of U5) change to L.

As previously stated, input pin 5 of U5 is not changed to H immediately after the punch-out operation has been made, but goes to H after Q25 is turned on for a brief time period that is determined by C38, C39, etc. charging time constants. Namely, input pin 5 of U5 is L until Q25 is turned on.

Accordingly, output pin 4 of U5 is H, and output pin 3 is L because of input pin 2 of U5 being L.

On the other hand, MUTE terminal 19 goes H immediately after the punch-out operation, but Q15 base bias voltage is unable to rise because, at this time, output pin 3 of U5 is being set to L. Therefore, Q15 is maintained cut off and Q9 is also held in its conductive state. Next, when Q25 is turned on, input pin 5 of U5 goes H and output pin 4 (or input pin 1 of U5) goes L, causing output pin 3 of U5 to go H. Accordingly, Q15 is turned on, and this makes Q9 cut off, thus releasing the short-out circuit for SYNC reproduction signals. In other words, Q9 can not be turned off until the REC relay completes switching in to the SYNC position. Thus no switching noise is developed in the monitor output circuit. Refer to Fig. 5-23(f).

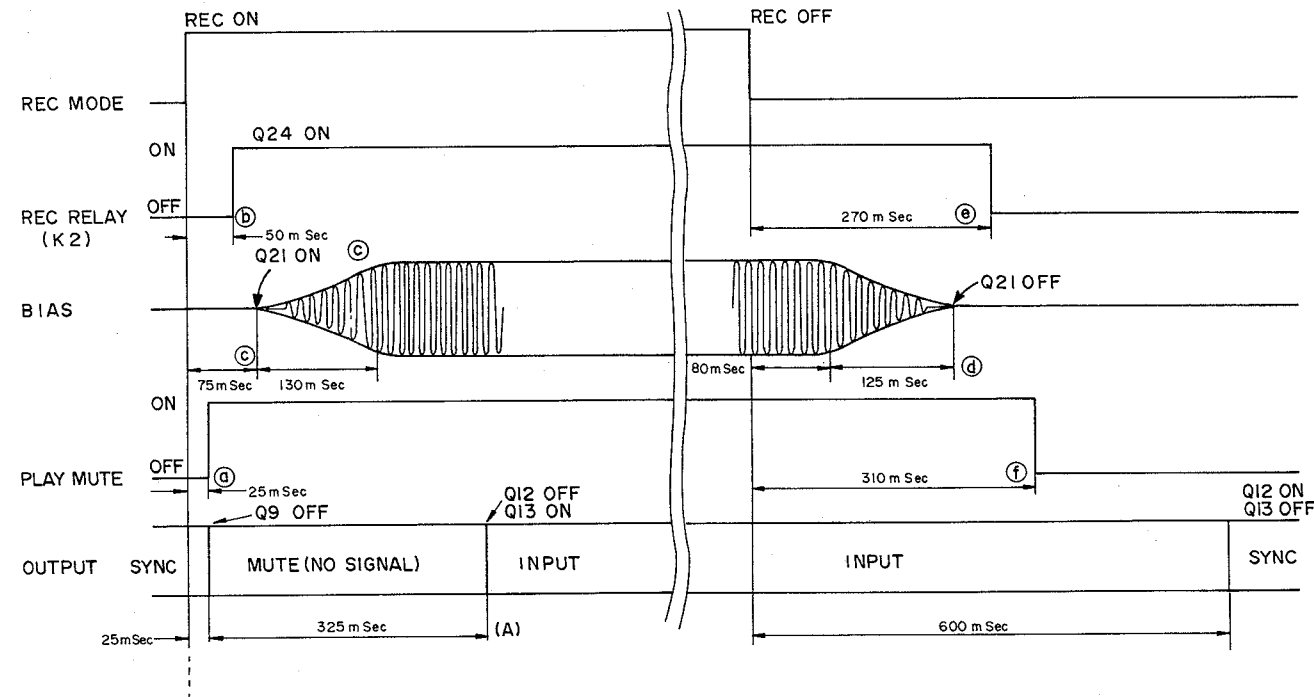


Fig. 5-23.

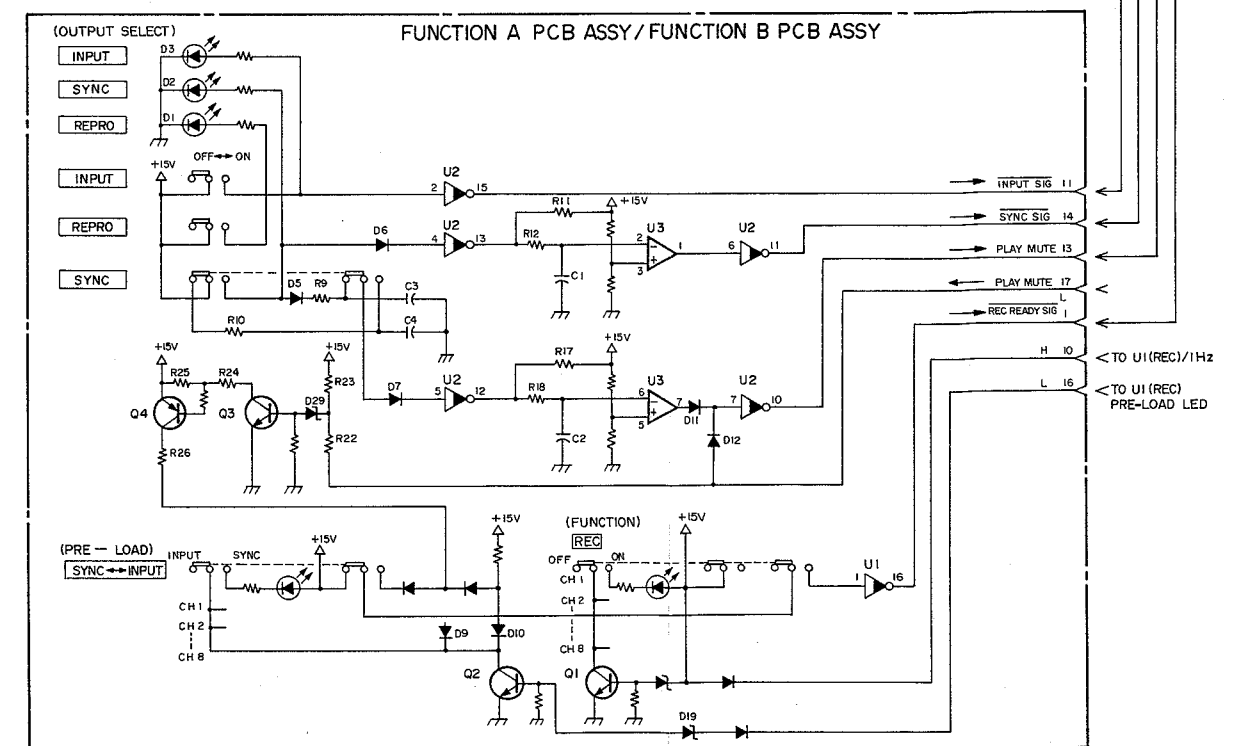
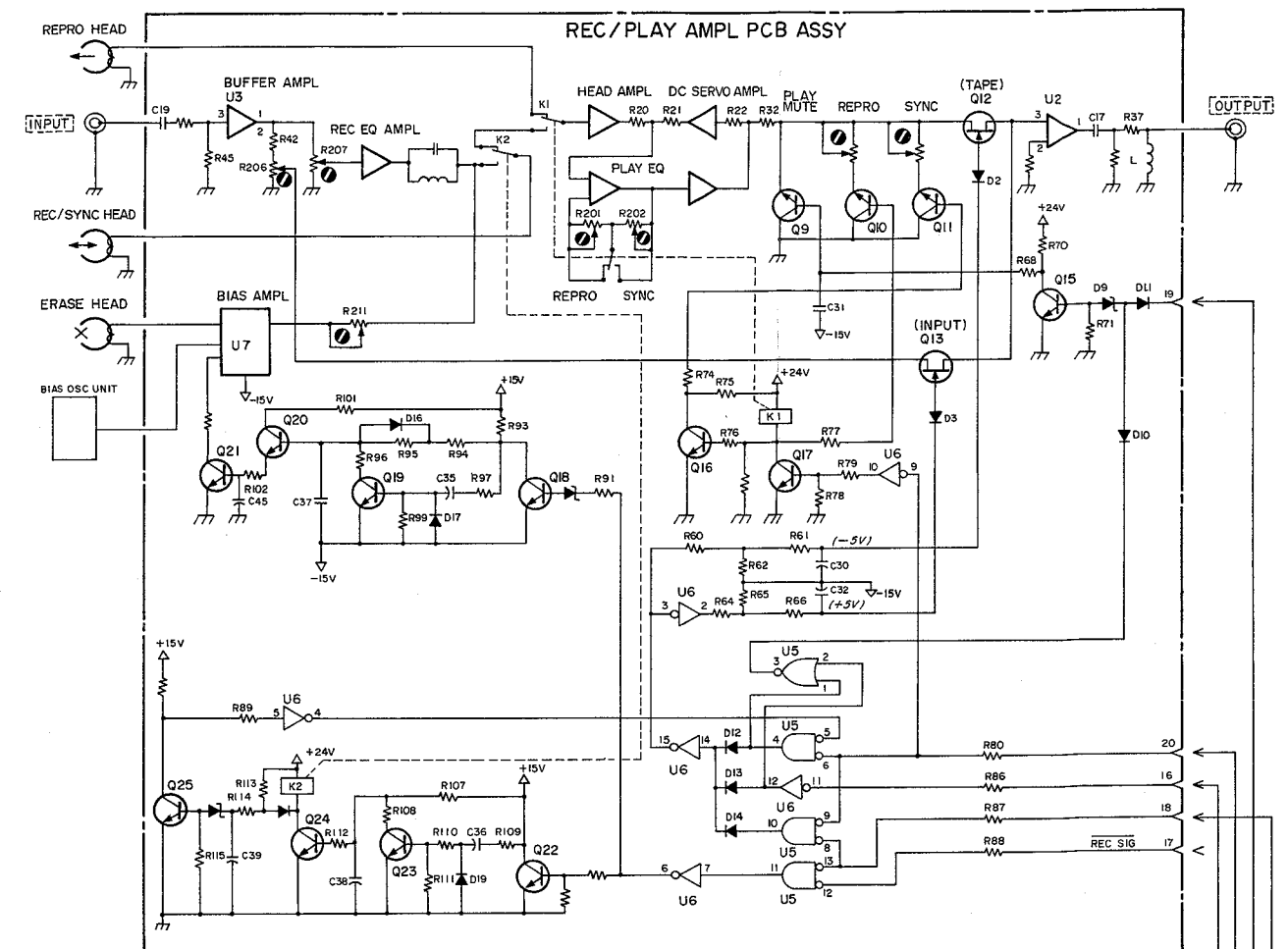
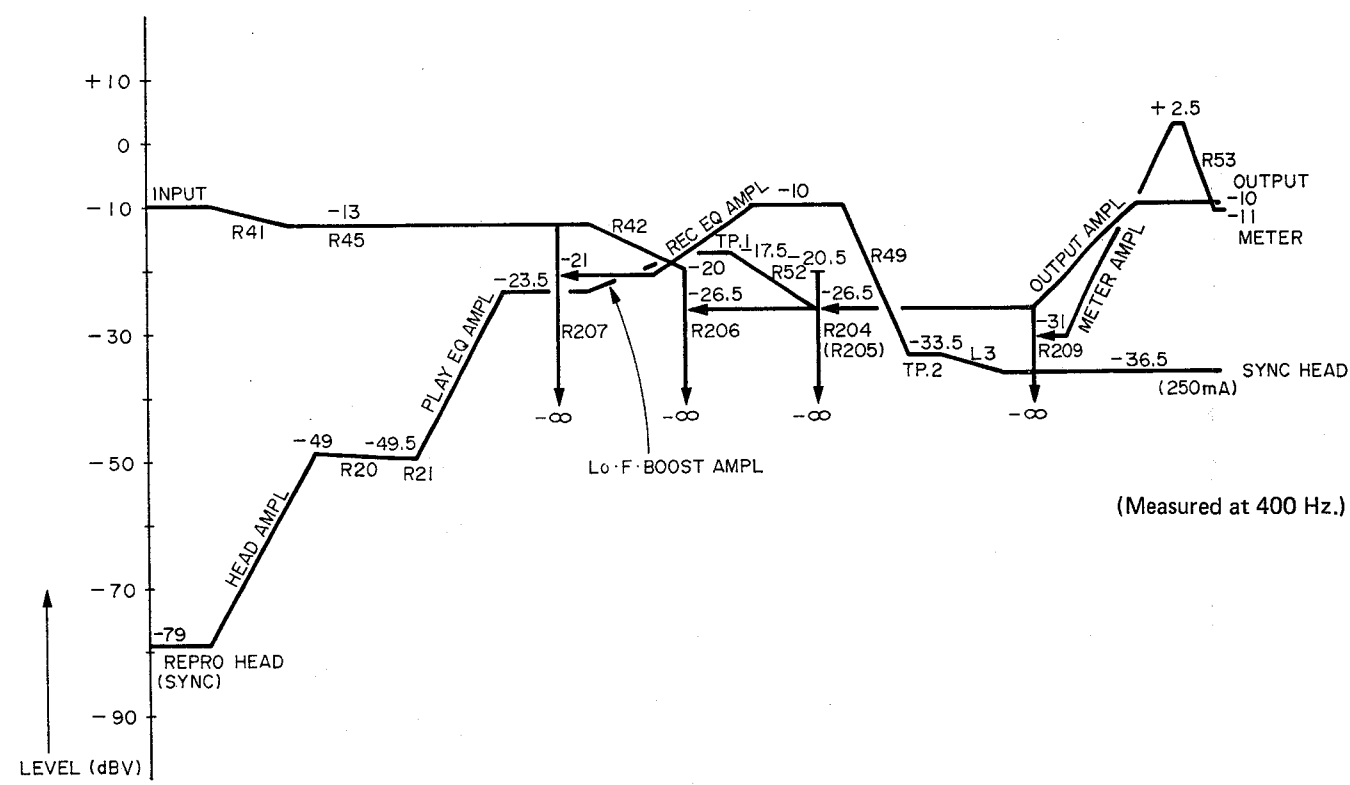
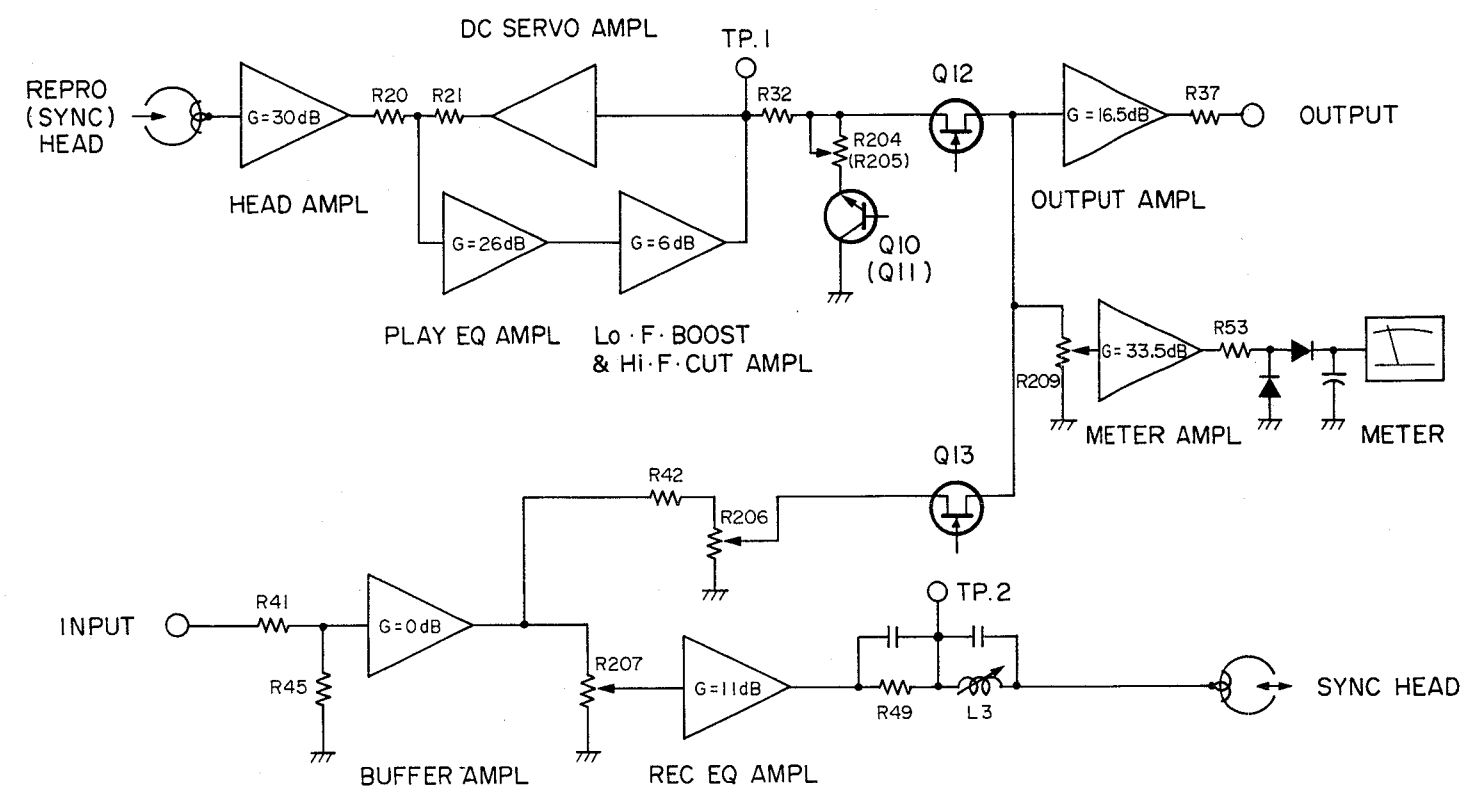


Fig. 5-24.

5-7-6. Block and Amplifier Level Diagram



6. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE

6-1. BASIC INFORMATION

If you are new to high quality sound recording equipment, you should become aware of the fact that high quality sound requires high quality maintenance.

Recording studios that rent time by the hour are very fussy about maintaining their equipment. Tape recorders and other electronic gear in the studio are checked out before every session. And, if necessary, adjusted to "spec" by an "in house" service technician. He is usually prepared to correct any problem from a minor shift in circuit performance to a major breakdown in a motor. He has a full stock of spare parts and all the test equipment he needs.

Now that you are running your own "studio" you will have to make some decisions about maintaining it, and your 58. You will have to become your own "in house" service technician. Well, what about the test gear and the spare parts? A stock of spare parts and a super deluxe electronic test bench can easily cost many times the price of the recorder. Fortunately, the most frequently needed adjustments use the least expensive equipment, and the very costly devices are only needed for major parts replacements such as drive and rewind motors or head assemblies. Replacing parts cannot be considered "routine maintenance" by any means, so we suggest that you leave the major mechanical and electrical repair to the Dealer Service Center. That's what it's for

Adjustments to the motors — back tension and brake torque are not required often and can safely be left to dealer service. The adjustments for wow-and-flutter require several thousands of dollars of test gear to perform. It's not practical to consider doing these adjustments yourself unless you have fifty machines to service. Then it might pay to buy the test gear.

In order to help you make plans about the more routine adjustments to your 58, we have made this section of the manual as easy to understand as technology will allow. It's a short course in tape recorder theory as well as a list of adjustments and will help you to understand what is going on inside when you record. Read the manual, decide what test equipment you can afford (although it is not violently expensive, it is not free) and determine what service you can do yourself.

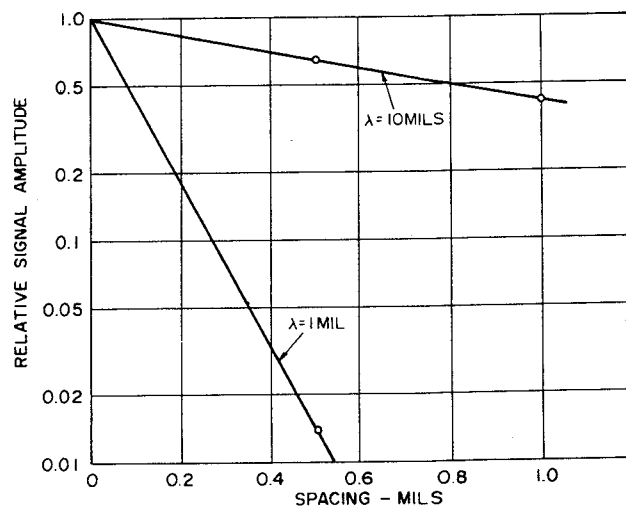


Fig. 6-1. Curves showing fall-off of reproduced signals versus spacing from reproducer head.
(Courtesy, Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Co.)

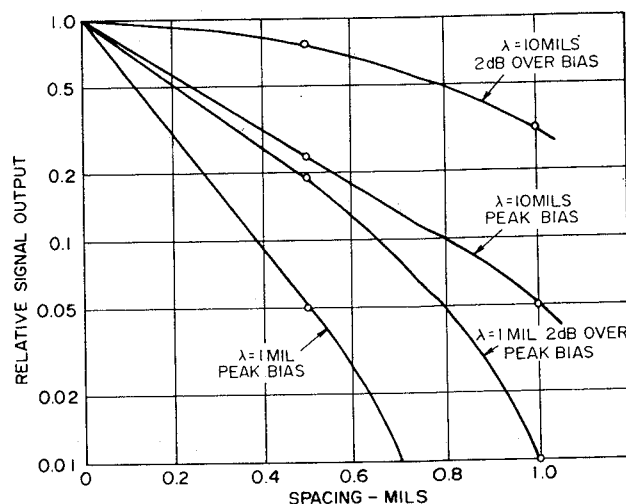


Fig. 6-2. Curves showing the fall-off of recorded signals versus spacing from recording head.
(Courtesy, Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Co.)

6-1-1. Cleaning

IMPORTANT:

Do not overlook the importance of cleaning. Insufficient cleaning is the number one cause of the degradation of performance levels.

The first thing you will need for service is definitely the least expensive — Cleaning fluids and swabs. The whole outfit, 2 fluids and all the cotton swabs you'll need for months cost less than one roll of high quality tape. We can't stress the importance of cleaning too much. Clean up before every session. **Clean up after every session. Clean up every time you take a break in the middle of a session (we're serious).** How come? Well there are two good reasons we can think of right off the top:

1. Any dirt or oxide buildup on the heads will force the tape away from the gaps that record and playback. This will drastically affect the response. Even so small a layer of dirt as one thousandth of an inch will cause big trouble. All the money you have paid for high performance will be wiped out by a bit of oxide. Wipe it off with head cleaner and get back to normal.
2. Tape and tape oxide act very much the same as fine sandpaper. The combination will grind down the tape path in time. If you don't clean off this abrasive on a regular basis, the wear will be much more rapid and, what's worse, it will become irregular. Even wear on heads can be compensated for by electronic adjustments for a time, but uneven wear can produce notches on heads and guides that will cause the tape to "skew" and skip around from one path to another, making adjustment impossible. This ragged pathway chews up the tape, thus dropping more abrasive, thus causing more uneven wear and so — a vicious spiral that can't be stopped once it gets a good start. The only solution will then be to replace not only the heads, but all the tape guides as well. Being conscientious about cleaning the tape path on the 58 will more than double the service life of the head assembly.

6-1-2. Degaussing (Demagnetizing)

IMPORTANT:

1. Do not overlook the importance of degaussing. Magnetism in the tape can significantly degrade performance. In extreme cases, the heads may not respond to signals at all.
2. Turn off the deck before degaussing.
3. Do not turn the degausser (E-3) off or on while it is in close proximity to the tape path.
4. Keep all recorded tape a safe distance from the degausser.

A little stray magnetism goes a long way. A long way towards making trouble for your tapes. It only takes a small amount (.2 gauss) to cause trouble on the record head and playing 10 rolls of tape will put about that much charge on the heads and other ferrous parts of the tape path. A little more than that (.7 gauss) will start to erase high frequency signal on previously recorded tapes. Demagnetize the whole tape path, including the tips of the tension arms every six fully played 10-1/2 reels. This is a fair "rule of thumb" even though it may be a bit hard to keep track of. Fast motion isn't as significant to the heads, so we don't give an hourly reference. It's the record/play time that counts.

Degaussing is always done with the recorder turned off. If you try it with the electronics on, the 60 cycle current pulses produced by the degausser will look just like 60 Hz audio to the heads, at about 10,000 VU and will seriously damage the electronics and/or the meters. Turn off the machine, turn on the degausser at least 3 feet away from the recorder. Move slowly in to the tape path. Move the degausser slowly up and down in close proximity to all ferrous parts and, slowly move away to at least 3 feet before turning off.

It's a good idea to concentrate when you are degaussing. Don't try to hold a conversation or think of anything else but the job you are doing. If the degausser is turned off or on by accident while it is near the heads, you may put a permanent charge on them that no amount of careful degaussing will remove — head replacement time again, we're sorry to say. Make sure you are wide awake for this procedure.

A clean and properly demagnetized tape recorder will maintain its performance without any other attention for quite some time. Even if it does drift as a recorder, it won't ruin previously recorded material, and getting it back in good shape will not be too difficult.

6-1-3. Equipment/Materials

To make electronic adjustments, you need test gear, so let's go over what's necessary.

1. ALIGNMENT TAPES

The one you will need for the speed that the 58 operates at must meet the following specs:

Reference fluxivity: 250 nWb/m

Equalization standard: IEC

15 ips $\infty + 35 \mu s$

(See page 6-8; Test Tapes)

These test tapes are made by several companies, but there are many different tape specs. Be sure you have the right one.

Let's talk about each spec separately.

Reference Fluxivity — How much magnetic energy is necessary on the tape to make the meter read "0 VU" in playback? This is the "benchmark" or standard you tune your playback electronics to 250 nano-Webers per meter is the correct value for the 58. If a lower or higher "Reference Fluxivity" is used to set up the playback, all your other measurements will be off.

IEC Equalization — Here we have a lot to talk about. The process of magnetic recording is far from "flat." Every circuit in a tape recorder will alter the level of signal with respect to its frequency — some deliberately, some unavoidably. The deliberate errors are used to overcome the unavoidable problems. Here is a selection of frequency response graphs at various points in the recording process:

1. If the input signal starts this way in the beginning (FLAT).

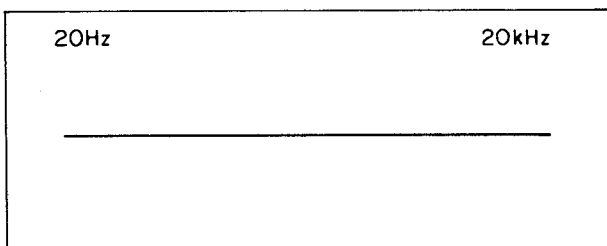


Fig. 6-3.

2. EQ to overcome head loss at high frequency and bass anomalies
Deliberate error

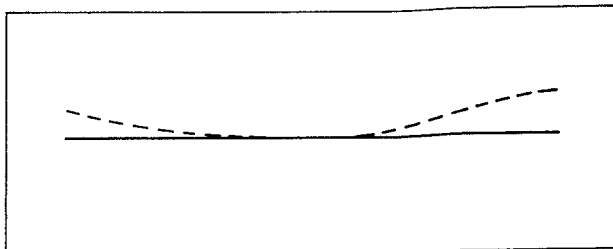


Fig. 6-4.

3. Record Head Response
(6 dB per octave rise until gap in head approaches wavelength)
Unavoidable error
Small wavelengths (high frequencies) are partially erased as fast as they are recorded.

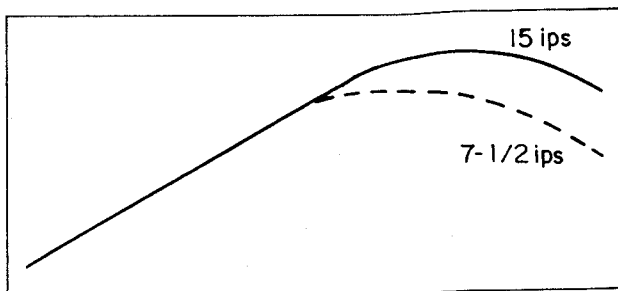


Fig. 6-5.

We will assume something is recorded, but it's not flat on the tape either. Now we'll play it back.

4. Reproduce Head Response
(6 dB per octave rise again, same as record head).
Unavoidable error,
Small wavelengths are not picked up by gap.

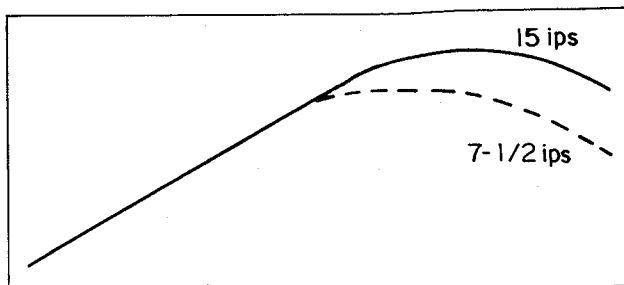


Fig. 6-6.

5. Reproduce EQ

Now we must overcome the characteristic response of heads.

Big deliberate error

Helps lower tape hiss as well as restoring proper levels to high frequencies.

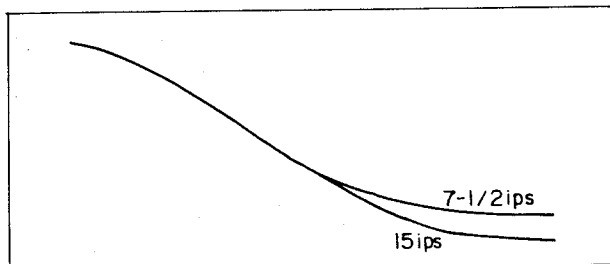


Fig. 6-7.

6. The result of all this equalization is this (hopefully).

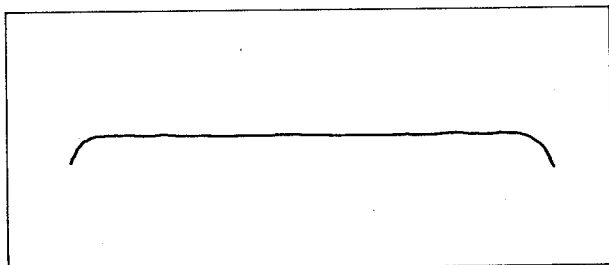


Fig. 6-8.

The idea is to use the electronics that are adjustable to cope with the problems that are caused by the nature of the magnetic recording process. We can't change the basic laws of magnetic physics, so we change the record and reproduce equalization. Now comes the sticky part. How much EQ do we use in each stage? If every manufacturer of tape recorders used their own standard, their idea of what was best, there would be no playback compatibility. Tapes made on one recorder would not play back properly on another of different make. The standards for record and reproduce equalization are established by societies of scientists, engineers and users in the profession. They are:

NAB National Association of Broadcasters

IEC International Electrotechnical Commission

CCIR International Radio Consultive Commission

DIN Deutsche Industrie Normen

Unfortunately, they don't all agree. Each organization has a slightly different approach to solving the problems of tape recording. Scientists and engineers are human, as well, and have been known to disagree, sometimes violently about what ways are best. Advances in the manufacture of tape, improvements in head design, and the lowering of electronic circuit costs have made bizarre solutions quickly change into practical realities. The optimums have shifted and will probably continue to do so. Standards are set by man, not cast in stone. But while the scientists are boxing in the conference room, we would like to be recording, so TASCAM has selected the IEC standard for record/reproduce EQ as the recommendation for the 58.

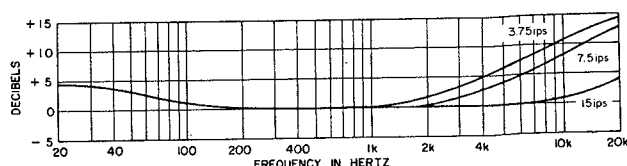


Fig. 6-9. Typical recording (pre-equalization) for 1/4-inch tape recorders using NAB characteristics.

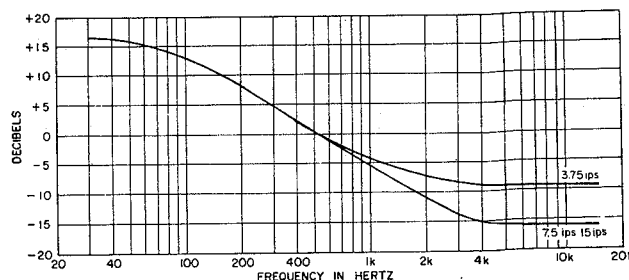


Fig. 6-10. Typical post-equalization for 1/4-inch tape recorders using NAB characteristics.

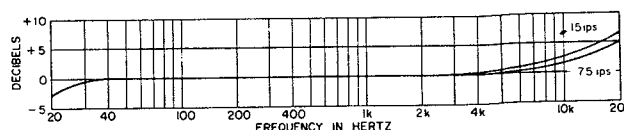


Fig. 6-11. Typical pre-equalization characteristics for 1/4-inch tape recorders running at 7.5 and 15 ips using the CCIR (DIN) standard.

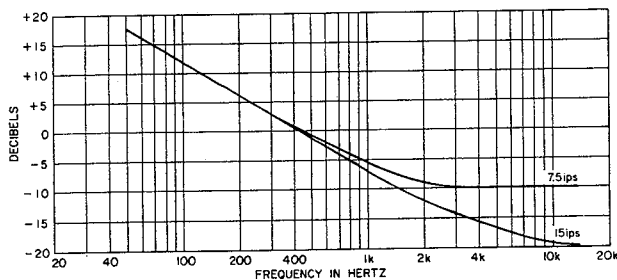


Fig. 6-12. Typical post-equalization curves for 1/4-inch recorders using CCIR characteristics at 7.5 and 15 ips.

Since these Reference Standard tapes cost about 3 times the price of a big roll of the best blank tape, plan on storing them carefully in a place that will not encounter any magnetic fields that might damage them — away from loudspeakers, guitar pickup, tape recorder and record player motors, power amplifiers (magnetic field surges in big transformers when amps are turned on and off can be very powerful) or anything magnetic that might alter the quality of the reference standard. If you don't damage them physically or magnetically (don't play them on dirty or magnetized recorders, or loan them out to the careless) they will last for several years. If it is not possible to obtain a tape that has both the IEC EQ and a fluxivity of 250 nWb/m, select the IEC EQ as the preferred single standard. A different reference fluxivity requires only that you make a level correction once. Just use a different mark on the meter instead of "zero." A different EQ curve requires a different amount of correction for each frequency and is much harder to use — especially for a beginner. Level corrections for different reference fluxivity:

| | | |
|--------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| | | Use this |
| | | instead of |
| | | "0" VU |
| 15 ips | 185 nWb/m — (Ampex operating level) | -3 VU |
| | 200 nWb/m — (STL, MRL) | -2 VU |

Below are tabulated some commonly encountered flux levels along with their dB differences, and their differences in dB from 185 nWb/m.

Ampex operating level

3 dB above
Ampex operating level

DIN Standard

6 dB above
Ampex operating level

| Flux Level nWb/m | Flux Level Difference in dB | Difference from 185 nWb/m in dB |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 150 | | 1.82 |
| 160 | 0.56 | 1.26 |
| 170 | 0.53 | 0.73 |
| 180 | 0.50 | 0.24 |
| 185 | 0.24 | 0.00 |
| 190 | 0.23 | 0.23 |
| 200 | 0.45 | 0.68 |
| 210 | 0.42 | 1.10 |
| 220 | 0.40 | 1.51 |
| 230 | 0.39 | 1.89 |
| 240 | 0.37 | 2.26 |
| 250 | 0.35 | 2.62 |
| 260 | 0.34 | 2.96 |
| 261.32 | 0.04 | 3.00 |
| 270 | 0.28 | 3.28 |
| 280 | 0.32 | 3.60 |
| 290 | 0.30 | 3.90 |
| 300 | 0.29 | 4.20 |
| 310 | 0.28 | 4.48 |
| 320 | 0.28 | 4.76 |
| 330 | 0.27 | 5.03 |
| 340 | 0.26 | 5.29 |
| 350 | 0.25 | 5.54 |
| 360 | 0.24 | 5.78 |
| 369.12 | 0.22 | 6.00 |
| 370 | 0.02 | 6.02 |
| 380 | 0.23 | 6.25 |
| 390 | 0.23 | 6.48 |
| 400 | 0.22 | 6.70 |

Table 6-1.

Note:
Add 0.7 dB for European measurement method using Magnetometer.

NAB Correction Chart (illus.)

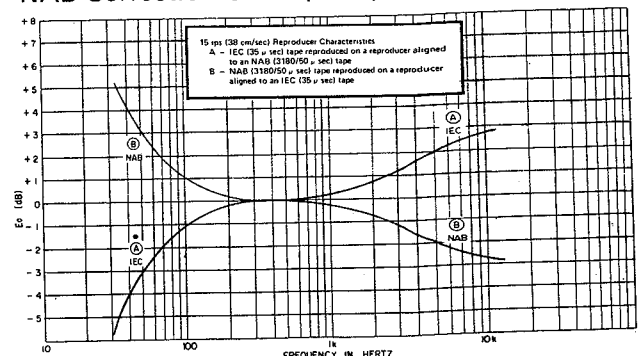


Fig. 6-13.

If you must use NAB EQ tapes, these amounts of reading are correct. NAB has more boost in playback, the tape will read progressively lower as frequencies rise when played on an IEC adjusted recorder. At 250 nWb/m reference, read these numbers to set NAB EQ.

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|
| 31.5 | 50 | 125 | 400 | 1K | 3K | 6.3K | 8K | 10K | 16K | 18K | 20K |
| +5.4 | +3.0 | +0.6 | 0 | -0.2 | -1.2 | -2.3 | -2.6 | -2.7 | -2.9 | -3.0 | -3.0 dB |

See "Test Tapes for the 58" on page 6-8.
On to the next piece of test equipment.

2. VTVM OR FET MULTIMETER

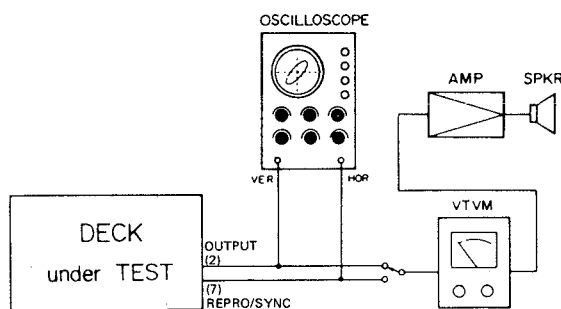


Fig. 6-14. Head Alignment Fine Adjustment Set-up and Test Connections (REPRODUCE)

Use a VTVM or FET multimeter with an input impedance of at least 1 megohm that can read levels down to -80 (full scale). You can think of this as a very accurate VU meter of very wide range. Meters with lower input impedances will draw power from the circuits to be measured and will affect the readings. Meters that have adequate input impedance but do not read below -40 (.01 V) can be used for reference levels and frequency response measurements, but will not be capable of making signal-to-noise, erase efficiency or bias circuit measurements where the output of the circuit being adjusted is expected to be very low.

Meter MUST have wide, flat frequency response (minimum = 10 Hz - 1 MHz).

This tool is not cheap and is just as important as the test tapes. Without a good reference meter, you can do very little in the way of accurate adjustment. Spend as much as you can here. It's worth it. Next . . .

3. SIGNAL GENERATOR OR OSCILLATOR

Here you get a break. A simple oscillator will do all the work and won't send you to the poor house. There are several on the market for around \$100. The local electronic surplus store can be a good source for test equipment that can be re-calibrated by the manufacturer for a reasonable cost. If you get one with a meter on it, you won't have to calibrate its output with the big meter as often. This device is very useful in a studio for troubleshooting a good investment. It should have at least the following frequencies.

40Hz - 100Hz - 400Hz - 1kHz - 4kHz - 10 kHz - 15 kHz - 18 kHz

Sine wave is all that is required, at a distortion of no more than 0.5 %. Most modern units do better than this easily. This unit is the work-horse on the equipment list. Whether you are reading the big meter (FET) or the meters on the recorder, you will need a signal to read, this instrument or the test tapes will provide you with signals.

Test tapes, tone generator, VTVM or FET meter . . . This is the basic package and will do almost every adjustment in the sequence - except the first one . . .

4. THE OSCILLOSCOPE

Even a simple one is not cheap. Fortunately, a simple one is all you need. You can spend \$6,000 and more for the big ones, but for this purpose \$100 - \$200 will be more than enough. It must have a "vertical" and a "horizontal" amplifier and an X-Y mode. That's all you use to do the one adjustment you need it for. Tilt, height and tangency adjustments on the 58 are virtually unnecessary. The precision head block mounting plate practically guarantees long term accuracy in these areas. Only major physical force will disturb the relationship of the head block to the tape path. As long as you don't drop the recorder "face down" or strike the head assembly with a hammer all should be well. A small azimuth adjustment (± 0.5 degrees) is provided for fine tuning. This adjustment is accomplished by applying screw thread pressure to a slot in the base of the head itself (See Fig. 6-15, Pg 6-7.)

Assuming that the motors are not in need of attention (that's for Dealer Service), Azimuth, or head alignment is the number one step in maintenance . . . so let's begin.

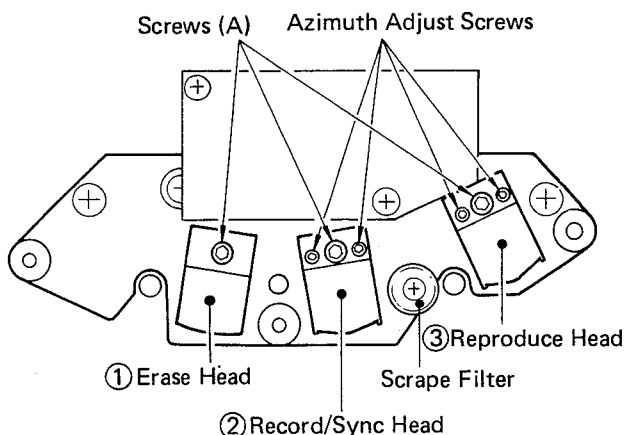


Fig. 6-15. Head Adjustment Screws and Alignment

The gaps in the heads that do the erasing, recording, and playing back must be precisely perpendicular to the tape. PRECISELY. Even a tiny error in alignment will make problems for the recorder. If the heads are not in alignment, both with the tape, and with respect to each other, tones recorded on one head will not play properly on the other. In the table below, the error is shown with the loss in dB for 1K and 10K. The amount of tilt is given in the fractions of a single degree called minutes, 60 minutes to a degree. As you can see, it only takes 1/4 degree to cause big trouble.

| 1-Mil Wavelength | | 1/2-Mil Wavelength | | 1/4-Mil Wavelength | |
|------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Loss in dB | Azimuth Error in Minutes | Loss in dB | Azimuth Error in Minutes | Loss in dB | Azimuth Error in Minutes |
| 0.5 dB | 14.86 | 0.5 dB | 7.43 | 0.5 dB | 3.71 |
| 1.0 dB | 20.90 | 1.0 dB | 10.45 | 1.0 dB | 5.22 |
| 2.0 dB | 29.21 | 2.0 dB | 14.60 | 2.0 dB | 7.30 |
| 3.0 dB | | 3.0 dB | 17.67 | 3.0 dB | 8.83 |
| 4.0 dB | | 4.0 dB | 20.16 | 4.0 dB | 10.08 |
| 5.0 dB | | 5.0 dB | 22.16 | 5.0 dB | 11.13 |
| 6.0 dB | | 6.0 dB | 24.08 | 6.0 dB | 12.04 |
| 7.0 dB | | 7.0 dB | 25.68 | 7.0 dB | 12.84 |
| 8.0 dB | | 8.0 dB | 27.09 | 8.0 dB | 13.54 |
| 9.0 dB | | 9.0 dB | 28.36 | 9.0 dB | 14.18 |
| 10.0 dB | | 10.0 dB | 29.50 | 10.0 dB | 14.75 |

Table 6-2. Loss due to azimuth misalignment for 43-mil quartertrack. (Courtesy, Ampex Corp. Test Tape Laboratory)

Since the 58 can use a single head (head ② in the stack) to perform all functions (recording,

sync play and playback) it won't hurt the recorder to use the "whizbang studio alignment" procedure, which is to do nothing about alignment at all. You won't notice anything wrong with the sound you make, but there are drawbacks.

1. Your tapes won't play properly on any other recorder (whizbang standards are unique).
2. No accurate tune-up of the recorder will be possible, as most test procedures use one head as a reference for the other. To do this, they must be aligned perfectly.

Thread the 15 ips test tape on the recorder and find the operating level section of the tape. Connect the outputs for tracks 2 and 7 of the recorder to the 2 inputs of an oscilloscope, track 2 to the vertical input that makes the beam draw lines up and down and 7 to the horizontal input (draws lines left to right). Set the scope to the "Vector" or XY mode. You will have to consult the instruction book for the scope to determine how to do this. We don't know what brand of test gear you have. Play the tone, and this is what you should see:

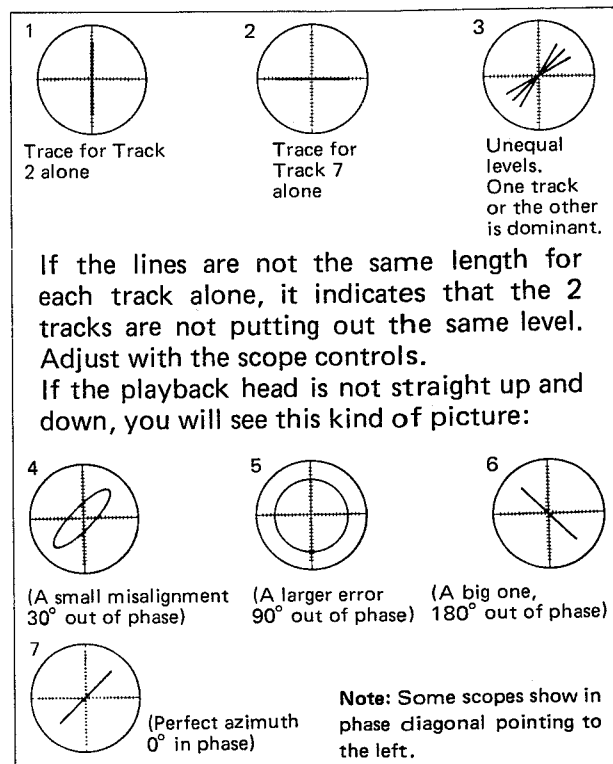


Fig. 6-16. Phase Shift

How much distance error is involved depends on the frequency or pitch of the tone and the speed of the tape. One "cycle" per second at 15 ips would be hard to misalign. To get scope picture No. 6, you would have to separate the gaps in the playback head by 7-1/2 inches, but one cycle per second is not audio. How about 1,000 cycles per second of tape travel? At 15 ips, the separation or tilt in the head for scope picture No. 6 becomes .0075 inch. And at 15,000 Hz at 15 ips it's .0005 inch. Not much tilt will produce a big error. Slower tape speeds mean even smaller spacings and good azimuth becomes even more important. The proper method of adjustment is to look first at a long wave, say 1000 cycles, and make a coarse adjustment. Then work up in frequency, adjusting shorter and shorter wavelengths smaller and smaller amounts. If you start adjusting with 10 kHz or 15 kHz, you can make a big mistake. Here's why . . . Since the very short wavelengths are very close together on the tape, it is possible to get a good "picture" on the scope by adjusting one full cycle off. If you work up to 15 K, checking and adjusting as you go, you will avoid this mistake.

The next step is to play all the signals from the lowest frequency to the highest on the 15 ips alignment tape — one play for each head position (②—③), and DO NOTHING. Just have a look.

It's not a good idea to turn knobs just to "see what happens." Just because an adjustment can be made doesn't mean it's necessary. The recorder is very solid and is well adjusted at the factory, so in all test and maintenance procedures, check first, then if something is not right, adjust. Taking your time will save endless grief. A new machine is very likely to be "on the money" when you get it and if you keep it clean and degaussed will drift away from top shape very slowly. It's not necessary to plan on a major overhaul when it comes out of the box.

5. TEST TAPES FOR THE 58

TEAC YTT-1144SP (for reproduce alignment)

Tape speed: 15 ips; reference fluxivity: 250 nWb/m, equalization: IEC; time constant: $\infty + 35 \mu\text{sec}$.

— or —

MRL31J-129 (Magnetic Reference Lab.)

All spaces are identical with YTT-1144SP except for the fringing effect and the reference fluxivity which is 200 nWb/m and thus its reproduce output level will be 2 dB lower. STL TAPE #6 - EL 3 261.3 nWb/m.

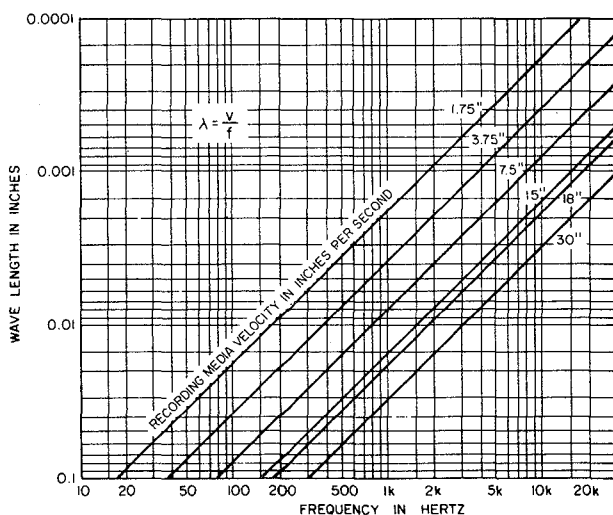


Fig. 6-17. Velocity of recording media versus recorded wavelength in inches for a given frequency.

Once you have everything set up — the reference tape is playing, the scope is running and showing the x-y display, you need a Hex Wrench and this diagram to find the right adjustment point. Adjusting the screw will rotate the head very slightly.

6-2. ELECTRICAL ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

6-2-1. Location of Electrical Adjustments

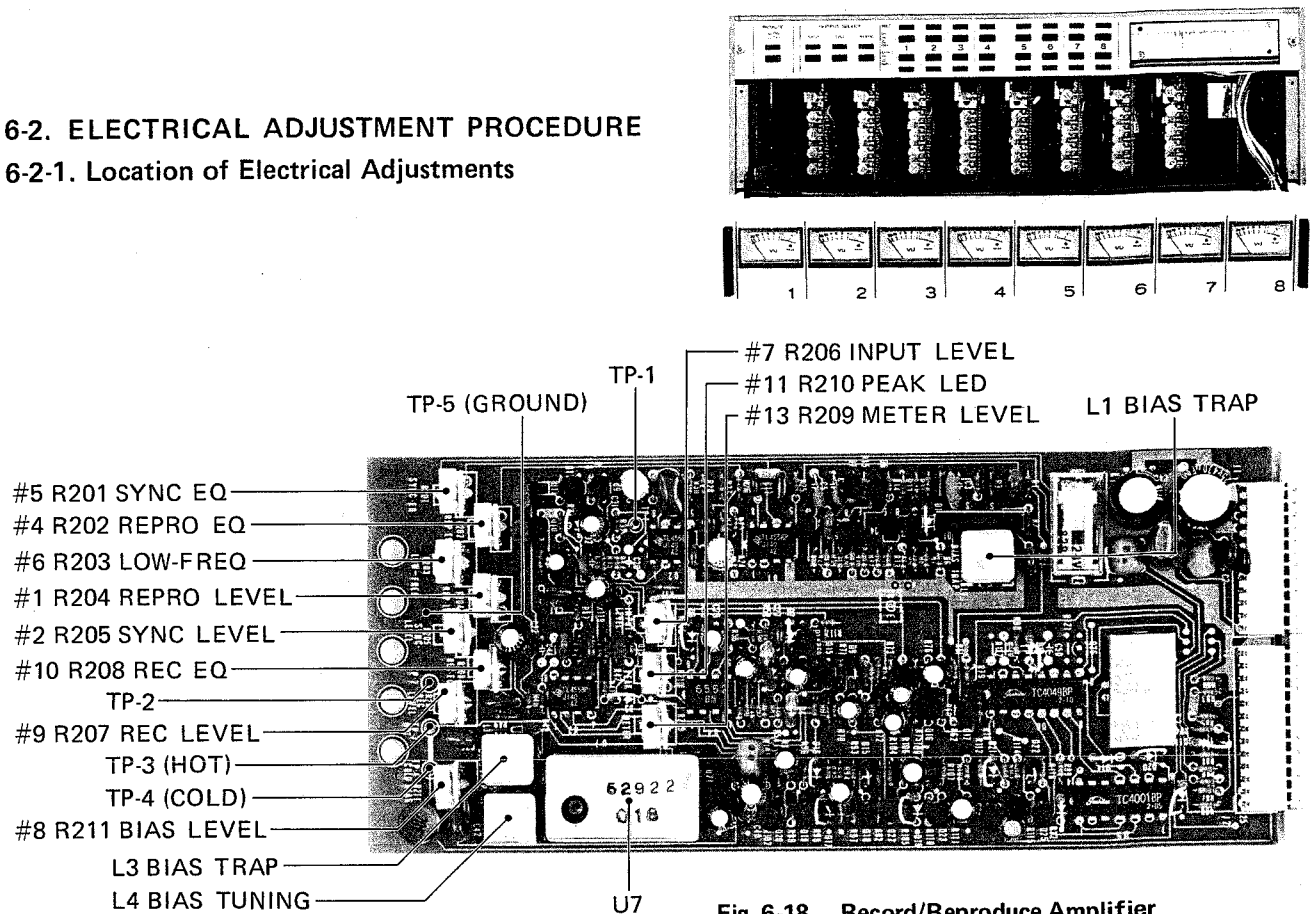


Fig. 6-18. Record/Reproduce Amplifier Adjustment Positions

| TRIM POT NUMBER | REFERENCE NUMBER | | FUNCTION |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|---|
| #1 | R204 | 5 k ohms | REPRO LEVEL |
| 2 | R205 | 5 k ohms | SYNC LEVEL |
| 3 | R209 | 50 k ohms | METER LEVEL |
| 4 | R202 | 2 k ohms | REPRO EQ (HIGH-FREQ) |
| 5 | R201 | 20 k ohms | SYNC EQ (HIGH-FREQ) |
| 6 | R203 | 50 k ohms | REPRO. SYNC EQ (LOW-FREQ) |
| 7 | R206 | 2 k ohms | INPUT LEVEL |
| 8 | R211 | 100 k ohms | BIAS LEVEL |
| 9 | R207 | 5 k ohms | REC LEVEL |
| 10 | R208 | 5 k ohms | REC EQ |
| 11 | R210 | 50 k ohms | PEAK LED |
| — | L1 | | REPRO BIAS TRAP |
| — | L3 | | RECORD BIAS TRAP |
| — | L4 | | (BIAS TUNING) CAUTION: Don't attempt any adjustments of L4 except for purposes described under the MAINTENANCE section. |

Table 6.3. Reference and Function Description

6-2-2. Reproduce Adjustments

(DO NOT ATTEMPT TO CALIBRATE WITH DBX ENGAGED!)

When we're sure the playback and record heads are properly aligned, we can move on to the electronic adjustments.

The first step here is to actually check your meter calibration. To make this check, simply remove the four captive screws from both sides of the lower front panel on which the VU meters are attached. You will now have full access to each of the trim pots or inductors for adjustments of all channels.

Connect the VTVM to the output terminal of track 1. Turn the machine ON, and thread the 15 ips alignment tape. Play the "operating level" portion (a voice on the tape identifies each section at the beginning).

Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch on the 58 to REPRO. Adjust the playback or "reproduce" level with trim pot #1, R204, 5 k ohms REPRO LEVEL so that the VTVM reads -10 dB (0.3 V). Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC. Adjust the playback level with trim pot #2, R205, 5 k ohms SYNC LEVEL so that the meter reads -10 dB (0.3 V). Now read the meter on the front panel of the 58. It should read "0 VU."

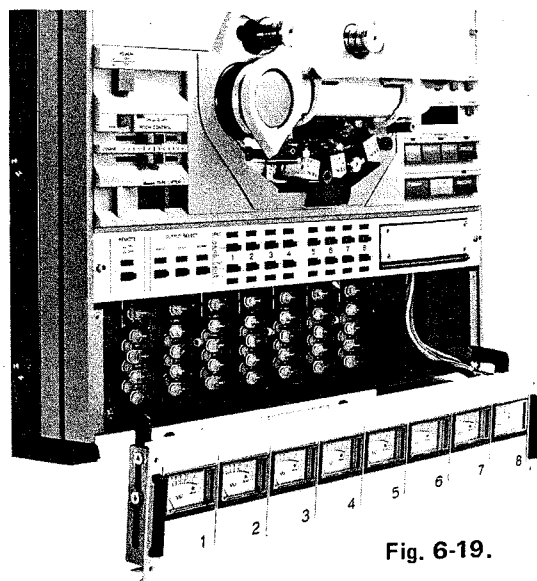
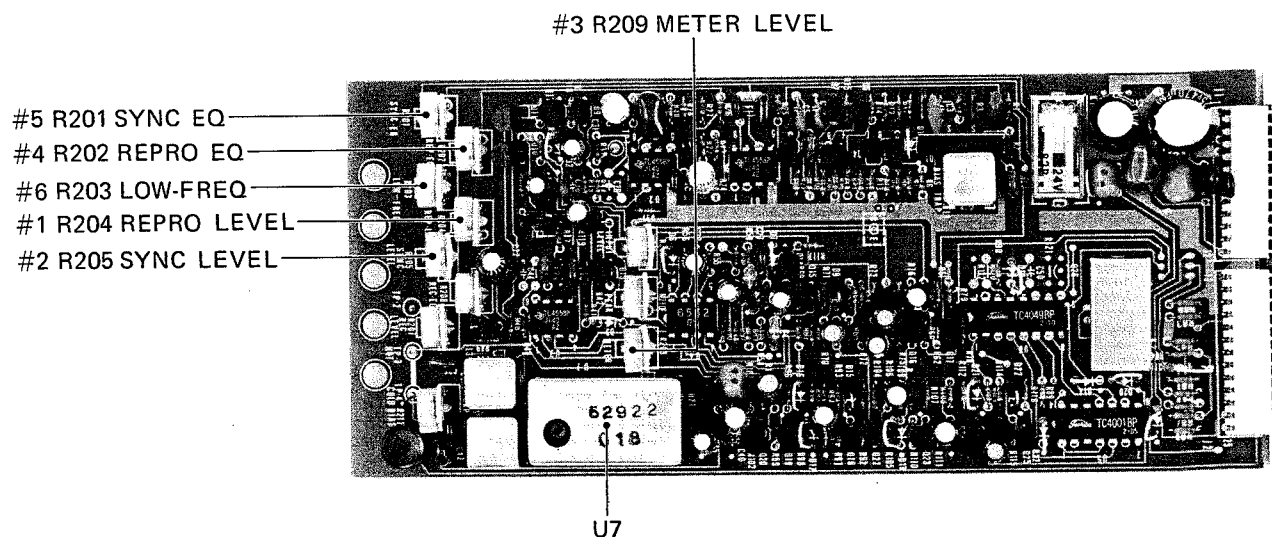


Fig. 6-19.

Adjusting trim pot #3, R209, 50 k ohms METER LEVEL will allow you to set the meter on the 58. You adjust the 58 meter to read "0 VU," not -10 , the reading on the VTVM. The VU meter will read 0 at any voltage you set it for — the correct one is 0 VU. This is the right setting for the 58. You read -10 dB (0.3 V) on the VTVM and adjust the 58 meters to read 0 VU at this level.



Seven tracks still remain to be checked and adjusted, but as you can see, the adjustments are the same as for track 1. In brief:

1. Play the tape "operating level".
2. Read the VTVM for head ③, REPRO.
3. Adjust for -10 dB (0.3 V) reading with trim pot #1.
4. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC.
5. Read the VTVM. Adjust trim pot #2.
6. Read the meter on the 58 — it must read 0 VU.
7. Adjust the meter trim pot #3, R209, 50 k ohms METER LEVEL.

You do this for all 8 tracks: 16 level sets and, if necessary, 8 meter trims. Don't get discouraged. When you are unfamiliar with anything, it takes more time. Practice will speed things up. The entire adjustment procedure involves reading and setting (if necessary) about 104 controls. When you are used to doing it, it should only take about an hour and a half. Have patience, you'll learn soon enough. It is absolutely worth it.

One more word of encouragement. The circuits in the 58 are very stable. Most of the time you will make a reading and not have to adjust anything. When something does go wrong, you will be able to fix it very quickly, and get back to recording.

In summary, with the VTVM and test tape you have adjusted the playback level on the 58 to the test tape. But your playback reference is not yet complete. You have only "zeroed" one point on a line of frequency response. To establish the rest of the line, you must measure and adjust one more frequency.

Advance the alignment tape for 15 ips to the section that is recorded at 18 kHz and adjust the trim pot #4, R202 2 k ohms REPRO EQ; switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and adjust trim pot #5, R201, 2 k ohms SYNC EQ. The reading for both positions should be 0 VU on the 58 meters. Generally, trim pot #6, R203, 50 k ohms will not necessary require adjustment except for correction of the frequency response in the lower frequency spectrum.

Since you have checked and adjusted the playback meter circuit, you can now use the meters on the 58 for test readings.

By adjusting all of the preceding trimmers, you

have established two things: an operating playback level of "zero", and a playback frequency response reference. You know that both heads on the 58 are reproducing the test tape in an identical manner.

6-2-3. Record Adjustments

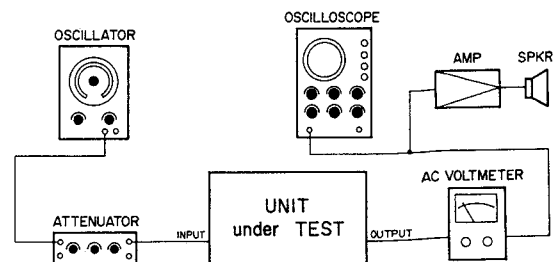


Fig. 6-20. Test Connection for Recording Check

Now you can use the repro head as a test instrument to check and adjust the record circuits. Almost all of the following steps involve recording a tone on a tape and reading the playback output of the recorder. **YOU WON'T ALTER THE PLAYBACK CONTROLS.** They are now all set. You will make all necessary adjustments by trimming the record electronics.

This way, you can be sure that the recordings you make, no matter what brand of tape you use (the brand of tape becomes part of the test procedure when you record your test tones on it), will playback properly on any 58.

The alignment tape can be put away. Before storing, the tape should be played all the way from front to back (not fast wound), and stored tails out, so it will last longer. Even if you decide not to attempt any major maintenance yourself, we strongly suggest you purchase an alignment tape. An occasional playing will tell you when you need to call the "doctor". It's good insurance to know the truth.

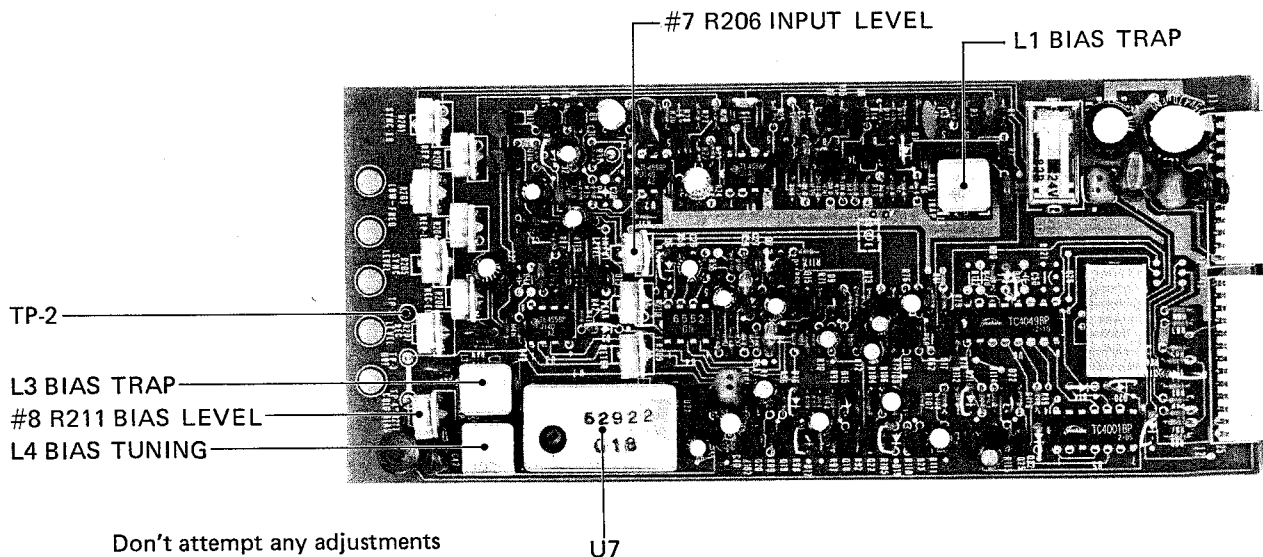
1. Input Level Adjust

Connect the reference level, or signal generator to track 1 input on the 58. The correct level is -10 dB (0.3 V).

The frequency to use is 1 kHz. It's a good idea to mark it. Check the OUTPUT SELECT switches. Make sure you have the switch marked INPUT depressed. If you get a reading, use trim pot #7, R206, 2 k ohms INPUT LEVEL and adjust the meter to read 0 VU. As always, repeat this check on all 8 tracks of the 58. Plugging and unplugging test equipment can be tedious. You can save some time by doing a reference check on your mixer. If you know that your console meter reads 0 VU accurately (check it with the VTVM), you can assign reference oscillator signals to the 58 through the mixer connections to the inputs. Assign, read, adjust: next track, assign, read adjust... no need to pull plugs.

2. About the Bias

At this point in the adjustment procedure we'll stop for a time and talk about a major section of the recorder electronics. The bias oscillator and its related circuitry. The bias oscillator produces a very high frequency signal that does two big jobs in the 58. It supplies the 145 kHz (one hundred forty five thousand cycles per second) frequency to the bias amplifiers in the 58. There is a bias amplifier on every card, one for each track. The bias amplifier provides power for the erase head and bias signal for the record head. Erasure is easy to explain, so we'll tackle that subject first. A lot of power is used to remove all signal from the tape just prior to its being recorded. The erase head has a rather large gap and completely cleans off any magnetic field on the tape by brute force. No new signal is recorded by this head. The gap is much too large to be effective as a recording device.



Don't attempt any adjustments of L4 except for purposes described in the "MAINTENANCE" section.

From the same amplifier, current is added to the record head circuit lead. This high frequency signal overcomes magnetic inertia in tape, and gets everything moving. If there were no "starter current" to help the record signal, we would see this kind of trouble on a scope.

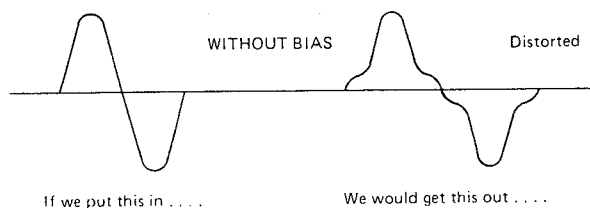


Fig. 6-21.

The beginning and ending points of the wave would be distorted by the reluctance of the iron bits to change their magnetic state from one polarity to the other. Crossing that zero line takes extra energy. The bias signal provides it. We put in this:

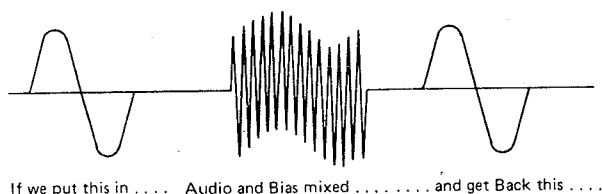


Fig. 6-22.

Where did the 145 kHz go? It disappears from the output because the head gap is too large to play it back. The individual changes of magnetic energy on the tape are smaller than the gap size so a plus and a minus wave are both within the gap at the same time. They cancel out. Marvellous! On with the problems of alignment. Well, maybe not so marvellous. Because of the fact that there is one amplifier doing 2 separate jobs. The adjustments we make on one circuit will affect the other. In fact the erase current is fixed, but there are 2 interacting circuits and life

can get pretty tricky right here. The 2 adjustables are (in sequence):

1. The bias current (for the record head) trim pot #8, R211, 100 k ohms BIAS LEVEL.
2. The bias traps. Since there is a lot of power involved here, you have 2 problems. The record bias signal must not go to the record electronics, only to the head, so there is a big high frequency filter (very high, just to keep the bias out) on the wire to the record head.

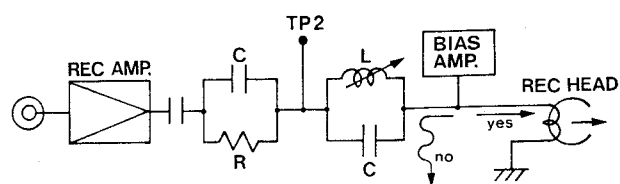


Fig. 6-23.

We've given you the bad news (they interact). Now we'll give you the good news. Unless you adjust the bias tuning coil L4 for the erase head, or the bias current by a very large amount, you won't need to check these circuits more than once every six months or so. The traps seldom need adjustment unless something is wrong with the master oscillator. The "traps" are expected to tune out the 145 kHz frequency that the bias oscillator is producing, and the range of adjustment that they have is not very good at filtering a much different frequency. If the master bias oscillator drifts, it must be re-adjusted to produce 145 kHz. Since this bias oscillator master circuit adjustment requires something expensive (very) called a frequency counter, it's wise to assume it's a dealer problem. Cart it in for this kind of service. There are also bias traps in the playback circuit to keep any stray leaks out of them as well, but they are not as touchy as the record-related circuit traps, and won't affect the load on the bias amplifier. They are tricky to adjust, but very stable. In sequence, you adjust them (if necessary) at the very end of the entire alignment procedure, so we'll mention them again.

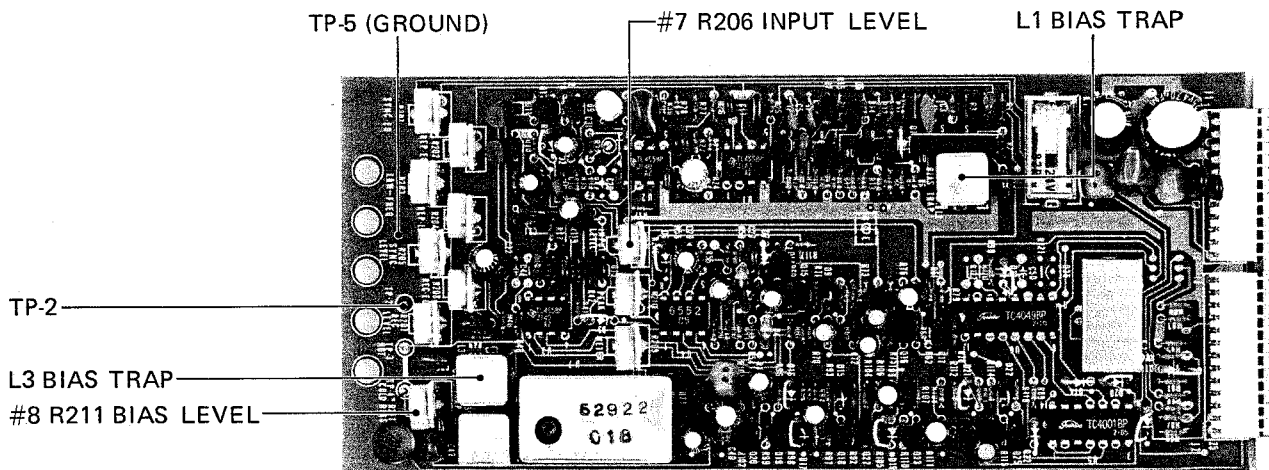
3. Bias Level Adjust

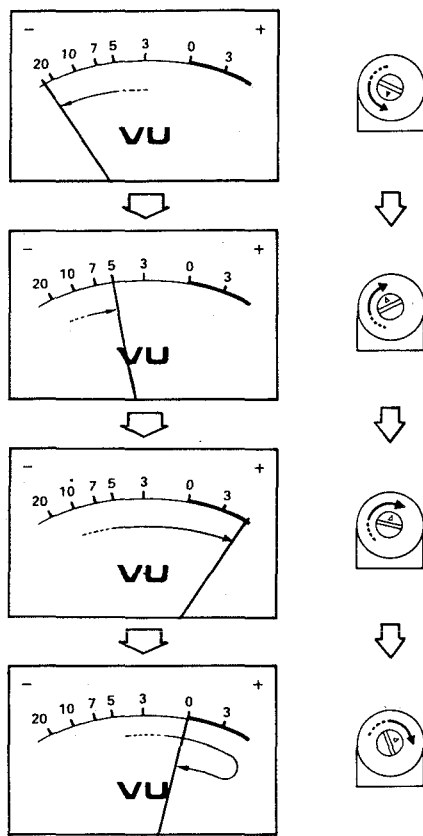
This adjustment is made while you are recording a tone on the type of tape you'll be using for the session. It will be different for each brand of tape.

Set up the signal generator (oscillator). The frequency is 10 kHz. The level should be 0 VU on the meters of the 58 on INPUT. Start the machine, record the signal, and switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.

Begin the adjustment by making sure trim pot #8, R211, 100 k ohms BIAS LEVEL is in the fully counterclockwise position (off, no bias at all). Now, as you rotate trim pot #8 clockwise, the VU meter will rise to some peak reading. **Continue the clockwise rotation slowly** until the reading on the meter drops back 4 – 5 dB from the peak. If, at peak, the meter goes off scale, adjust the oscillator output level to get the reading back on scale.

What is important here is not the zero. It is the reduction of the peak by precisely 4 – 5 dB. Adjust trim pot #7, R206, INPUT LEVEL when you have trouble adjusting the oscillator output level, but be sure that the input level adjustments are repeated if this trim pot is adjusted.





If there is insufficient clockwise rotation of trim pot #8 to achieve a peak, dealer service of the bias amplifier/oscillator system will be required. Many voltages in the circuit must be adjusted accurately and this type of problem is not considered to be "routine maintenance". Bring it in.

When making bias adjustments, all 8 channels should be recording at once, even though you are adjusting only one at a time.

With the oscillator running at 1 kHz, switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch back to INPUT. Adjust trim pot #7, R206, INPUT LEVEL for 0 VU on the meters.

4. Bias Trap Adjust

Now is the time to do the bias trap in the record circuit: With no input signal, test point TP-2 is located on the PC board. Positive side of VTVM is connected to test point, negative side to ground TP-5. Tune inductor L3 for minimum.

Inductor L1 will not require adjusting except when there is an excessive amount of bias leakage noticeable at the output terminals when recording.

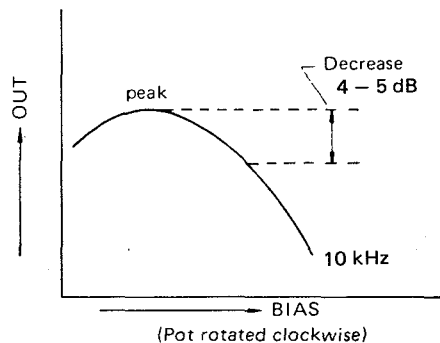


Fig. 6-24. Bias Limits Chart

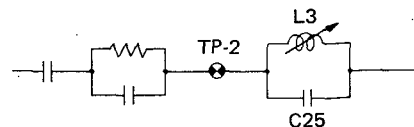


Fig. 6-25.

5. Record Level Adjust

We give these adjustments just to be accurate and thorough, and remind you again that they are seldom needed. Unless you have made some really drastic change in your recorder, you should not worry about this adjustment for at least 6 months.

Again, to be thorough, at this point it would be wise to check bias again before proceeding. On a major overhaul it might be necessary to go through these 2 steps — bias and record level adjustments — 3 or 4 times before finally moving on to the record equalization and then, once more to the end. Describing this procedure this way is probably giving the manufacturing setup, or a head replacement sequence when all values of the record circuit must be re-qualified.

However, we do recommend that you select a brand of high quality tape and stick to it. Changing bias every day for different tapes will make the recorder cranky and a little harder to adjust. Constant messing with the controls is unwise. It is a much better idea to do as little as possible and let the recorder "settle in" to one kind.

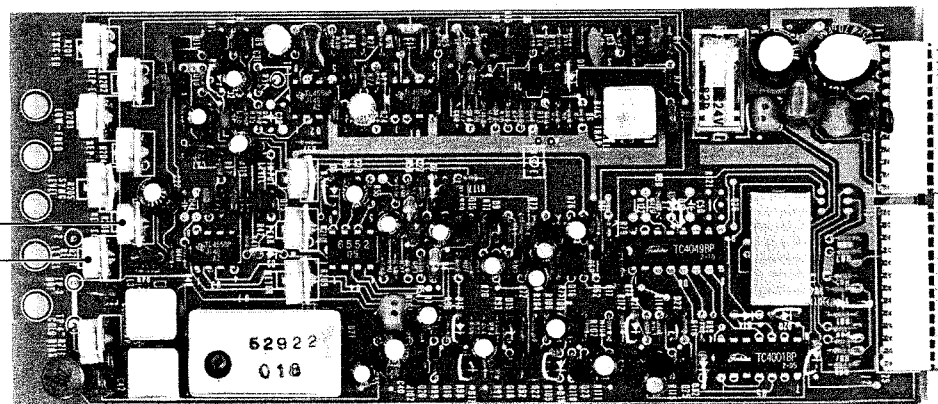
We are now ready to adjust the record circuitry. We first check the low frequency input level at 1 kHz to get a reference. The steps are as follows:

1. Adjust oscillator to 1 kHz.
2. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to INPUT.
3. Send in .316 volt, set "0 VU" on the 58 meters.
4. Record the tone at 15 ips.
5. Switch to "REPRO" and read the 58 meters.
6. With trim pot #9, R207, 5 k ohms REC LEVEL, adjust to "0 VU".

With only a few adjustments remaining in the complete procedure, let's review all you have done up to this point. Step by step, you have:

1. Cleaned and degaussed the tape path.
2. Adjust the head azimuth of both heads to 90° by checking and adjusting progressively higher and higher frequencies.
3. Checked the 58 meters against a precision meter, and set .316 volt output as "0 VU" playback.
4. Adjusted playback from both play head positions to be "0 VU" at 1 kHz and at 18 kHz, using the test tapes as an absolute reference of magnetic level.
5. Applied a reference level to the input of the 58 and adjusted the "0 VU" point to be .316 volt, both in the circuit and on the meters.

#10 R208 REC EQ
#9 R207 REC LEVEL



6. Set the bias level for the tape of choice.
7. If you have the equipment, make sure no bias is going to the record amplifiers.
8. If you have the equipment, set (after bias) the record "0 VU" and read it off playback. You now know that the tape you are making has the same level of magnetic flux recorded on it as the reference alignment tape, but only at 1 kHz, the basic adjustment frequency.

6. Record Equalizer Adjust

The frequency to send in is 1 kHz, record the tone at "0 VU" in, switch to REPRO and select 18 kHz. Adjust trim pot #10, R208, 5 k ohms REC EQ to read "0 VU" in playback.

If you can't seem to get a "good" reading because you run out of adjustment range, try these points.

- Re-clean the three heads.
- Re-check the bias. If the bias current is too high, the high frequency sensitivity is reduced in relation to the 1 kHz point. Check it out.

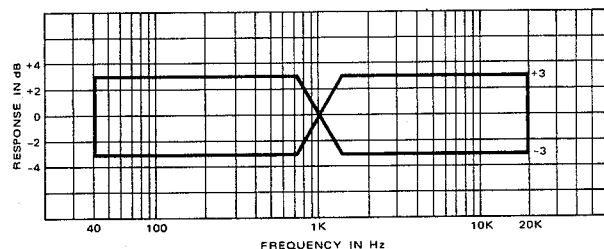


Fig. 6-26. Overall Frequency Response

If all this fails to produce a reading that lies within the tolerances for frequency response on this graph, it is time to replace the heads. If more equalization were added to the record circuit to overcome wear, the boost needed would be large enough to make the signal-to-noise ratio specification impossible to achieve.

Let's assume everything is OK so far. You have sent in and read back good numbers for 15 ips, everything in spec at both frequencies. Now, as a check, record everything you have on your tone generator (if it is variable, be reasonable, say 9 frequencies) 40 Hz, 100 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 4 kHz, 10 kHz, 15 kHz, 18 kHz, 20 kHz — compare with the graph above.

Fine tuning the bias against the frequency trim pots will allow you to get a little closer to perfectly flat. It's time consuming but worthwhile. Suit yourself.

With the amplifier front panel closed you can now check the signal-to-noise ratio of the whole system. You use the big test meter. Record with no input signal and read the results. The reading should be -60 dBV or better (un-weighted).

That's it. The whole procedure for an electronic overhaul of the 58. Mechanical adjustments such as brake and holdback torque, reel height adjust and wow-and-flutter measurements must be done first, but they are major service and should not be necessary "out of the box." The transport logic control and switching system are described in "5-Theory of Operation". But digital i.c. theory is very complex and the necessary test equipment for repairs costs more than the recorder. **The maintenance section is not written as a guide to the beginner, so be advised, it may not help your understanding of the 58. It is useful only to the experienced maintenance technician.**

DAILY SETUP

It's obvious that an entire alignment procedure is not something that can be completed quickly. You don't begin a "major" ten minutes before the musicians arrive. It is not likely to be necessary every day, but what is reasonable? Most good engineers make several quick tests. If nothing is amiss, they start setting up the rest of the session with confidence. If there is a problem, they go further. Here is what they do.

1. Clean and degauss. Obvious first step.
2. After the recorder has been on for 10 minutes and is nicely warmed up, check the reproduce response with the test tape. A little trim? OK, no problem.
3. They then set up the signal generator and record several frequencies, say 100 Hz, 4 k, 10 k. Looks good? Then we can begin.
4. A very fussy engineer will take a look at the bias adjust to make sure everything is OK there as well, before he looks at the record EQ.

These several quick checks will usually uncover any serious trouble, and the idea is to work backwards up the chain of adjustments if anything shows an error. "Reproduce" is the first step in a major overhaul, and "Record EQ" is the last.

If everything works OK, you can assume all is well. If you get something funny as a reading, you will have to track it down, but these tests will usually give you some idea of where the problem lies. Work backwards through the recorder (that's forward through the adjustments, by the way, they run from back to front in the procedure, don't get confused) until you uncover the problem. You always clean and degauss, and you should always check the reproduce response with the test tape. Again, reproduce, bias, record check, no problems, OK, go, and good luck with your tapes.

Speaking of tape, we strongly suggest that you buy good quality tape and stick to one kind. While box tape is cheap for a reason. It doesn't perform as well as the "good stuff," and will be hard to tune up to, and may even damage your recorder. Excessive shedding of oxide, uneven slitting and other defects too numerous to mention will make all your efforts go for very little. Tape is important, use the best.

GENERAL ADVICE ON MAINTENANCE

Don't attempt to adjust a stone cold machine. Turn it on and let it warm up for 30 minutes.

Don't adjust the "traps" with a metal screw driver or tool. The metal tip will affect the value of the part and will give false readings. Use a plastic T.V. adjustment tool, or cut a strip of rigid plastic to size. (Credit cards will work, if you have an old one you don't need.)

Suspect any large change in adjustment that happens all at once.

Stop and think, if you turn a pot and get no change in reading, have you adjusted the wrong control?

Remove the alignment tape from the heads when switching power "on" or "off." A switching transient on a badly adjusted recorder can "print" on the tape.

Tape and electronic "hiss" should be smooth sounding. If, when recording, you detect popping, or sputtering noises, degauss the heads. If this doesn't change the sound, plan on a record bias trap adjustment.

If the oscilloscope picture is not stable when using the alignment tape (the trace opens and shuts like a mouth) suspect the holdback torque adjustment. When recording and playing test tones, suspect the tape slitting as well as the motor adjusts. If the reference tape doesn't do this, but the recording tape does, it's definitely not the recorder. It is the tape that is at fault.

At the end of a session, take the time to slow wind (spooling or play mode) the roll off the machine and store it "tails out."

Don't plan on recording over a splice. Any steady tone such as singing, or violins that you attempt to print over a cut in the tape may show a dropout, or momentary interruption. Even the best splice in the world is thicker than normal. The splicing tape adds quite a lot, and makes the tape "bump" when it goes by the head. This is especially important if you are using DBX. The dropout will be made much more noticeable by the action of the DBX.

It is a good idea to pad your master tapes by winding some blank tape on both ends, and adding leader tape.

Put a test tone (1 kHz) on each tape for reference level checks. Then it's easier to set up machines and mixers when recording sessions occur on different dates or different machines.

Keep a TRACK SHEET. Write down what happened during the session and what went on to the tape. You might list such things as mic placement; complete/incomplete takes; brand of tape used; speed; noise reduction; comments (for example: a producer might have liked a particular bass part more than others, so you can save it and use it during overdubbing and mix-down).

Have the tools-of-the-trade handy — leader tape, razor blades, splicing tape, masking tape, grease pencils, etc.

There's another old saying around studio circles: if it's not labeled, use it. So it's a very good idea to label all tape boxes and reels. And pack a track sheet in every box.

When you're not working on a tape, it's safest to put it in its box; don't leave it on the machine where an accident could wipe out weeks of work.

SERVICE CHART

| AD- JUST STEP | WHAT IS IT CALLED | SIGNAL SOURCE AND AMOUNT | WHAT TEST GEAR TO USE | WHAT IS THE RE- CORDER DOING? | POINT TO ADJUST | WHAT READING TO ADJUST FOR |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|---|--|---|
| 1 | Reproduce Head Alignment | Reproduce Align- ment Test Tape TEAC YTT-1144SP | VTVM and Oscillo- scope with vertical and horizontal inputs connected to OUT- PUT tracks 2 and 7. | OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Repro head #3 azimuth adjusting screw. See Fig. 6-15. | Adjust for maximum, output and for output of tracks 2 and 7 less than 90° out of phase. (at 10 kHz) |
| 2 | Record/Sync Head Alignment | Same as above | Same as above | OUTPUT SELECT at SYNC Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Sync head #2 azimuth adjusting screw. See Fig. 6-15. | Same as above |
| 3 * | Reproduce Level (head #3) | Reproduce Align- ment Test Tape TEAC YTT-1144SP Reproduce 1 kHz | VTVM connected to OUTPUT terminal | OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO. Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Trim pot #1 R204 REPRO LEVEL | -10 dB (0.3 V) on VTVM |
| 4 * | Sync Reproduce Level (head #2) | Same as above | Same as above | OUTPUT SELECT at SYNC. Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Trim pot #2 R205 (SYNC LEVEL) | -10 dB (0.3 V) on VTVM |
| 5 * | Meter Adjustment | Same as above | VU Meter | Same as above | Trim pot #3 R 209 (METER) | Adjust to read 0 VU on VU meters |
| REPEAT STEPS MARKED WITH AN ASTERISK FOR EACH CHANNEL. THE ADJUSTMENT NUMBERS ARE THE SAME BUT THE CIRCUIT BOARD LOCATION, INPUT/OUTPUT TERMINAL NUMBERS, VU METERS, ETC., WILL BE DIFFER- ENT DEPENDING ON THE CHANNEL. | | | | | | |
| 6 * | Reproduce EQ (head #3) | YTT-1144SP Test Tape. Play 18 kHz signal on the tape. | VTVM connected to OUTPUT terminal or use VU meters | OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Trim pot #4 R202 (REPRO-EQ) | Adjust for same level as per 1 kHz signal. |
| 7 * | Sync EQ (head #2) | Same as above | Same as above | OUTPUT SELECT at SYNC. Reproduce at 15 ips Speed | Trim pot #5 R201 (SYNC-EQ) | Same as above |
| 8 * | Input Level | 1 kHz signal at -10 dB from oscillator connected to LINE IN terminals | VU meters | Stop mode OUTPUT SELECT at INPUT | Trim pot #7 R206 (INPUT LEVEL) | Adjust for 0 VU on VU meters |
| 9 * | Bias Level Adjust- ment | 10 kHz, -10 dB oscillator signal con- nected to Input jacks | VTVM connected to OUTPUT jacks or use VU meters | Record signal on type of tape that will be used for actual recording. OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO | Trim pot #8 R211 (BIAS LEVEL) | While recording adjust trim pot until VU meter indication rises to peak value, then turn pot further clockwise until signal drops off by 4 - 5 VU (over-bias). |
| 10 * | Bias Trap Adjust- ment | No input signal | VTVM connected to Bias Trap test point TP-2, negative lead to ground TP-5, positive lead to test point. | Record mode, no input signal | Inductor L3 | Adjust inductor for minimum output at Bias Trap test point. See page 6-15. |
| 11 * | Record Level | 1 kHz signal at -10 dB (0 VU on VU meters) connected to input terminals | VTVM connected to OUTPUT jack, or use VU meters | Record on selected tape at 15 ips OUTPUT SELECT at INPUT (to set reference), then, OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO | Trim pot #9 R207 | Set for -10 dB (0.3 V) at OUTPUT jacks or 0 VU on VU meters |

| AD- JUST STEP | WHAT IS IT CALLED | SIGNAL SOURCE AND AMOUNT | WHAT TEST GEAR TO USE | WHAT IS THE RE- CORDER DOING? | POINT TO ADJUST | WHAT READING TO ADJUST FOR |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|---|---|---|
| 12 * | High Frequency (REC EQ) | 18 kHz signal at -10 dB (0 VU on VU meters) connected to input terminals | VTVM connected to OUTPUT jack or use VU meters | Record signal on type of tape that will be used for actual recording. OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO | Trim pot #10 R208 | See for -10 dB (0.3 V) at OUTPUT jacks or 0 VU on VU meters |
| 13 * | Overall Frequency Response | 40 Hz to 20 kHz signal at -10 dB connected to Input terminals | Same as above | Same as above | Check only. Adjust- ment done in step 12. | Check that frequency response matches limits given in Fig. 6-26. |
| 14 * | PEAK LED | 1 kHz Input signal at +2 dBV level (+12 VU on VU meters). Apply signal for short time only. | PEAK LED in VU meters | OUTPUT SELECT at INPUT | Trim pot #11, R210 | Adjust until PEAK LED goes ON |
| 15 * | Overall Signal-to- Noise Ratio | No input signal | VTVM connected to OUTPUT jacks | Record mode. OUTPUT SELECT at REPRO | | Check for -60 dBV or better |

7. CHECKS AND ADJUSTMENTS

7-1. PARTS LOCATION DIAGRAM

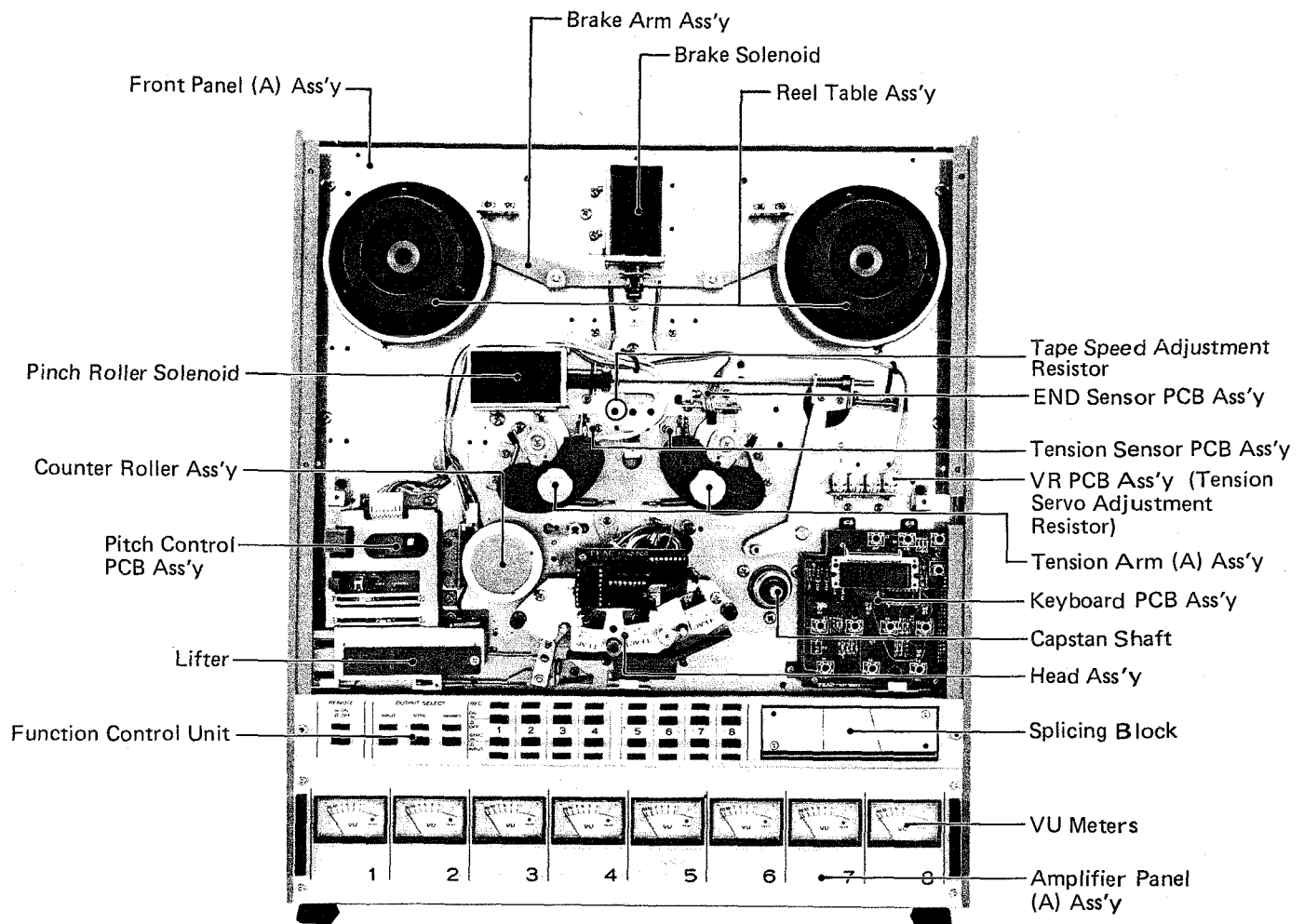


Fig. 7-1. Front Parts Location

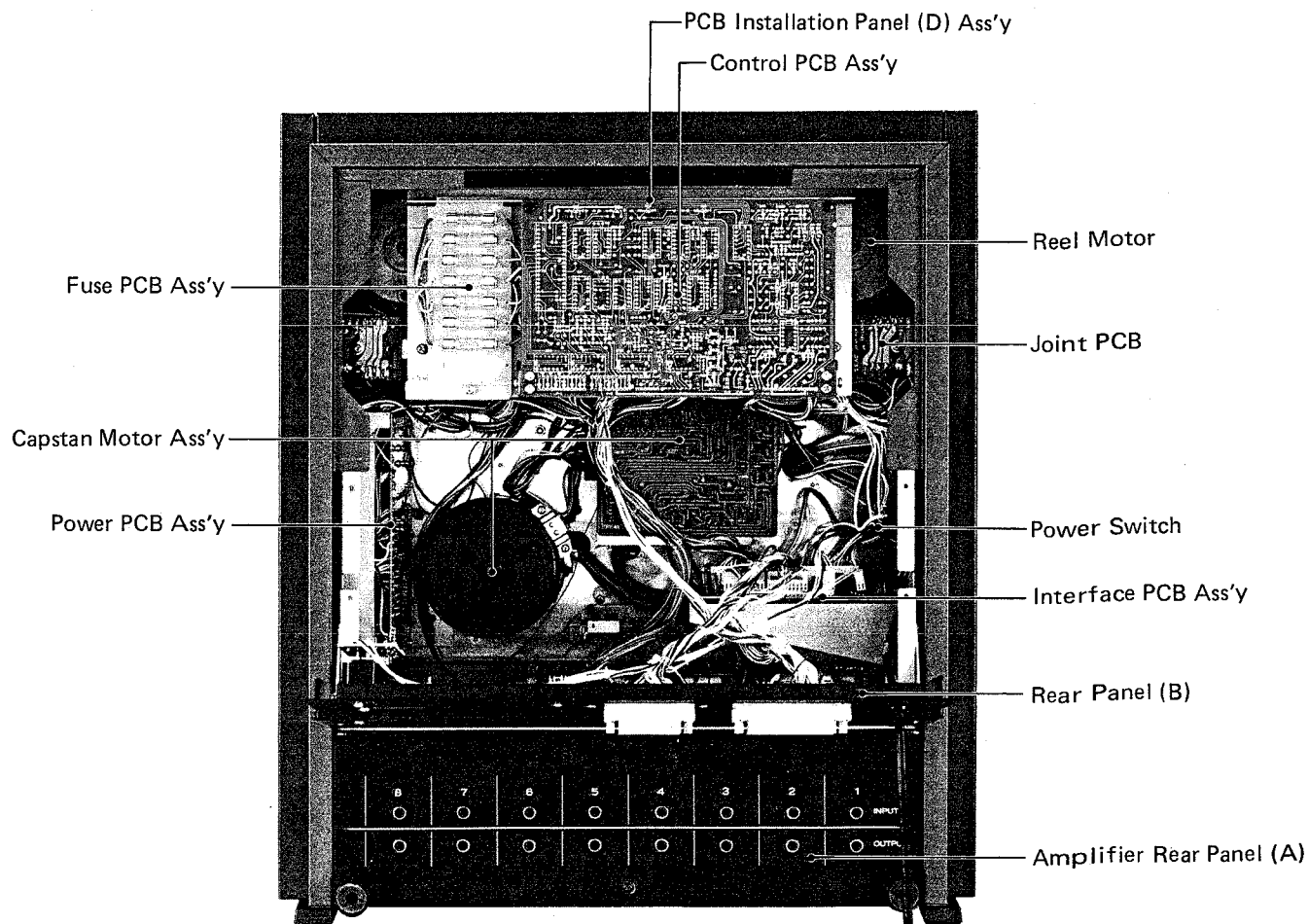


Fig. 7-2. Rear Parts Location

7-2. ESSENTIAL TEST EQUIPMENT REQUIRED

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Wow & Flutter Meter | Meguro Denpa Sokki K.K., Model MK-668C (JAPAN), or Mincom Division, 3M Co, Model 8155 (U.S.A.) |
| Audio Oscillator | Hewlett Packard, Model 204C or equivalent |
| Digital Frequency Counter | Range: 10 Hz ~ 100 kHz; sensitivity; 0.1 Vrms; imp.: $> 1\text{ M}\Omega$, $< 25\text{ pF}$ |
| Band-Pass-Filter | 1 kHz narrow band pass type |
| AF Level Meter | Range; -80 dB ~ +40 dB; imp.: $> 1\text{ M}\Omega$, $< 25\text{ pF}$ (example—HP 400GL) |
| Distortion Meter | General purpose (400 Hz, 1 kHz) |
| Oscilloscope | General purpose |
| Attenuator | General purpose |
| Tools | Spring scale: 0 ~ 8 lbs (0 ~ 4 kg) 0 ~ 2.2 lbs (0 ~ 1 kg) Hex head Allen wrenches, Plastic alignment tool |
| Cleaning fluid: | TEAC TZ-261 or equivalent |
| Head Demagnetizer | TEAC Spindle Oil TZ-255 or equivalent |
| Test Tapes | TEAC E-3 or equivalent Reproduce Alignment Test Tape: TEAC YTT-1144SP Equalization Standard: IEC, CCIR Time Constant: $15\text{ ips} = \infty\text{ }\mu\text{s} + 35\text{ }\mu\text{s}$ Wow and Flutter Test Tape: STL Test Tape 62 Blank Test Tape (Recording): TEAC Test Tape YTT-8163 |

7-3.

— Space reserved —

7-4. REMOVAL OF THE MAIN PARTS

7-4-1. Outer Parts

A. Head housing

As shown in Fig. 7-3, the head housing can be removed by simply removing the two screws marked (a) in the illustration.

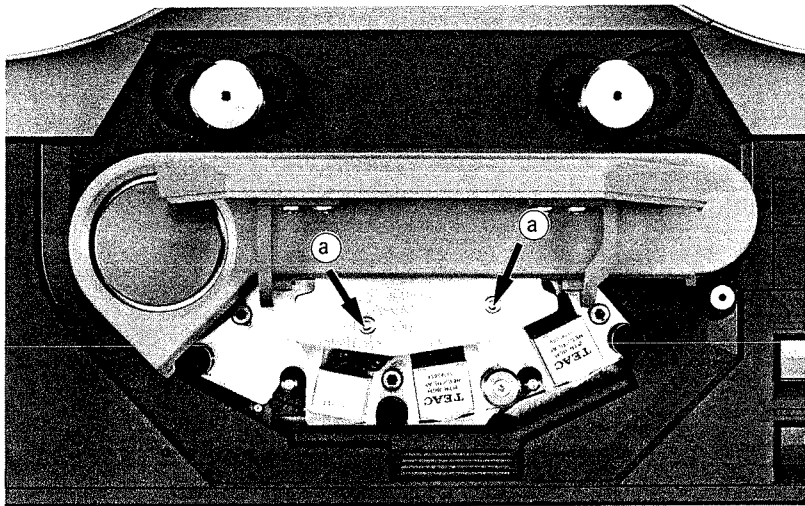


Fig. 7-3.

B. Front panel (A) ass'y

Using a 4 mm Allen wrench, remove the two Allen screws (a) from both the left and right sides of the front panel, and the two screws (b) located on the top of the deck, as shown in Fig. 7-4.

C. Dress panel (A) ass'y

1. To remove this assembly, the head housing, front panel, pinch roller and pitch control fader knobs are removed first. The pinch roller is removed by loosening the retaining screw from the top of the pinch roller.
2. Loosen the two retaining screws on the left and right sides of the function unit. Then slide the function unit back and forth to allow access to the three screws (c) shown in Fig. 7-4. The dress panel can be removed from the deck after these three screws are removed.

Note: Be careful not to damage the amplifier panel.

3. Next, remove the three screws (d) located under the front panel.

4. After all screws have been removed, slowly pull the dress panel towards you, while taking care that the tension arm doesn't scratch the dress panel.

D. Side panels

As shown in Fig. 7-5, loosen the four retaining screws (a) from the feet of the deck, then remove the two screws (b) and the remaining six screws (c) to enable removal of the side panels.

E. Remaining outer panels

1. Rear panel (A) can be removed by removing the four screws (a) shown in Fig. 7-6.
2. To open rear panel (B), remove the two screws (b) located beneath rear panel (A) and the five visible screws (c) on rear panel (B).
3. To remove the amplifier rear panel (A), remove the three screws (d) located beneath rear panel (B) and the three visible screws (e) on the amplifier rear panel (A).

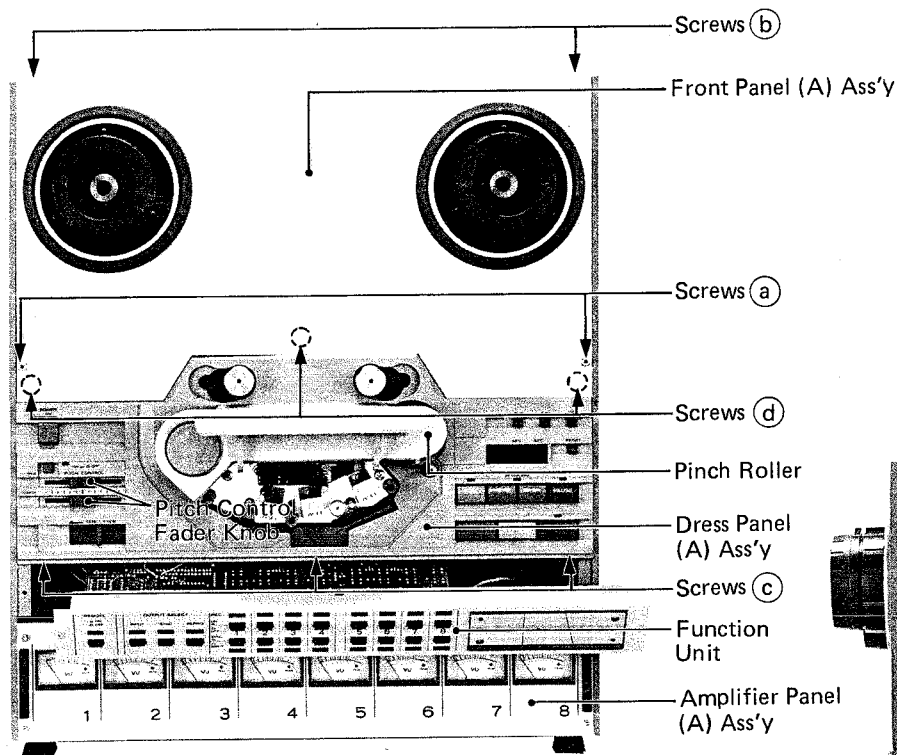


Fig. 7-4. Front Panels

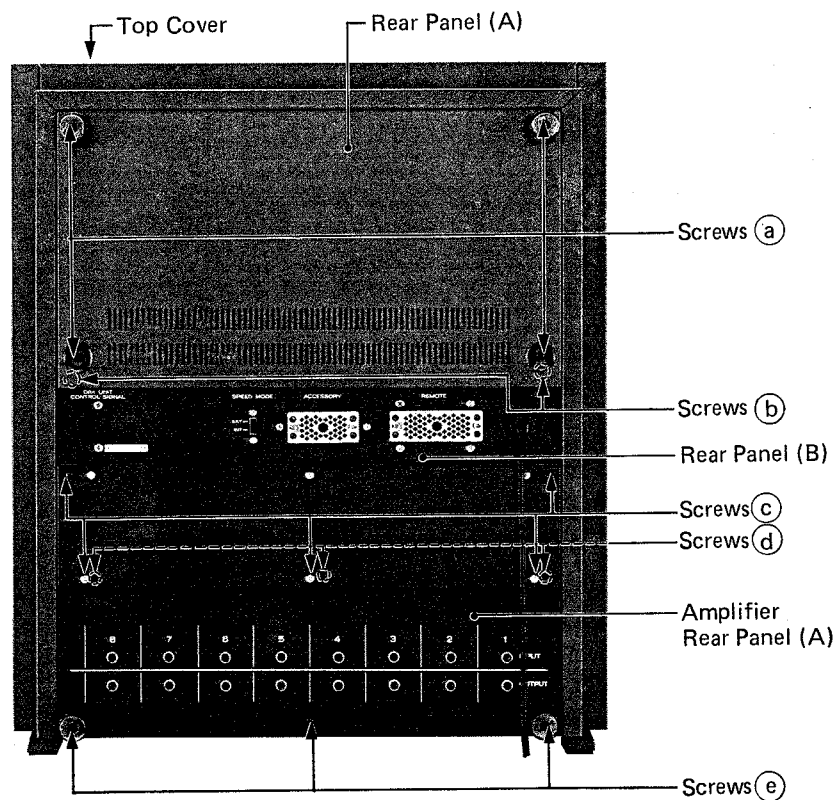


Fig. 7-6. Rear Panels

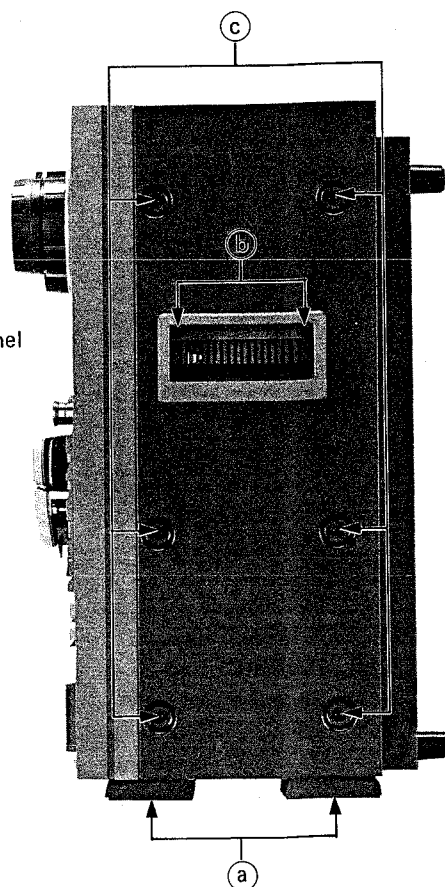


Fig. 7-5. Side Panels

7-4-2. Head

1. First, remove the head housing as described in 7-4-1 (A).
2. Then remove the head housing mount plate (C) found behind the head housing.
3. Using a 3 mm Allen wrench, remove the three Allen screws (a) holding the head as shown in Fig. 7-7, and remove.

4. The head can be removed by first removing the Allen screws (b) located on the rear of the head and then removing the other screws (c) from the rear of the head base. Finally, disconnect the connectors (A) from the PCB.

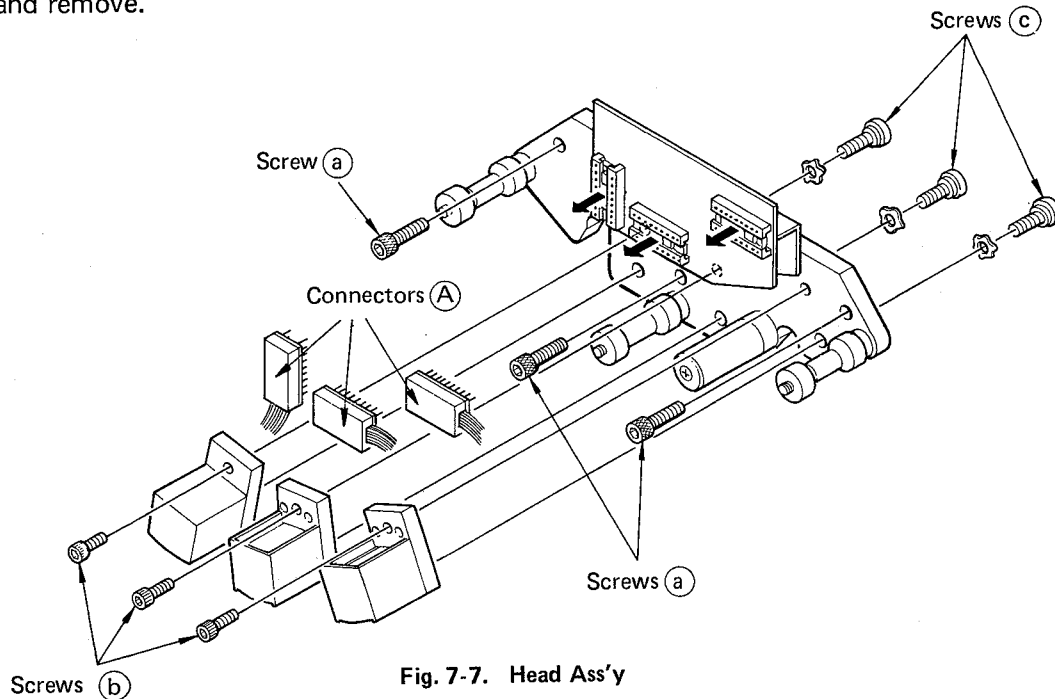


Fig. 7-7. Head Ass'y

7-4-3. Reel Motor

1. After removing the front panel as described in 7-4-1 (B), remove the PCB installation panel (D) ass'y by removing the six screws located beneath the control and fuse assemblies shown in Fig. 7-2.

2. Remove the reel table assembly and as shown in Fig. 7-8, remove the three screws holding the reel motor.
3. Finally, undo the wire running to the JOINT PCB with the use of a soldering iron.

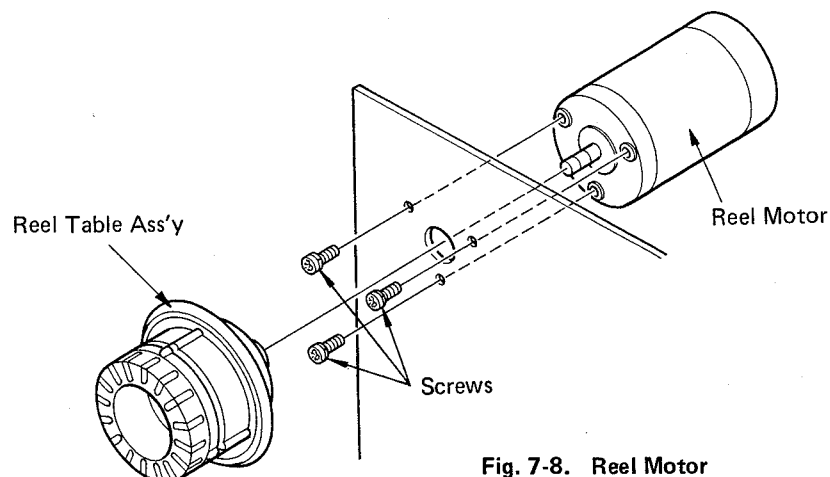


Fig. 7-8. Reel Motor

7-4-4. Capstan Motor Ass'y

1. As described in 7-4-1, remove the front panel (A) assembly, the dress panel (A) and both rear panels (A) and (B).
2. Remove the three screws (a) that are holding the motor section onto the capstan motor assembly as shown in Fig. 7-9. Next, remove the four screws (b) holding the PCB assembly and disconnect the connector to completely remove the capstan motor assembly.

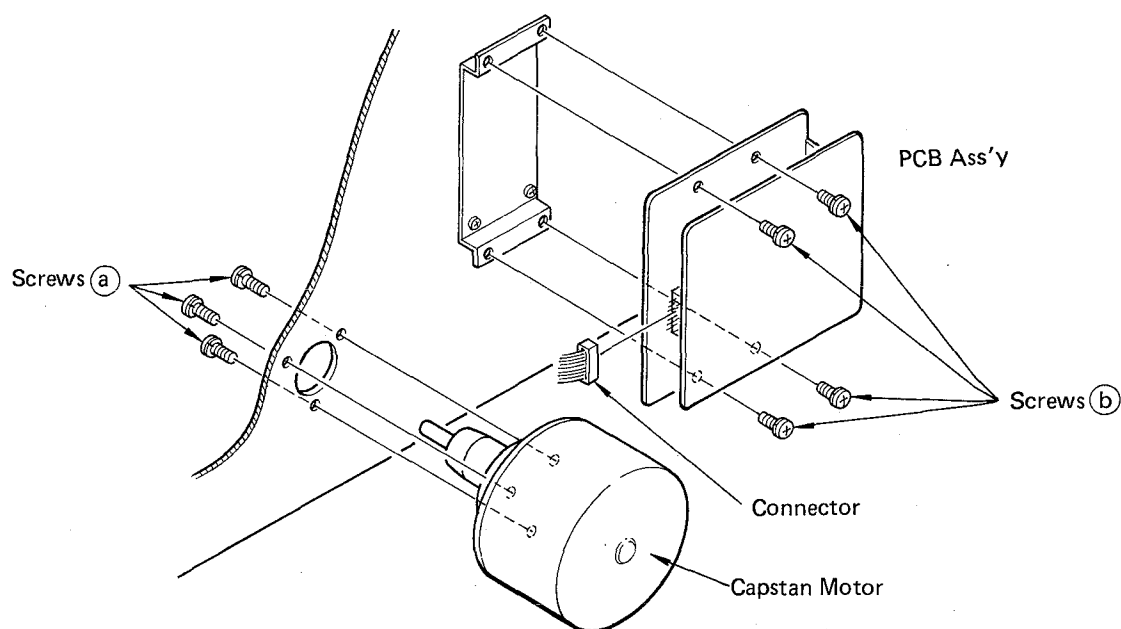


Fig. 7-9. Capstan Motor Ass'y

7-4-5. Fuses

All together seven fuses will be visibly noticeable when the rear panel (A) is removed as described in 7-4-1 (E).

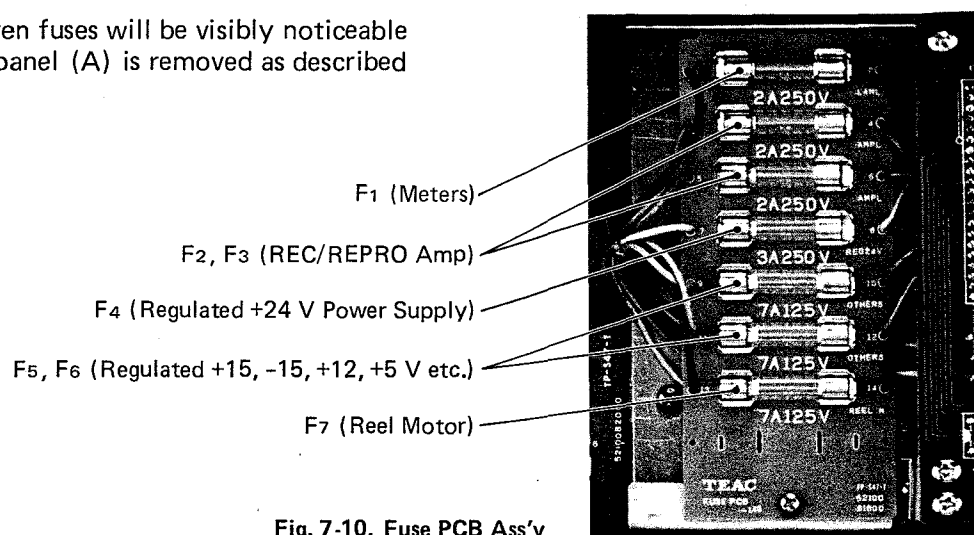


Fig. 7-10. Fuse PCB Ass'y

7-4-6. Meters

1. To remove the amplifier panel (A) assembly, remove the four retaining screws with a 3 mm Allen wrench and pull outwards.
2. Next remove the screws (a) from each side, and as shown in Fig. 7-11, pull the amplifier panel (A) assembly downwards.
3. Remove the six screws (b) from the upper and lower sides of the amplifier panel assembly (A) to remove the amplifier chassis that's holding the meters in place.

4. If necessity calls for replacement of the meters, use a soldering iron to disconnect the PCB from the meters.

To ensure that the LED is correctly attached to the PCB, temporarily mount the LED onto the PCB, and then attach the PCB to the meters before finally soldering the terminals of the LED to the PCB.

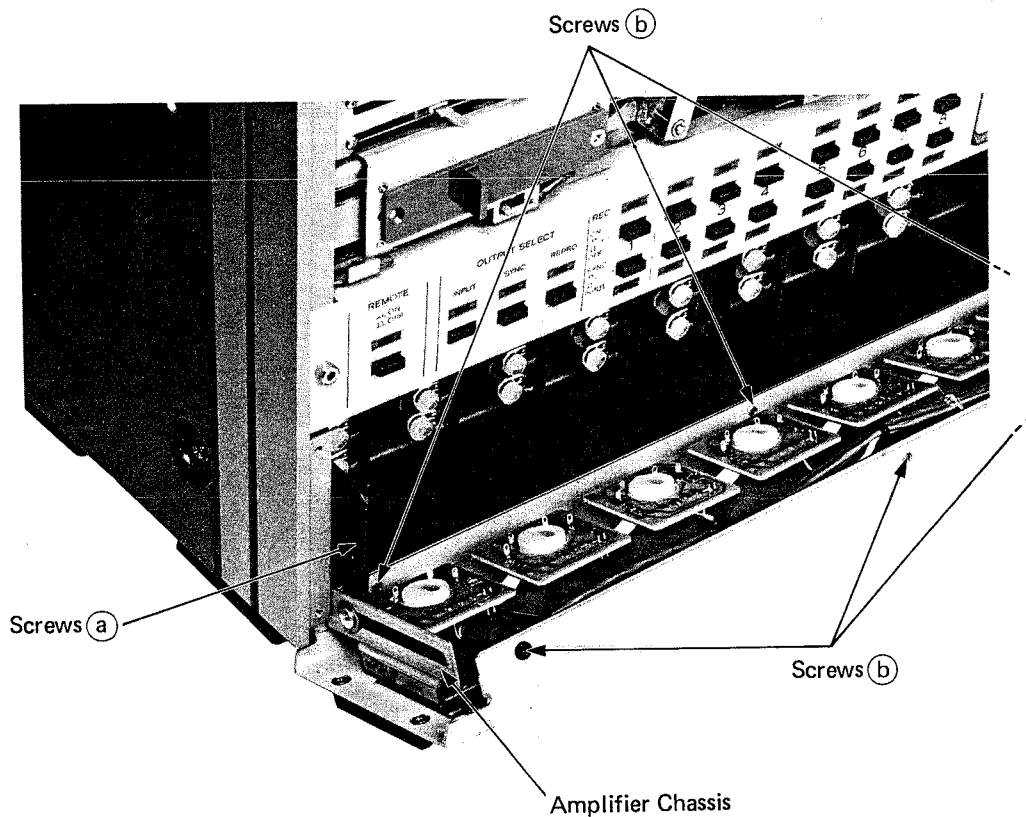


Fig. 7-11 VU Meters

7-5. TAPE TRANSPORT CHECKS AND ADJUSTMENTS

7-5-1. Brake Mechanism

Note: Be sure that the power is turned off prior to making any adjustments to the brakes.

1. Make sure that the tip (A) of the brake arm assembly does not come into contact with the upper and lower sides of the recessed part of the brake solenoid. If contact is noticeable, adjust the screws (a) of the hanger until tip (A) retains a centered position between the recessed part of the brake solenoid.

Note: Take care that the brake band is not twisted in any way when making this adjustment.

2. Manually operate the brake plunger to be sure that the brake band is separated from the brake drum. Then turn the left and right reels motors by hand and check that they move freely.

If the brake band is still making contact with the brake drum at this point, adjust the position of the brake solenoid by loosening the three screws (b)

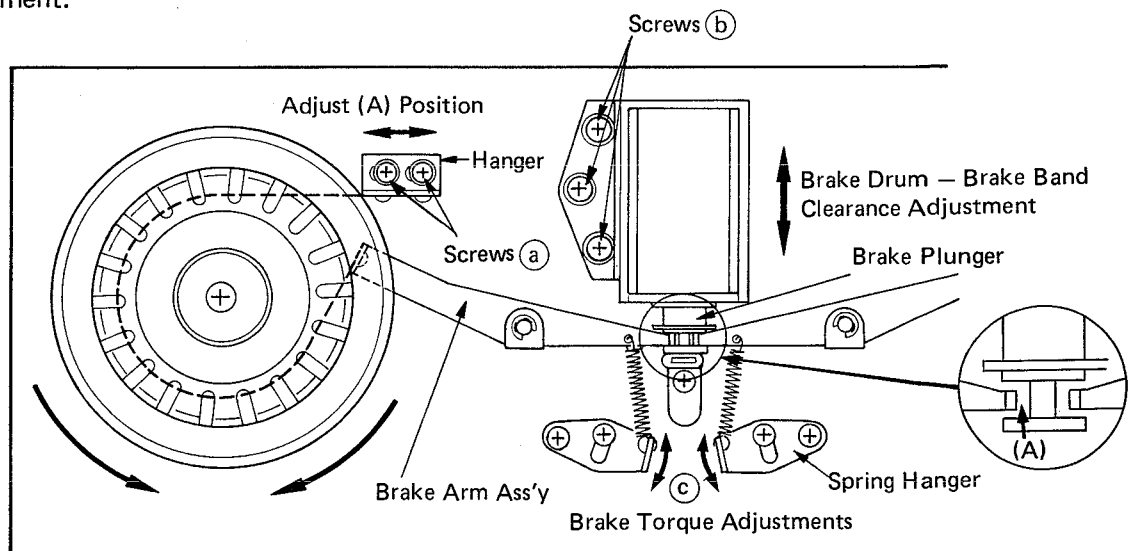


Fig. 7-12 Brake Mechanism Adjustments

7-5-2. Brake Torque

Note: Before making any brake adjustments or measurements, make sure the power is off.

1. Mount an empty 10-1/2" reel onto either reel table and attach a spring scale to the reel with a string. See Fig. 7-13.
2. Smoothly pull the scale away from the reel under test and note the torque value when the reading on the scale is steady. The proper torque values are given in the chart on the following page.
3. Follow steps 1 and 2 for each measuring condition; i.e., (D) through (A) in Fig. 7-13.
4. If the forward-direction torque is not correct, change the hooking position of the spring

hanger (reference (c) in Fig. 7-12) for the corresponding brake requiring adjustment, if, after the forward-direction torque has been properly adjusted, the reverse-direction torque is not correct, or the forward-direction torque is still not correct, replace the brake felt pad with a new one after cleaning the inner-side of the brake belt with an alcohol cleaning solution, and also check that the brake mechanism is properly aligned as explained in Section 7-5-1. "Brake Mechanism". If necessary, replace the entire reel table.

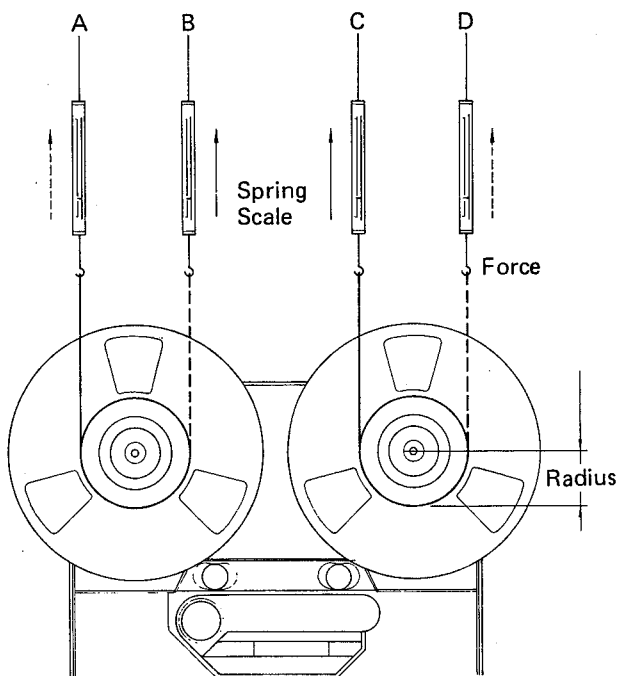


Fig. 7-13. Brake Torque Measurement

| | |
|--|---|
| Forward direction (B) (C) | 2300 – 2700 g-cm (31.9 – 37.0 oz-inch) |
| Reverse direction (A) (D) (Reference values) | 900 – 1000 g-cm (12.5 – 13.9 oz-inch) |
| Left/Right deviation | 200 g-cm (2.78 oz-inch) |

Table 7-1. Brake Torque Values

Torque calculating formulas:

1. Torque (in g-cm or oz-inch)
= Force or Weight (in g or oz) x Radius
(in cm or inch)
2. Conversion of g-cm to oz-inch:
 $\text{g-cm} \times 0.0139 = \text{oz-inch}$

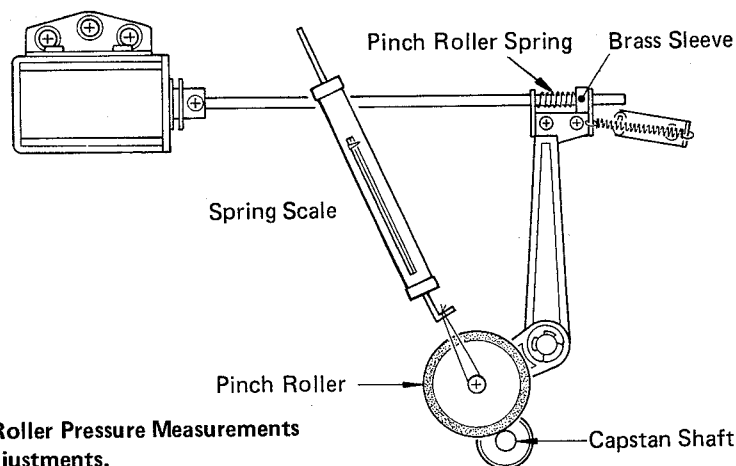


Fig. 7-15. Pinch Roller Pressure Measurements and Adjustments.

7-5-3. Pinch Roller Pressure

Note: Pinch roller pressure is supplied by the pinch roller spring arm, and it is most important that the solenoid plunger be fully bottomed before taking pressure measurements.

1. Insert something soft or foldable between the tension arm and the opening on the front panel (A) so that the unit will be operative.
2. Replace the screw attached to the top of the pinch roller with a slightly longer one and hook the string from the spring scale onto it.
3. Place the deck in the reproduce mode without threading the tape.
4. Pull the pinch roller away from the capstan shaft (on a plane intersecting the center of the capstan shaft and the pinch roller) until the capstan shaft and the pinch roller are separated.
5. Ease pressure on the scale until the pinch roller just begins to turn. The scale should then read 1.9 kg to 2.2 kg (4.19 lbs to 4.85 lbs).
6. If you don't get this reading on the scale, adjust the brass sleeve that is controlling the pressure of the pinch roller spring by loosening the Allen screw until proper reading is obtained.

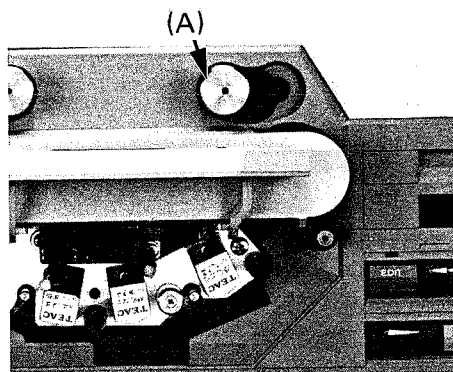


Fig. 7-14. Right Tension Arm

7-5-4. Tape Tension Servo and END Sensor

Tension Arm Positions and Detection Characteristics

The tape tension servo detects and controls the tape tension through either left or right tension sensor assemblies located under the front transport panel and each function exactly the same. The assembly includes an LED and a phototransistor with a light shield plate for the tension arm placed in between. The light shield plate varies the amount of light which strikes the

phototransistor, and thereby, the movement of the tension arm is detected.

Fig. 7-16 shows the tension arm positions and its relation with the sensor. Fig. 7-17 shows the relations between the angle of the tension arm and voltage at TP-1 and TP-2 which are also illustrated in Fig. 7-21.

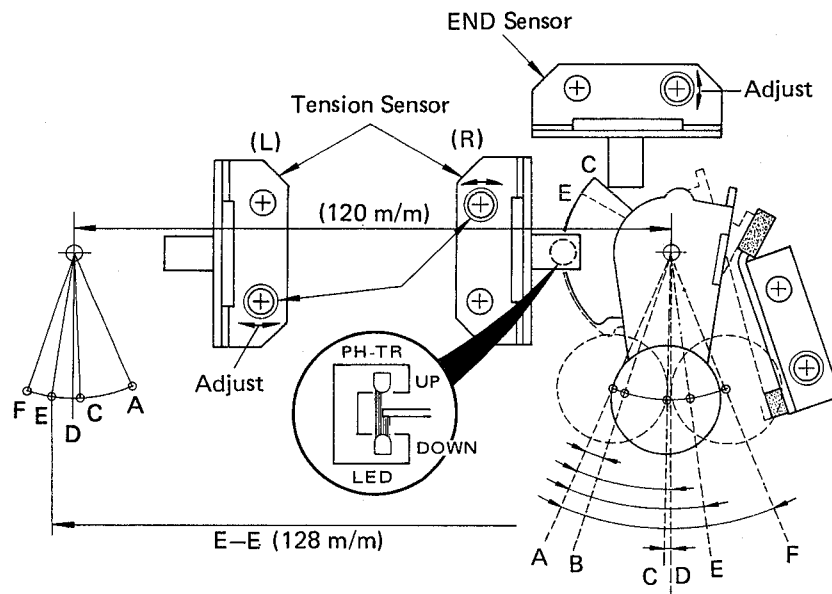


Fig. 7-16. Moving Position of Tension Arm Ass'y

- A – F: Variable range of the arm
- A – B: Detection range of END sensor
- C : Free position (position of the arm with the deck placed vertically and no spring attached)
- D : Vertical setting position (center of variable range)
- C – D: Position of supply arm (BT) in the F.F. mode
- E : Position of arm setting while in the play mode

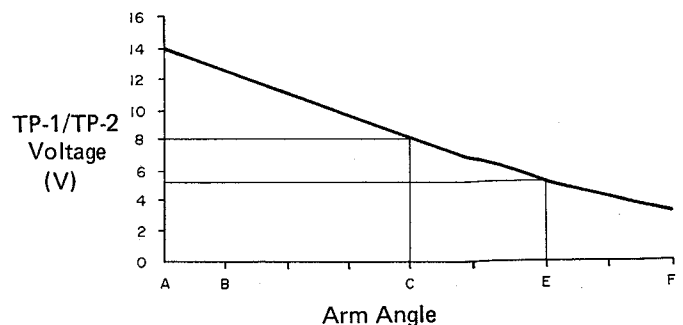


Fig. 7-17. Detection Characteristics of the Sensor

A. Position of the tension arms while in the reproduce mode.

1. Remove the front panel (A) assembly as described in 7-4-1 (B).
2. Thread a blank tape onto the deck and wind half of the tape onto the take-up reel so that there is an equal amount of tape on both reels. Then set the deck into the edit mode of operation.
3. With the deck in the edit mode, confirm that both tension arms are near the E position shown in Fig. 7-16 — about 30° from the free position C. The interval between both of the tension arms E points should be approximately 112 mm.

4. If adjustment of the interval is necessary, adjust by adjusting the trimmer resistor located on the upper part of the keyboard PCB assembly. Refer to Fig. 7-18.

R1: Right tension arm (Take up reel)

R4: Left tension arm (Supply reel)

B. Tape tension while in the reproduce mode.

If proper tension arm positions have been obtained as described in A, proceed with the tape tension measurements.

Thread a blank tape onto the deck in the same manner as described in A (2) and set the deck into the reproduce mode. Now, with the tape running, measure the tape tension at both the take-up side and supply reel side with a tension analyzer or a tentelo meter. The measurement should be made at both the supply side

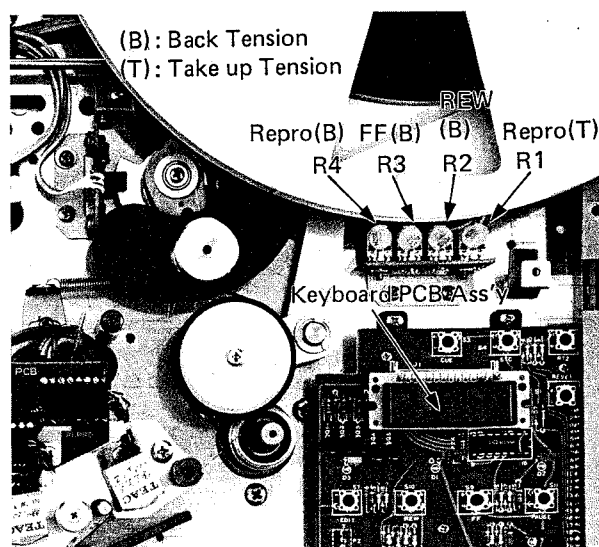


Fig. 7-18. Tension Adjustment Trimmer

and take-up side at points A and B as shown in Fig. 7-19.

The value to be obtained is 75 — 85 g. If you can't get this reading on your analyzer, adjust the tension strength of the spring by changing the position of the spring hook: (A) and (B).

Note: As 10-1/2" reels cover more area than 8" reels, we suggest that you use the smaller 8" reels to ensure sufficient working room to get at the A and B points with the tentelo meter probes.

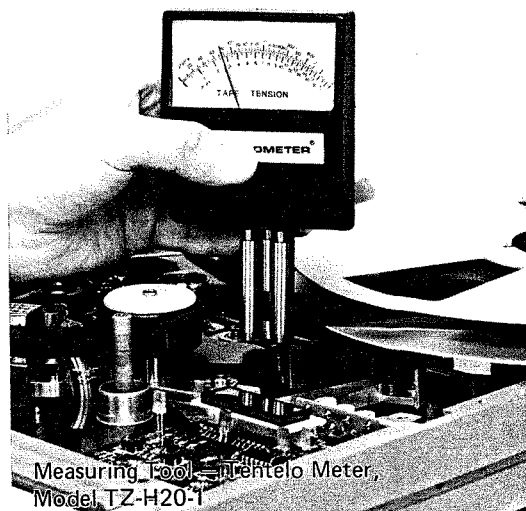
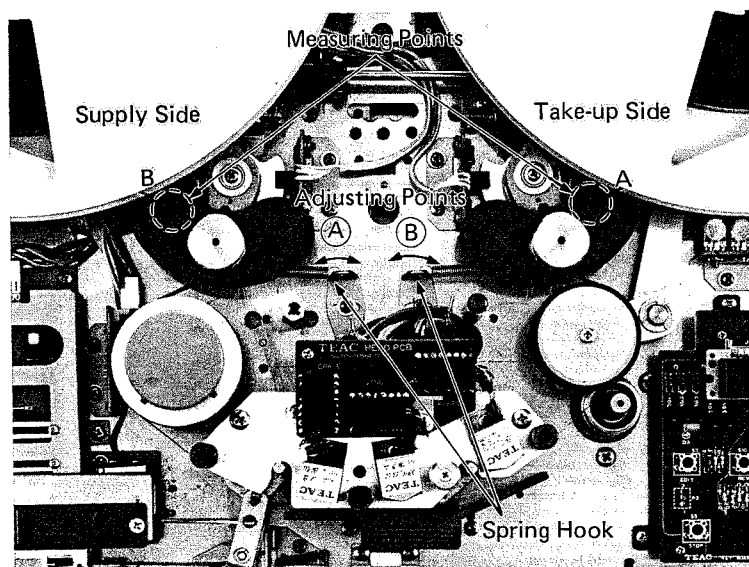


Fig. 7-19. Tape Tension Measurement and Adjustment Points

C. Tape tension while in the fast forward and rewind modes.

1. Thread a tape onto the deck and set it into the fast forward or rewind mode. Begin measuring at the point where the tape speed seems to be stabilizing; the tape becomes stable when the tension arm on the take-up side drops back after initially drawing the tape upwards. Adjust R2 (rewind mode) and R3 (fast forward mode) so that the tension arm on the supply side comes to the C position shown in Fig. 7-16. If a tentelo meter is used, the following specifications should be of help.

| | 1/2" Tape |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| Fast forward, left side | 60 g |
| Rewind, left side | 180 – 200 g |
| Fast forward, right side | 180 – 200 g |
| Rewind, right side | 60 g |

Setting the deck into the spooling mode will facilitate measurements when a tentelo meter is used.

R2: Rewind mode (point B)

R3: Fast forward mode (point A)

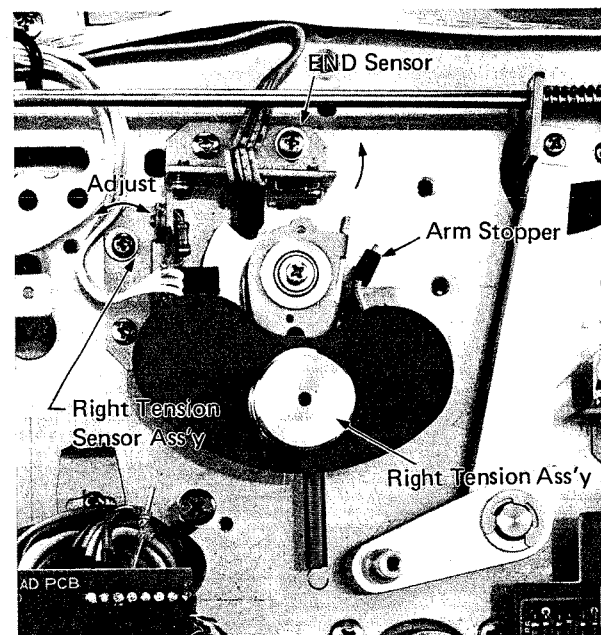


Fig. 7-20. Adjustment Positions of the Right Tension Sensor Ass'y

D. Adjustment and re-installation of the tension sensor assembly.

1. First loosen the adjustment screw on the end sensor assembly, lift the assembly upwards and temporarily secure; this will disable the end sensor.

2. Stand the deck up and remove the left and right tension springs. After which, set the deck into the edit mode without threading a tape.
3. Connect a DC voltmeter between TP-1, TP-2 and ground located on the control PCB on the rear of the deck. TP-2 can be identified by its location on the right tension arm side, while TP-1 will be located on the left tension arm side. Refer to Fig. 7-21.
4. Loosen the adjustment screw on the sensor assembly, and slide the sensor to the right and left until the voltage at TP-1 and TP-2 becomes 8 V \pm 0.3 V. When this value is obtained, go ahead and tighten the adjustment screw. Refer to Fig. 7-20 and 7-21.

After the adjustment screw has been tightened, slide the two tension arms to the right and left a few times to check that the DC meter shows a linear reading of about 3 V – 14 V.

5. After these adjustments have been completed, re-attach the left and right tension springs.

CAUTION: Be extra careful when making these adjustments because the reel motor will be rotating at maximum torque while the deck is in the edit mode.

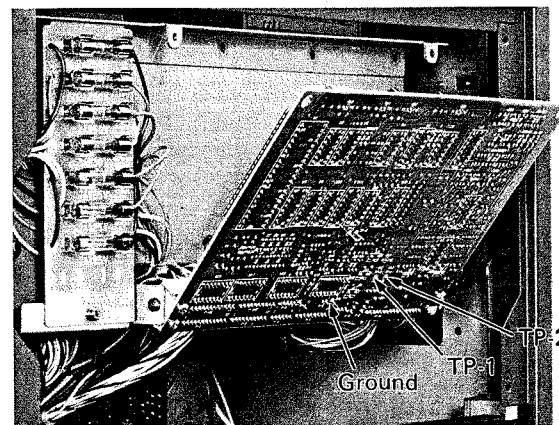


Fig. 7-21. Control PCB Ass'y

E. Adjustment and re-installation of the end sensor assembly.

1. As described in D (1), leave the sensor assembly raised to disable the end sensor function.
2. Put something of approximately 1.5 mm in thickness between the arm stopper and the right tension arm, that's point A in Fig. 7-22. Then go ahead and set the deck into the edit mode without loading a tape.
3. Gradually move the end sensor assembly downwards, and tighten the adjustment screw at the point where the end sensor is activated.

7-7-5. Reel Panel Height

Reel height adjustment is required only if a motor has been replaced or if tape rubs excessively against the reel flanges.

Adjustment is accomplished by loosening the reel set screws and moving the reel table on the motor shaft, shown in Fig. 7-23.

Remove the front panel (A) assembly for access to the set screws in the reel motor shaft. Refer to 7-4-1 (B). The reel table should be adjusted using standard NAB 10-1/2" reels. With a tape located on the machine, position the reel table height for smooth tape travel. Be sure to tighten the set screws after each adjustment is made.

7-5-6. Tape Speed

Tape speed is measured by using Flutter Test Tape, which contains a highly accurate, continuous 3 kHz tone.

1. Connect a digital frequency counter to either OUTPUT.
2. The indicated frequency should be 3 kHz, \pm 0.5 % for all speeds.
3. Play the middle of the test tape and adjust the high speed trimmer resistor found near the brake solenoid after opening the front panel (A) assembly until the frequency counter indicates a reading of 3,000 Hz. The right two trimmer resistors are not used. See Fig. 7-24. (CAUTION: Use an insulated screwdriver to prevent shorting).
4. Playing the tape at both the beginning and the end, check that the tape speed does not vary any more than the limits prescribed in the specifications so that there will never be a total deviation of more than \pm 0.5 Hz from the 3000 Hz test tone.
5. If tape speed has greatly diverged from specification, check pinch roller pressure and take-up tension for correct values, and check to see that the tape path is clean.

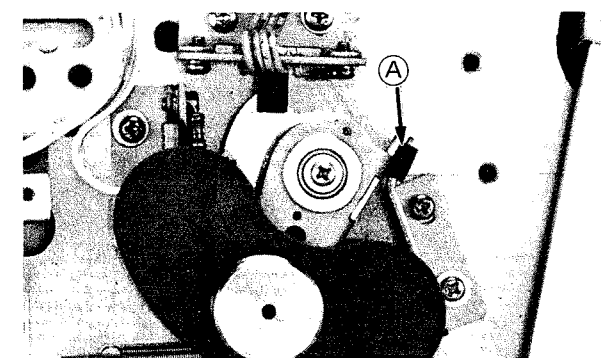


Fig. 7-22. Adjustment Position of the End Sensor Ass'y

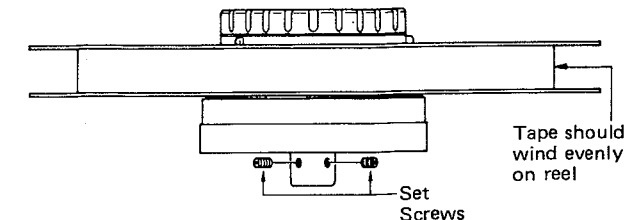


Fig. 7-23. Height of Reel Panel

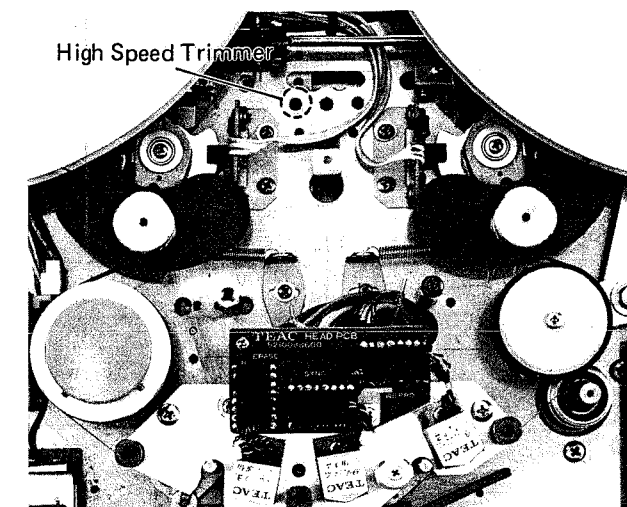


Fig. 7-24. Tape Speed Adjustment Trimmer

7-5-7. Wow and Flutter (Reproduce Method)

1. Connect a Wow and Flutter Meter to the OUTPUT jack on the deck.

These meters will measure the DIN/IEC/ANSI peak value or the NAB rms value, depending on the switch selection on the meter.

2. Playback the appropriate Wow and Flutter Test Tape.

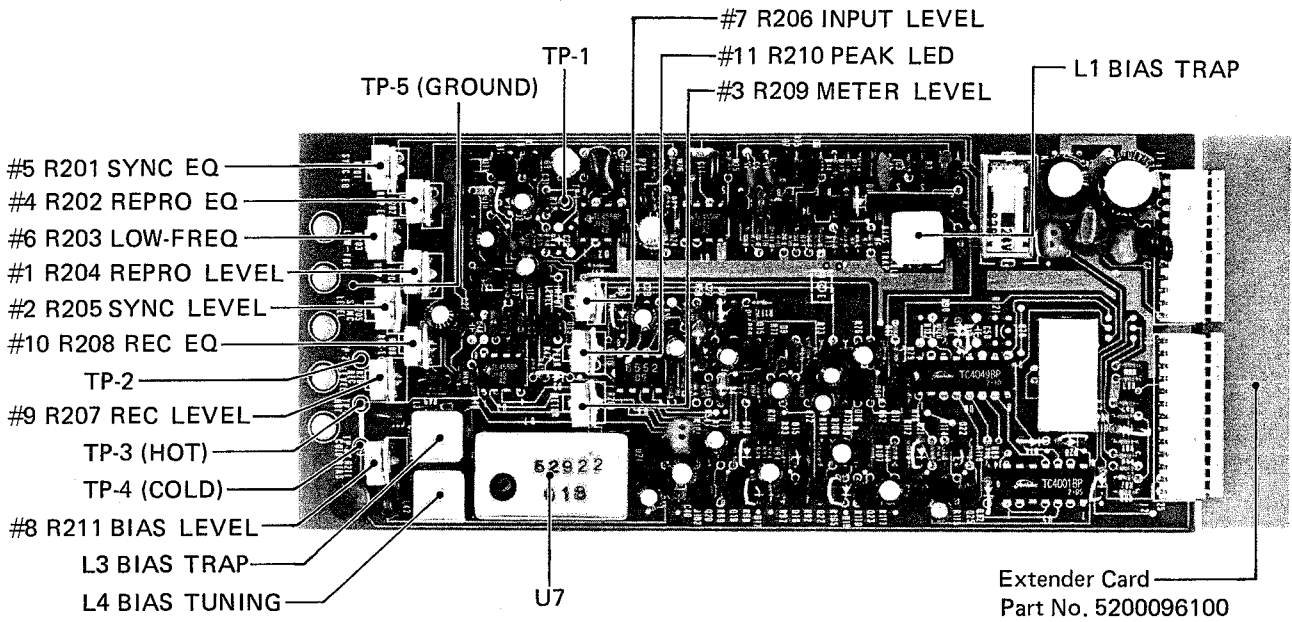
3. If the peak or rms weighted value is to be read, set the Wow and Flutter Meter for the "Weighted" readings, and also make sure that the meter is properly calibrated.

4. As the measured results may vary with respect to the location on the tape at which the measurement is taken, at least two locations – at the beginning and near the end of the tape – should be checked. There may also be slight differences in absolute values measured, depending on the brand of the meter being used.

Values should be as shown:

| DIN/IEC/ANSI (peak value) | | NAB (rms value) | |
|---------------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| Weighted | Unweighted | Weighted | Unweighted |
| \pm 0.08 % | \pm 0.12 % | 0.04 % | 0.07 % |

7-6. RECORD/REPRODUCE AMPLIFIER
CHECKS AND ADJUSTMENTS



Record/Reproduce Amplifier Adjustment Positions

| TRIM POT NUMBER | REFERENCE NUMBER | | FUNCTION |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| #1 | R204 | 5 k ohms | REPRO LEVEL |
| 2 | R205 | 5 k ohms | SYNC LEVEL |
| 3 | R209 | 50 k | METER LEVEL |
| 4 | R202 | 2 k | REPRO EQ (HIGH-FREQ) |
| 5 | R201 | 20 k ohms | SYNC EQ (HIGH-FREQ) |
| 6 | R203 | 50 k ohms | REPRO, SYNC EQ (LOW-FREQ) |
| 7 | R206 | 2 k ohms | INPUT LEVEL |
| 8 | R211 | 100 k ohms | BIAS LEVEL |
| 9 | R207 | 5 k ohms | REC LEVEL |
| 10 | R208 | 5 k ohms | REC EQ |
| 11 | R210 | 50 k ohms | PEAK LED |
| — | L1 | | REPRO BIAS TRAP |
| — | L3 | | RECORD BIAS TRAP |
| — | L4 | | BIAS TUNING |

Table 7-1. Reference and Function Table

7-6-1. Before Making any Checks or Adjustments

This section contains the general descriptions and cautions required for these kinds of checks and adjustments.

Before going ahead with any of the electrical performance checks or adjustments, make sure the tape transport mechanism has been completely aligned as mentioned in the preceeding section, or at least make sure that the tape path and head contact are aligned correctly as mentioned below.

A. Tape path

1. Load a tape and set the unit into the reproduce mode. Then adjust the height of the tape guide so that the tape will be traveling along the center of the three heads (ERASE, RECORD/SYNC, and REPRO).
2. The tape guide and tension roller can be adjusted by first loosening the lock screw located in the center of the upper part of both the tape guide and tension roller, and

then turning the whole upper part with your fingers. A counterclockwise rotation will raise the guide and a clockwise rotation will lower the height of the guide. When proper height has been obtained, see that the lock screw is tightened again.

3. If the tape guide height is properly set, the lower edge of the tape should be just touching the lower edge of the tape guides ① and ③. As far as the upper portions are concerned, the upper edge of the tape should be just touching the upper edge of the tape guide ②. If you have problems making the adjustments in this order, you may reverse the contact positions of the edges and start over. If the height of the tension roller is properly set, the tape will be found traveling along the center of the contact head. If adjustment is required, adjust as described in A (2) earlier.

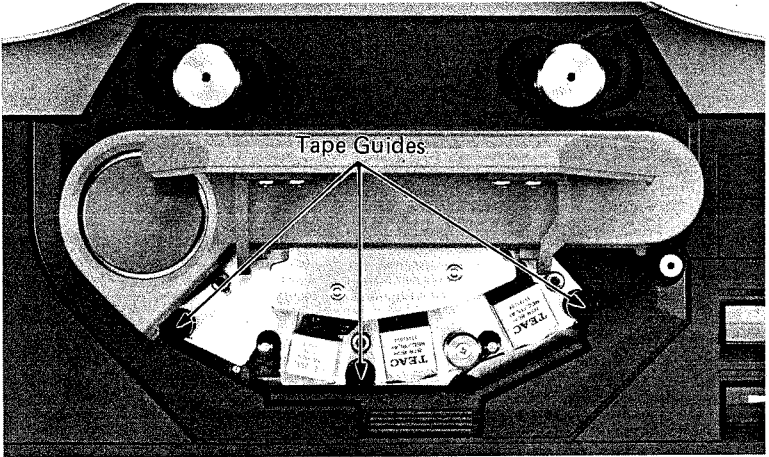


Fig. 7-25. Tape Guide Adjustment Points

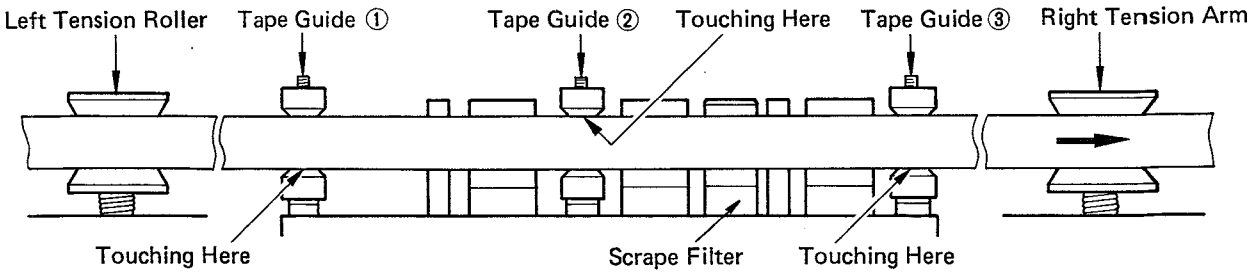


Fig. 7-26. Correct Tape Travel

4. With the deck in the reproduce mode, set the tape into motion and check that the tape is traveling along the center of the head with no fluctuation in position. While you are at it, check that there is no curling of the tape at the guides or rollers.
If you are not 100 % satisfied with the results, repeat the adjustments of the guides, etc. again.

B. Head contact

Contact of the record/sync heads and the repro head is properly aligned by following the below methods.

1. Set the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO or SYNC and load a TEAC YTT-1144SP test tape, or a prerecorded tape with a constant level tone and reproduce.
2. While observing the VU meters, temporarily increase the back tension to the left reel by lightly applying pressure by hand. If sufficient contact pressure is applied to the head while the tape is running, no change will be noticed on the meter when the back tension is increased. However, if insufficient pressure is applied to the head, the deflection needle will show increased deflection due to contact pressure caused by the back tension. This method will help determine whether head contact is properly adjusted or not. To adjust, loosen the retaining screw (A), that'll be the center screw at the rear of the head as shown in Fig. 7-27. Then, change the direction of the head for proper alignment.

Note: The amount of pressure to be applied to the reel is very important; too strong of pressure lowers the speed of the tape, while too light of pressure does not ensure contact. However, by practicing a few times, you will be able to judge approximate pressure to be applied.

3. With the test tape signal at 16 kHz, determine the point where maximum level of each channel is obtained and retighten the retaining screws (A) at that position.
4. For proper head contact, adjust the record/sync reproduce heads as necessary.

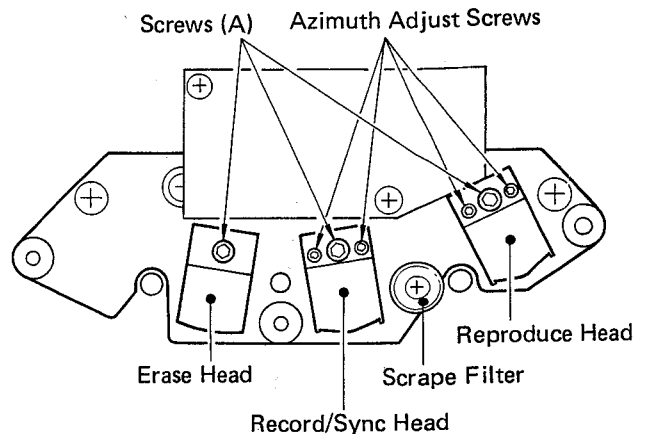


Fig. 7-27. Head Adjustment Screws

C. Head azimuth adjustment

1. Connect the OUTPUT jack for channel 2 of the deck to the vertical input terminals of an oscilloscope.
2. Connect the OUTPUT jack for channel 7 of the deck to the horizontal input terminals of the oscilloscope.
3. Connect an AF level meter to the OUTPUT jack(s) as shown in Fig. 7-28.
4. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.
5. Load the reproduce alignment test tape to reproduce. Then, a scope display reading showing phase relations between both channels will be obtained as shown in Fig. 7-29.
6. Adjust the repro head azimuth screw until the scope display shows less than 90 degree at 10 kHz out of phase with the AF level meter showing approximately maximum value for both channels.
7. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC, and adjust the record/sync head azimuth screw the same way.

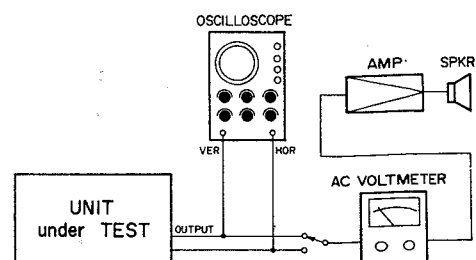


Fig. 7-28. Head Azimuth Test Set-Up

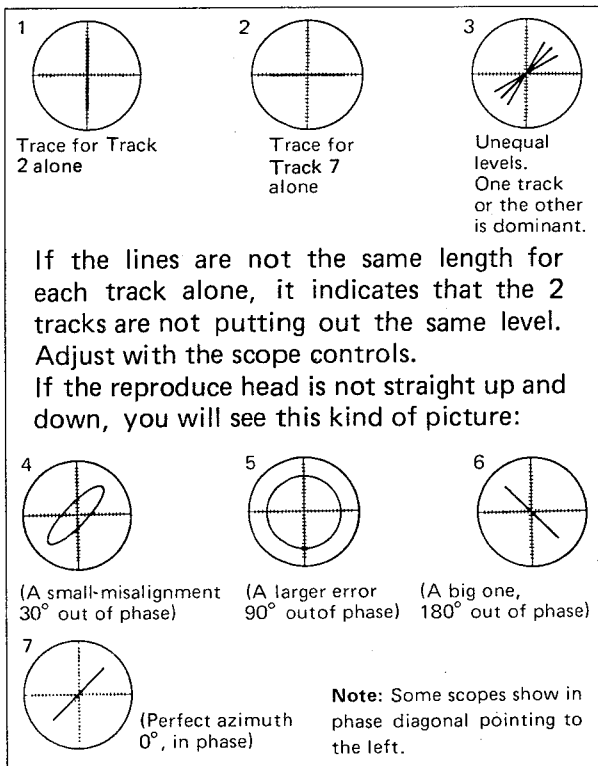


Fig. 7-29. Phase Shift

D.Others

- * To get at the trim pots for record/reproduce amplifier circuit adjustments, open the service door by removing the two set screws, one on each side of the front door. (Refer to Fig. 7-30) With the cover removed, you will see the amplifier boards to which the trim pots are mounted as shown in the photograph. The boards are identical, and are exclusively used for their respective channels. (The rightmost PCB is the Master Osc. PCB Ass'y.)
- * Record/reproduce amplifier checks and adjustments are given for only one of the channels, but they should be applied for all the other channels as well.
- * Line Output Load Impedance of the Deck:
This deck has been preadjusted and set for a 50 k ohm load. When switched from this adjustment, for example, to a 10k ohm load, the output level results in a 0.5 dB reduction. When connecting less than a 50k ohm load, readjust the deck to match the applied load.

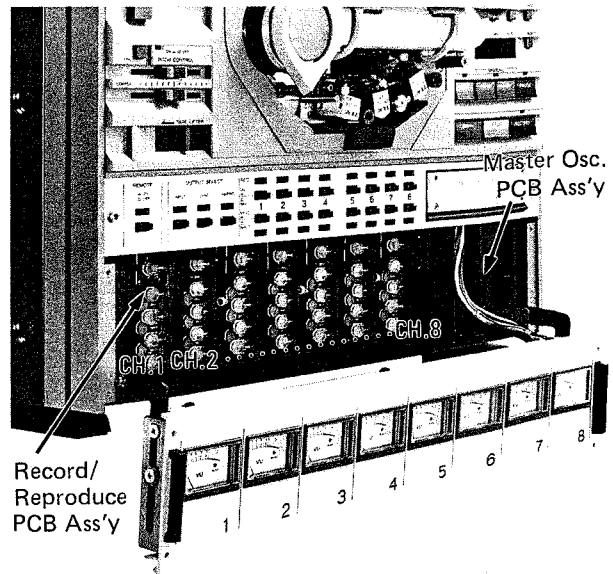


Fig. 7-30. Opening the Front Panel of the Amplifier Section

- * 0 dB = 1 V
- * Measurements are performed with the RE-MOTE switch off. The power should always be off when inserting or removing the record/reproduce amplifier PCB assembly.
- * To simplify record/reproduce amplifier PCB assembly identification, mark the corresponding channel number on the silk-screen on the foil side of the PCB with a magic marker, or equivalent.

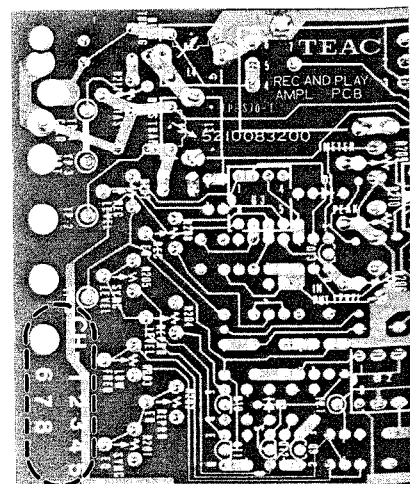


Fig. 7-31. Channel Identification

7-6-2. Input Level Calibration

1. Connect the test equipment to INPUT 1 and OUTPUT 1, as shown in Fig. 7-32, and connect a 50 ohm load.
2. Apply a 1 kHz, -10 dB (0.3 V) test signal to the INPUT 1 jack on the rear panel, and switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to INPUT.
3. Make sure the AF level meter reads -10 dB (0.3 V) output. If it doesn't, adjust the R206, 2 k ohm trim pot on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
4. Adjust the remaining 7 channels in the same way.

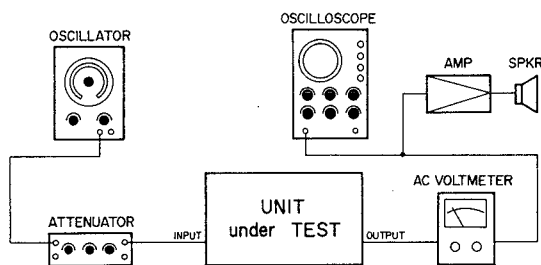


Fig. 7-32. Level or Frequency Response Measurement Set-up

7-6-3. Meter

1. Make sure that the meter indicates 0 VU after completion of the above steps 2-3, or after setting the input level to read -10 dB output. If the meter does not indicate 0 VU, adjust R209, 50 k ohms on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
2. Check and adjust all channels in the same way.

7-6-4. Peak LED

1. With the conditions the same as described in 7-6-2, adjust R-210, 50 k ohms so that the peak LED lights when the input level is raised 12 dB (input voltage +2 dBV) and turns off when reduced 0.5 dB (+1.5 dBV).
2. Check and adjust all channels in the same way.

7-6-5. Reproduce Level Calibration

1. Connect the AF level meter, oscilloscope to the OUTPUT 1 jack on the rear panel.
2. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.
3. Load the reproduce alignment test tape and reproduce. Observe the AF level meter, it should indicate -10 dB, if not, adjust trim pot R204, 5 k ohms on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
4. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and reproduce the same tape. Check the AF level meter, it should read -10 dB. If not, adjust trim pot R205, 5 k ohms on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
5. Check and adjust all channels in the same way.

7-6-6. Reproduce Frequency Response

After the level of all eight channels have been set, rethread the test tape.

1. When making checks and adjustments of the reproduce frequency response, you will find that its easier to cneck all eight channels at the same time by using the VU meters on the front panel, instead of checking them one at a time, and having to use an AC voltmeter and go through the trouble of plugging it into each OUTPUT pin jack to do the check. To do this though, 7-6-3 must be completed first.
2. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.
3. Reproduce the test tape and take a reading of the output levels at the specified frequencies shown in Fig. 7-33. They should be with in the specified limits shown below. If they aren't, adjust trim pot R202, 2 k ohms on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB so that the high range 18 kHz signal provides the same level reading as the 1 kHz signal.

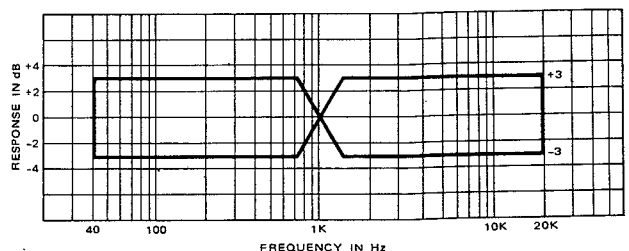


Fig. 7-33. Reproduce Frequency Response

4. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and set the REC function switch to OFF.
5. Reproduce the same tape and also read the output levels the same way to learn whether the frequency response is within the specified limit. If the frequency response is not within the specified limit, adjust trim pot R201, 2 k ohms in the same way.
6. If the specified frequency response cannot be obtained with the trim pot(s) adjusted;
 - * Check and compare the measurements of the other channels. Adjust so that the level differences between channels is within 3 dB at the frequency range of 31.5 Hz – 20 kHz.
 - * If all channels are off spec, check power line, incorrect head adjustments or whether heads should be cleaned.
 - * Demagnetize the heads.
 - * Finally, if all else fails, replace the heads.

7-6-7. Bias Tuning and Bias Trap Adjustments

These adjustments have been made at the factory and realignment will not be necessary except for the following circumstances:

- * When the sync head, erase head and/or bias amplifier is replaced.
- * When the MASTER BIAS PCB card or MASTER BIAS unit is replaced.

Use the following procedures to adjust.

Note

- * Be sure to use a non-conductive screwdriver (i.e. wood, plastic).
- * For bias level measurements, use an AC level meter of which input terminal has a floating capacitance of 100 pF or lower.

A. BIAS TUNING (L4)

1. Place all channel REC function switches to ON and set the tape deck into the record-reproduce mode.
2. Connect a DC voltmeter between TP-3 (Hot) and TP-4 (Cold). By using an insulated screwdriver, adjust L4 so that a minimum reading is obtained on the DC meter. The minimum reading should be approximately 0.35 V if the bias level trim pot R211 is correctly set to the 3 o'clock position. The voltage at pin 5 of IC U7 of the master bias oscillator should be AC 70 V \pm 5 V.

An extender card is required for the adjustment of the bias tuning coil L4. Pull out the PCB assembly of the channel that's to be adjusted and insert the extender card.

Extender Card: TEAC part No. 5200096100

CAUTION: Do not try to obtain maximum reading on the DC voltmeter. This could occasion an extreme amount of bias amplifier output load.

B. BIAS TRAP (L3, L1)

1. Connect an AC level meter between TP-2, TP-5 and ground.
2. Place all the REC function switches to ON and set the deck into the record-reproduce mode.
3. Adjust L3 so that a minimum reading is obtained on the level meter.
4. Connect an oscilloscope to the OUTPUT jacks.
5. Set the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.
6. With the deck set in the record-reproduce mode, check the amount of bias signal leaking into the reproduce amplifier.
7. Adjust trim conductor L1 so that the amount of bias leakage is minimized.

7-6-8. Bias Level

This adjustment is made while you are recording a tone on the type of tape you'll be using for the session. It will be different for each brand of tape. Before proceeding with this adjustment, make sure that the tape path and head contact have been adjusted correctly as mentioned earlier and that no tape curling is noticed.

1. Connect an AF oscillator, oscilloscope, AF level meter to the tape deck as shown in Fig. 7-32.
2. Adjust the AF oscillator to apply a 10 kHz, -10 dB (0.3 V, 0 VU) signal to INPUT 1 jack on the rear panel.
3. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO and set all REC function switches to ON.
4. Begin recording channel 1. Now adjustments can be made while recording a 10 kHz tone.

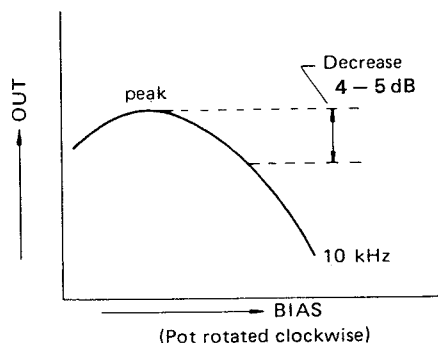


Fig. 7-34. Bias Level Adjustment

5. Begin the adjustments by turning trim pot R211, 100 k ohms completely counterclockwise. Next, turn the trim pot itself clockwise and the AF level meter will rise to give peak reading. Slowly continue the clockwise rotation until the reading on the level meter drops 4 – 5 dB from the peak reading as shown in Fig. 7-34.
6. Repeat the same procedures on the remaining 7 channels.

7-6-9. Recording Level

Recording level adjustments should be done only after the reproduce level and recording bias have been properly set as specified above.

1. Connect an AF oscillator, oscilloscope, AF level meter and a 50 k ohm load to the tape deck as shown in Fig. 7-32.
2. Apply a 1 kHz, -10 dB (0.3 V) signal to the INPUT 1 jack.
3. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO and record the 1 kHz input signal on the specified recording test tape.
4. Check the AF level meter, it should indicate -10 dB (0.3 V). If it doesn't, adjust trim pot R207, 5 k ohms to obtain the -10 dB indication. At this time, make sure that the front panel VU meter indicates 0 VU.
5. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and record the 1 kHz input signal for a brief period of time. Then, rewind the tape just recorded and reproduce it. Make sure that both the AF level meter and the VU meter indicate -10 dB and 0 VU, respectively.
6. If it's impossible to obtain a VU meter reading of 0 VU in steps 4 and 5 above, check to see whether the reproduce meter is set properly as described under 7-6-3. "Meter".
7. Check and adjust the remaining 7 channels in the same way.

7-6-10. Frequency Response (OVERALL)

After completing the recording level check and adjustments, proceed onto the overall frequency response checks.

1. Connect the test equipment to the tape deck as shown in Fig. 7-32 and load a blank test tape onto the tape deck.
2. Apply a -10 dB test signal to the INPUT jack on the rear panel.

3. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO and record the test signal with the frequency varied from 40 Hz to 20 kHz. Read the reproduced output levels at the proper test frequencies during recording. Make sure the frequency response obtained is within the specified limit shown in Fig. 7-35.
4. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and record the test signals the same as before. When the recording is finished, rewind the tape just recorded and reproduce it. Measure the reproduced output levels at the proper test frequencies, and make sure that the frequency response is within the specified limit shown.
5. If the frequency response reading is not within the specified limit, adjust the high frequency range through trim pot R208, 5 k ohms, or readjust the bias level setting within its specified range by referring to 7-6-8 "Bias Level". When the frequency response in the lower frequency spectrum is not within the specified limits, adjust trim pot R203, 50 k ohms. If the bias level is readjusted, the recording level adjustment will be upset, so repeat the recording level adjustments again as described in 7-6-9 "Recording Level".

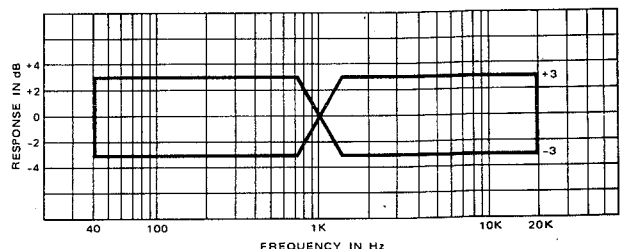


Fig. 7-35. Overall Frequency Response

7-6-11. Signal-to-Noise Ratio (OVERALL)

Before going ahead with any measurements, demagnetize all heads and tape guides.

1. Connect test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-32.
2. Apply a 1 kHz -10 dB (0.3 V = 0 VU) input signal to the INPUT 1 jack on the rear panel.
3. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and record a short length of the input signal. Then, while still in the recording mode, unplug the AF oscillator connected to the INPUT 1 jack, and make another length of no-signal recording.

4. Rewind the recording made in step 3 to the beginning and reproduce.
5. While making sure the reproduce output of the perviously recorded 1 kHz 0 VU signal is -10 dB, raise the sensitivity of the AF level meter and measure the level of the no-signal portion of the tape.
6. With -10 dB (0 VU) as the reference level, the signal-to-noise ratio, as measured by the AF level meter, should be better than 50 dB.
7. If it is off spec,
 - * Check and compare the measurement of the other channels. If they stand up to spec, correct or replace the off spec channel record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
 - * Demagnetize the heads.
 - * Check erasure, refer to 7-6-12.
 - * Check for proper adjustment of the bias trap.
 - * Try another tape of the same type number.

Test point TP-1, located on the record/reproduce amplifier PCB, is an output terminal reserved for performing checks when noise is generated. Voltage at this terminal is DC 5 mV, or lower when offset.

7-6-12. Erase Ratio

1. Connect test equipment to the tape deck as shown in Fig. 7-36.
2. Use a 1 kHz bandpass filter to check the erasing ratio.
3. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC and record a short length of the 1 kHz, 0 dB (1 V) signal and unplug the AF oscillator connected to the INPUT jack on the rear panel.
4. Rewind the tape to the beginning of the recorded section.
5. Record a no-signal portion over the recording of the 1 kHz signal.
6. Measure the difference between the 1 kHz signal level and the no-signal portion. The difference should be at least 70 dB.
7. If the level difference is below this specification, check erase head output voltage for 65 – 75 V using an AC voltmeter. If necessary, adjust the erase head position by loosening the screw located behind the erase head.

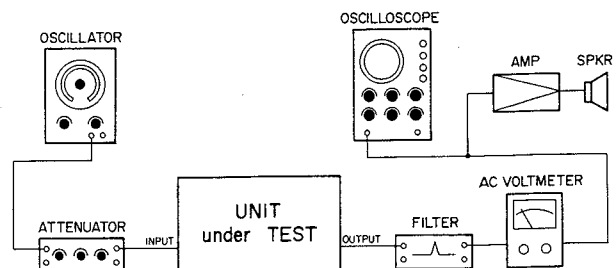


Fig. 7-36. Erase Ratio Test Set-Up

7-6-13. Adjacent Channel Crosstalk

1. Connect test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-37.
2. While making a no-signal recordings on one of the channels, apply a 1 kHz -10 dB (0.3 V) test signal to the adjacent channel.
3. Rewind the tape to the beginning of the recording.
4. Reproduce the tape with the OUTPUT SELECT switch set to SYNC, after which, measure the output (signal leakage) of the no-signal recorded channel.
5. Measure the difference between the 1 kHz nominal output level and the no signal portion. The difference should be 50 dB or greater.

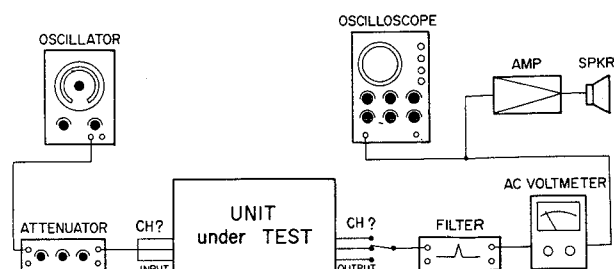


Fig. 7-37. Crosstalk Measurement Set-Up

7-6-14. Distortion

1. Connect test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-38.
2. Switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to REPRO.

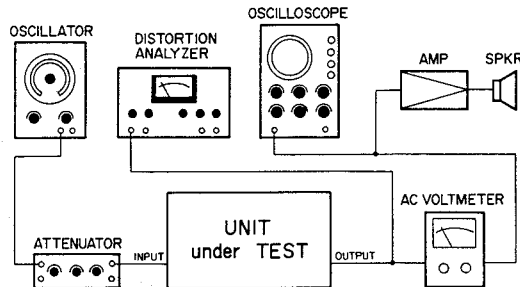


Fig. 7-38. Distortion Measurement Set-Up

3. Apply a 1 kHz, -10 dB (0.3 V) test signal to the INPUT jack and reproduce. Measure the distortion of the reproduced output with a distortion analyzer connected to the OUTPUT jack.
4. Stop the recording and switch the OUTPUT SELECT switch to SYNC.
5. Rewind the tape to its beginning and reproduce. Measure the distortion of the reproduced output.
6. The distortion measured should be less than 0.8 % for a -10 dB recording.
7. If the distortion is off spec;
 - * Check and compare the measurements of the other channels. If they are off spec, correct or replace the off spec channel record/reproduce amplifier PCB.
 - * Check bias level setting and readjust if necessary.
 - * Demagnetize the heads.
 - * Replace the heads.

8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS

NOTES

- ★ Parts marked with ★ require longer delivery time.
- ★ All resistors are 1/4 watts, 5 %, unless marked otherwise. Resistor values are in ohms (K=1,000-ohms, M=1,000,000 ohms).
- ★ All capacitor values are in microfarads (p=pico-farads).
- ★ Δ Parts marked with this sign are safety critical components. They must always be replaced with identical components — refer to the TEAC Parts List and ensure exact replacement.
- ★ 0 dB is referenced to 1 V in this manual unless otherwise specified.
- ★ PC boards shown viewed from electro-parts side.

Effective: August, 1982

INDEX

8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS

8-1. MECHANICS — EXPLODED VIEWS AND PARTS LISTS

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 8-1-1. Exploded View—1 (58 Overall) | 8 - 2 |
| 8-1-2. Exploded View—2 (Transport Unit, Front Section) | 8 - 4 |
| 8-1-3. Exploded View—3 (Transport Unit, Rear Section) | 8 - 7 |
| 8-1-4. Exploded View—4 (Function, Amplifier Section) | 8 - 10 |
| (Optional Equipment) | |
| 8-1-5. Remote Control Unit, RC-50 | (Under Preparation) 8 - |
| 8-1-6. Remote Control Unit, RC-51 | (Under Preparation) 8 - |

8-2. ELECTRONICS — PCB'S AND ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 8-2-1. Control PCB Ass'y | 8 - 12, - 16 |
| 8-2-2. Keyboard PCB Ass'y, Tension Sensor PCB Ass'y, Speed PCB Ass'y, End Sensor PCB Ass'y and VR PCB Ass'y | 8 - 14 |
| 8-2-3. Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y | 8 - 18 |
| 8-2-4. Mother PCB Ass'y, Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y | 8 - 22 |
| 8-2-5. Function A PCB Ass'y, Function B PCB Ass'y and LED PCB Ass'y | 8 - 26 |
| 8-2-6. Interface PCB Ass'y | 8 - 29 |
| 8-2-7. Connector PCB Ass'y, Head PCB Ass'y, Fuse PCB Ass'y, Pitch Control PCB Ass'y and Joint PCB Ass'y | 8 - 31, - 32 |
| 8-2-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y | 8 - 33 |
| 8-2-9. RC-50 PCB Ass'y | (Under Preparation) 8 - |
| 8-2-10. RC-51 PCB Ass'y | (Under Preparation) 8 - |

8-3. CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 8-3-1. Wiring Diagram | 8 - 36 |
| 8-3-2. Control PCB Ass'y | 8 - 38 |
| 8-3-3. Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y | 8 - 40 |
| 8-3-4. Mother PCB Ass'y, Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y | 8 - 42 |
| 8-3-5. Function A PCB Ass'y, Function B PCB Ass'y, LED PCB Ass'y | 8 - 44 |
| 8-3-6. Meter and Head Wiring Diagram | 8 - 46 |
| 8-3-7. Interface Diagram | 8 - 48 |
| 8-3-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y | 8 - 50 |
| 8-3-9. Capstan Motor PCB Ass'y | 8 - 52 |
| (Optional Equipment) | |
| 8-3-10. Remote Control Unit, RC-50 | (Under Preparation) 8 - |
| 8-3-11. Remote Control Unit, RC-51 | (Under Preparation) 8 - |

INDEX

| | |
|--|--------------|
| 8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS | |
| 8-1. MECHANICS – EXPLODED VIEWS AND PARTS LISTS | |
| 8-1-1. Exploded View—1 (58 Overall) | 8 - 2 |
| 8-1-2. Exploded View—2 (Transport Unit, Front Section) | 8 - 4 |
| 8-1-3. Exploded View—3 (Transport Unit, Rear Section) | 8 - 7 |
| 8-1-4. Exploded View—4 (Function, Amplifier Section) | 8 - 10 |
| (Optional Equipment) | |
| 8-1-5. Remote Control Unit, RC-50 | |
| Exploded View | 8 - 11 - a |
| 8-1-6. Remote Control Unit, RC-51 | |
| Exploded View-1 (Overall) | 8 - 11 - c |
| Exploded View-2 (Unit Section) | 8 - 11 - d |
| 8-2. ELECTRONICS – PCB'S AND ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS | |
| 8-2-1. Control PCB Ass'y | 8 - 12, - 16 |
| 8-2-2. Keyboard PCB Ass'y, Tension Sensor PCB Ass'y, Speed PCB Ass'y, End Sensor PCB Ass'y and VR PCB Ass'y | 8 - 14 |
| 8-2-3. Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y | 8 - 18 |
| 8-2-4. Mother PCB Ass'y, Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y | 8 - 22 |
| 8-2-5. Function A PCB Ass'y Function B PCB Ass'y and LED PCB Ass'y | 8 - 26 |
| 8-2-6. Interface PCB Ass'y | 8 - 29 |
| 8-2-7. Connector PCB Ass'y, Head PCB Ass'y, Fuse PCB Ass'y, Pitch Control PCB Ass'y and Joint PCB Ass'y | 8 - 31, - 32 |
| 8-2-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y | 8 - 33 |
| (Optional Equipment) | |
| 8-2-9. RC-50 and RC-51 PCB Ass'y | 8 - 35 - a |
| Display PCB Ass'y, Switch PCB Ass'y, LED PCB Ass'y, Function A PCB Ass'y and Function B PCB Ass'y | |
| 8-3. CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS | |
| 8-3-1. Wiring Diagram | 8 - 36 |
| 8-3-2. Control PCB Ass'y | 8 - 38 |
| 8-3-3. Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y | 8 - 40 |
| 8-3-4. Mother PCB Ass'y, Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y | 8 - 42 |
| 8-3-5. Function A PCB Ass'y, Function B PCB Ass'y, LED PCB Ass'y | 8 - 44 |
| 8-3-6. Meter and Head Wiring Diagram | 8 - 46 |
| 8-3-7. Interface Diagram | 8 - 48 |
| 8-3-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y | 8 - 50 |
| 8-3-9. Capstan Motor PCB Ass'y | 8 - 52 |
| (Optional Equipement) | |
| 8-3-10. Remote Control Unit, RC-50 | 8 - 54 |
| 8-3-11. Remote Control Unit, RC-51 | 8 - 56 |

8. EXPLODED VIEWS, ASSEMBLIES, PARTS LISTS AND CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS

NOTES

- ★ Parts marked with * require longer delivery time.
- ★ All resistors are 1/4 watts, 5 %, unless marked otherwise. Resistor values are in ohms (K=1,000-ohms, M=1,000,000 ohms).
- ★ All capacitor values are in microfarads (p=pico-farads).
- ★ Δ Parts marked with this sign are safety critical components. They must always be replaced with identical components — refer to the TEAC Parts List and ensure exact replacement.
- ★ 0 dB is referenced to 1 V in this manual unless otherwise specified.
- ★ PC boards shown viewed from electro-parts side.

Effective: August. 1982

SUPPLEMENT NOTICE

We are hereby taking this opportunity to release the remote control information which was under compilation at the time the TASCAM 58 OPERATION/MAINTENANCE Manual (#5700039300) was completed.

Please retain this information on file by seeing that the concerning pages are inserted into their proper places in the manual. The newly provided replacements may be used to replace the pages that demand correction.

| <u>Replacements:</u> | <u>Page</u> |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Cover page (New manual number) | — |
| 2. Table of contents (Corrected) | — |
| 3. Index (Content change) | 8 -1 |

Inserts:

Supplement-1

(To be inserted after page 8-11)

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 8-1-5 Remote Control Unit, RC-50 | |
| Exploded View | 8 - 11 - a |
| Parts List | 8 - 11 - b |
| 8-1-6 Remote Control Unit, RC-51 | |
| Exploded View-1 (Overall) | 8 - 11 - c |
| Exploded View-2 (Unit Section) | 8 - 11 - d |
| Parts List | 8 - 11 - e, - f |

Supplement-2

(To be inserted after page 8-35)

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 8-2-9 RC-50 and RC-51 PCB Ass'y | 8 - 35 - a, - b |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|

Supplement-3

(To be inserted after page 8-53)

| | |
|---|--------|
| 8-3-10 Remote Control Unit, RC-50 (Circuit Schematic) | 8 - 54 |
| 8-3-11 Remote Control Unit, RC-51 (Circuit Schematic) | 8 - 56 |

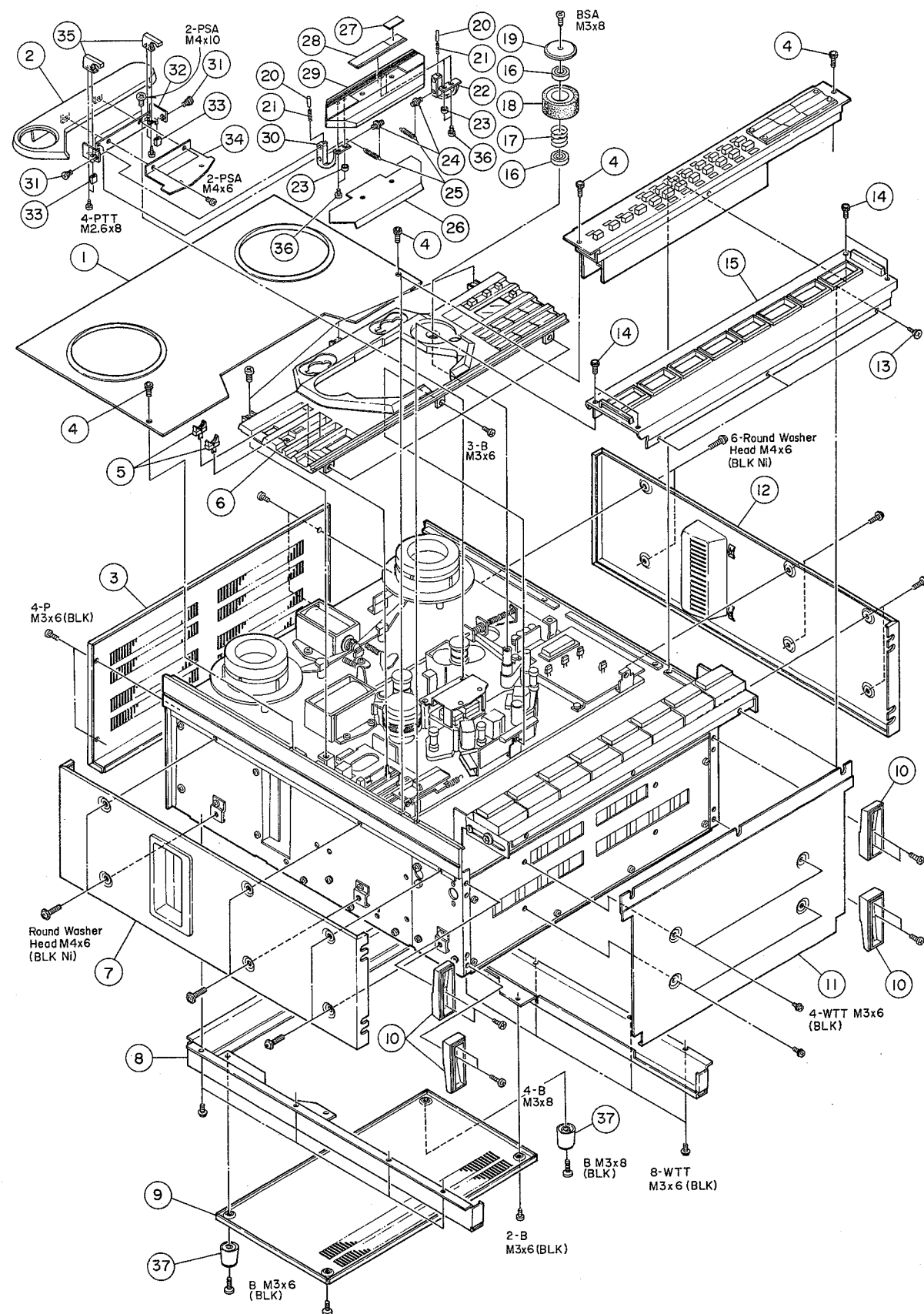
Correction:

Page 1-10, Right column, second paragraph from the bottom.

FORGET THE NOTION THAT dBm REQUIRES 1600 OHM,
should be read as: REQUIRES A 600 OHM

8-1. MECHANICS – EXPLODED VIEWS AND PARTS LISTS

8-1-1. Exploded View—1 (58 Overall)



Exploded View—1

Parts marked with * require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| 1 - 1 | *5800351000 | Panel A Assy, Front | |
| 1 - 2 | *5800396200 | Head Housing; B | |
| 1 - 3 | *5800343000 | Top Cover | |
| 1 - 4 | *5781704008 | Cap screw M4 x 8 (Ni) | |
| 1 - 5 | 5800341700 | Knob, Fader | |
| 1 - 6 | *5800351101 | Panel A Assy, Transport | |
| 1 - 7 | *5800351600 | Panel, Side; R | |
| 1 - 8 | *5800345200 | Side Cover, A | |
| 1 - 9 | *5800345300 | Panel, Rear; A | |
| 1 - 10 | 5800288500 | Foot | |
| 1 - 11 | *5800346100 | Plate, Bottom | |
| 1 - 12 | *5800351500 | Panel Arm, Side; L | |
| 1 - 13 | *5800400900 | Screw, Shoulder; A | |
| 1 - 14 | *5781703006 | Cap Screw M3 x 6 (Ni) | |
| 1 - 15 | *5800351300 | Panel Assy, Ampl; A | |
| 1 - 16 | *5730002100 | Bearing, 626Hz | |
| 1 - 17 | *5800280600 | Spring, Pinch Roller | |
| 1 - 18 | 5800347600 | Pinch Roller | |
| 1 - 19 | 5800398600 | Cap, Pinch Roller | |
| 1 - 20 | *5786323010 | Pin; B | |
| 1 - 21 | *5800396900 | Spring; B | |
| 1 - 22 | *5800396400 | Holder, Housing; R | |
| 1 - 23 | *5800436000 | Spacer | |
| 1 - 24 | *5800397800 | Shaft | |
| 1 - 25 | *5800396800 | Spring; A | |
| 1 - 26 | *5800404800 | Plate, Shield; D | |
| 1 - 27 | *5800340200 | Plate, Name; B [J] | |
| | *5800340100 | Plate, Name; A [All except J] | |
| 1 - 28 | *5800307400 | Plate, Housing; 1 [J] | |
| | *5800307500 | Plate, Housing; 2 [All except J] | |
| 1 - 29 | *5800396100 | Head Housing; A | |
| 1 - 30 | *5800396301 | Holder, Housing; L | |
| 1 - 31 | *5800404400 | Screw, Shoulder; B | |
| 1 - 32 | *5800396500 | Bracket, Housing | |
| 1 - 33 | *5800398500 | Cushion | |
| 1 - 34 | *5800436100 | Bracket, Housing; B | |
| 1 - 35 | *5800396600 | Stopper, Housing | |
| 1 - 36 | *5781703008 | Cap Screw M3 x 8 (Ni) | |
| 1 - 37 | *5504552000 | Foot; T-A | |

[U]: U.S.A.
[A]: AUSTRALIA
[L]: LIMITED AREA

[C]: CANADA
[E]: EUROPE
[J]: JAPAN

[GE]: GENERAL EXPORT
[UK]: U.K.

[illegible]

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| 2 - 1 | 5800349900 | Table Assy, Reel [J] |
| 2 - 1 | 5800400500 | Table Assy, Reel [All except J] |
| 2 - 2 | *5800333500 | Arm Assy, Brake; R |
| 2 - 3 | *5800333400 | Arm Assy, Brake; L |
| 2 - 4 | *5555272000 | Retainer, Band |
| 2 - 5 | *5800336800 | Bracket, Solenoid |
| 2 - 6 | *5800335401 | Stud, Band |
| 2 - 7 | *5313001700 | Solenoid, Brake |
| 2 - 8 | *5800336500 | Stopper |
| 2 - 9 | *5027569000 | Cushion, Stopper |
| 2 - 10 | *5800335300 | Shaft, Brake Arm |
| 2 - 11 | *5800380800 | Spring, Brake |
| 2 - 12 | *5800336100 | Hook, Spring |
| 2 - 13 | *5800336300 | Stopper; L |
| 2 - 14 | *5027569000 | Cushion, Stopper |
| 2 - 15 | *5800336200 | Holder, Sensor PCB |
| 2 - 16 | *5200082700 | PCB Assy, END SENSOR |
| 2 - 17 | 5800331101 | Arm Assy, Tension; R |
| 2 - 18 | *5800380100 | Spring, Tension |
| 2 - 19 | 5800331001 | Arm Assy, Tension; L |
| 2 - 20 | *5581038000 | Clamper, Cord |
| 2 - 21 | *5800336400 | Stopper; R |
| 2 - 22 | *5534851000 | Dumper, Arm |
| 2 - 23 | *5200088600 | PCB Assy, Head |
| 2 - 24 | *5800402700 | Bracket, Connector PCB |
| 2 - 25 | | Not applicable |
| 2 - 26 | | Not applicable |
| 2 - 27 | 5378300400 | Head, REC/PLAY |
| 2 - 28 | *5800338100 | Guide Assy, Tape |
| 2 - 29 | *6013024000 | Filter Assy, Scrap; 1/4 |
| 2 - 30 | 5378300200 | Head, ERASE |
| 2 - 31 | 5781704010 | Bolt, Cap M4 x 10 |
| 2 - 32 | *5800337100 | Stopper, Arm |
| 2 - 33 | 5800398600 | Cap, Pinch Roller |
| 2 - 34 | *5730002100 | Bearing |
| 2 - 35 | *5800380600 | Spring, Pinch Roller |
| 2 - 36 | 5800347600 | Pinch Roller |
| 2 - 37 | *5786131900 | Ring; C |
| 2 - 38 | *5800346900 | Base, Head |
| 2 - 39 | *5785150400 | Wave Washer |
| 2 - 40 | *5800348700 | Screw |
| 2 - 41 | *5800369500 | Stopper, Spring |
| 2 - 42 | *5800337700 | Stud, Head Base |
| 2 - 43 | *5781703006 | Cap Screw M3 x 6 (Ni) |
| 2 - 44 | 5225009600 | Indicator, LED |
| 2 - 45 | *5800398700 | Spring, Lifter Level |
| 2 - 46 | *5800332300 | Arm Assy, Pinch Roller |
| 2 - 47 | *5800335700 | Stud, Pinch Roller Arm |
| 2 - 48 | *5200082100 | PCB Assy, KEY BOARD |
| 2 - 49 | *5800342200 | Holder, PCB |

REMARKS

A-3300SX

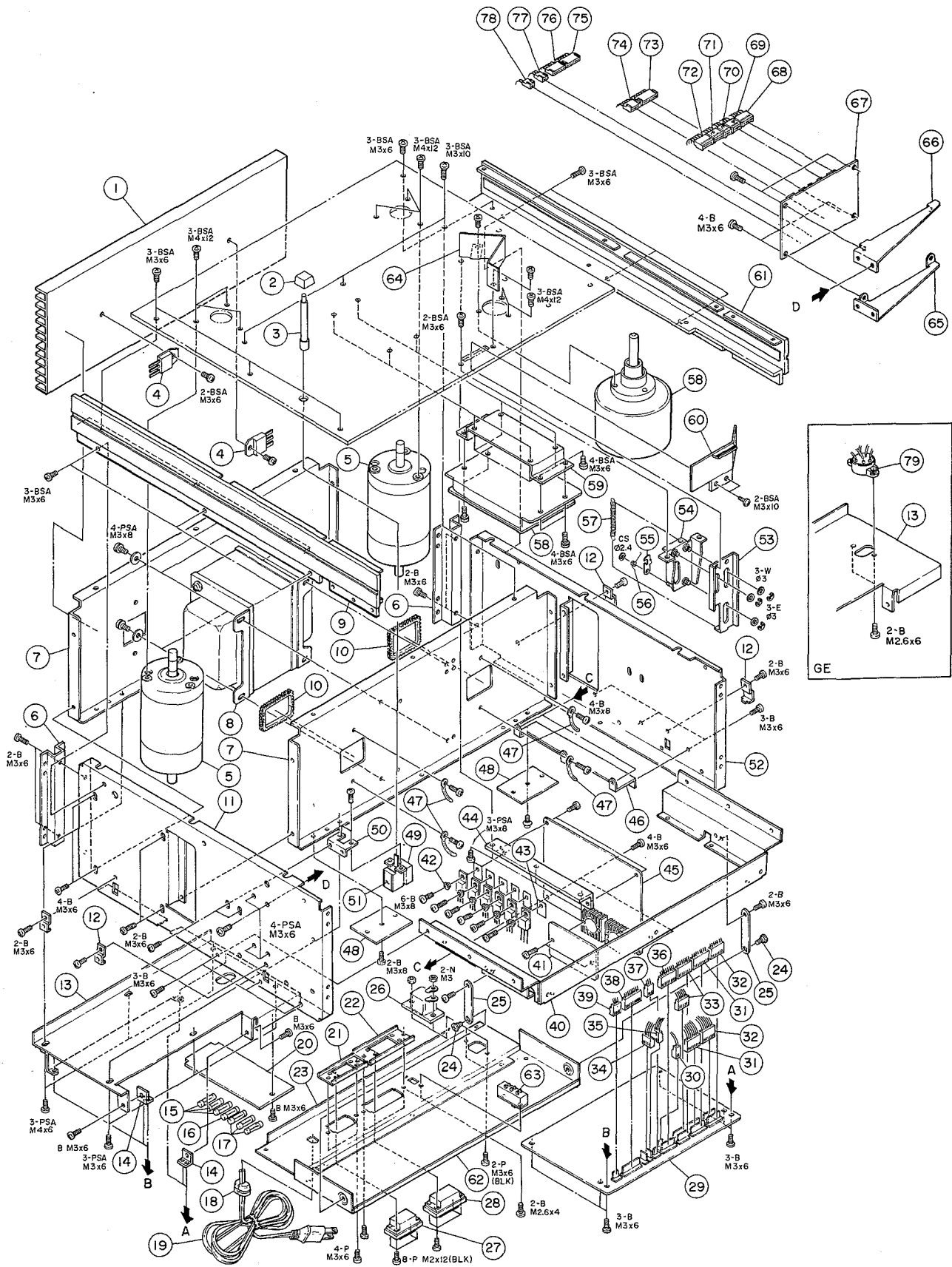
80-8

[U]: U.S.A.
[C]: CANADA
[GE]: GENERAL EXPORT
[A]: AUSTRALIA
[E]: EUROPE
[UK]: U.K.
[L]: LIMITED AREA
[J]: JAPAN

Parts marked with *require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|---------------------------------|---------|
| 2 - 50 | *5800335200 | Hook, Spring | |
| 2 - 51 | *5200083100 | PCB Assy, VR | |
| 2 - 52 | *5800339300 | Bracket, Panel; A | |
| 2 - 53 | *5800396700 | Stud, Head Housing | |
| 2 - 54 | *5800398800 | Spring, CUE return | |
| 2 - 55 | *5800336900 | Stopper, CUE | |
| 2 - 56 | *5800337901 | Base, Transport | |
| 2 - 57 | *5800337000 | Arm Assy, Pivot; A | |
| 2 - 58 | *5800337200 | Link, CUE; B | |
| 2 - 59 | *5545022000 | Pin, Solenoid | |
| 2 - 60 | *5581056000 | Screw, Shoulder; A | |
| 2 - 61 | *5800334300 | Link Assy, CUE | |
| 2 - 62 | 5313001900 | Solenoid | |
| 2 - 63 | *5800337600 | Rod, Lifter | |
| 2 - 64 | *5800381700 | Spring, CUE Lever | |
| 2 - 65 | *5800350500 | Bracket, Solenoid | |
| 2 - 66 | *5301455500 | Micro Switch | |
| 2 - 67 | 5800369100 | Slider Assy | |
| 2 - 68 | *5800339400 | Bracket, Panel; B | |
| 2 - 69 | 5800396001 | Knob, CUE | |
| 2 - 70 | *5200082200 | PCB Assy, PITCH CONTROL | |
| 2 - 71 | *5800335000 | Holder, PCB | |
| 2 - 72 | 5122169000 | Connector Socket, 9P | |
| 2 - 73 | 5800382400 | Button | |
| 2 - 74 | *5800336800 | Bracket, Solenoid; Pinch Roller | |
| 2 - 75 | *5200082500 | PCB Assy, SPEED SENSOR | |
| 2 - 76 | *5800338201 | Roller Assy, Counter | |
| 2 - 77 | 5313001800 | Solenoid | |
| 2 - 78 | *5800369400 | Holder, Spring | |
| 2 - 79 | *5800336700 | Link Pinch Roler Arm | |
| 2 - 80 | *5800332700 | Arm Assy, Lifter | |
| 2 - 81 | *5800335600 | Stud, Lifter Arm | |
| 2 - 82 | *5800333100 | Link Assy, Lifter | |
| 2 - 83 | *5800334000 | Arm Assy, Pivot | |
| 2 - 84 | *5800401300 | Plate, Insulating | |
| 2 - 85 | *5800380500 | Pressure Spring, Pinch Roller | |
| 2 - 86 | *5200082600 | PCB Assy, Tension Sensor | |
| 2 - 87 | *5122664000 | Connector Socket, 4P | |
| 2 - 88 | *5122154000 | Spacer | |
| 2 - 89 | *5800404700 | Plate, Shield; C | |
| 2 - 90 | *5800436200 | Bracket, Housing; C | |
| 2 - 91 | *5800403600 | Plate, Shield; A | |

8-1.3. Exploded View—3 (Transport Unit, Rear Section)



Exploded View—3

Parts marked with *require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|---------------|--|---------|
| 3 - 1 | *5800342500 | Heatsink; A | 133 |
| 3 - 2 | *5800173100 | Button, Power | |
| 3 - 3 | *5534855000 | Rod, Switch | |
| 3 - 4 | △ 5231758800 | Transistor 2SD1047(E), Q21, Q22 | 38 |
| 3 - 5 | 5370002700 | Motor Assy, Reel | |
| 3 - 6 | *5800339700 | Bracket, Case; A | |
| 3 - 7 | *5800343500 | Bracket, Power Transformer | |
| 3 - 8 | △ *5320016100 | Transformer, Power [J] | |
| | △ *5320016200 | Transformer, Power [U, C] | |
| | △ *5320016300 | Transformer, Powr [GE] | |
| | △ *5320016400 | Transformer, Power [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 9 | *5800344400 | Sash, Side; L | |
| 3 - 10 | *5786740100 | Bush, Free SG-16 | |
| 3 - 11 | *5800343300 | Chassis, Side; L | |
| 3 - 12 | *5800339900 | Bracket Case; C | |
| 3 - 13 | *5800343600 | Bracket Assy, PCB; D | |
| 3 - 14 | *5800339800 | Bracket, PCB; A | |
| 3 - 15 | △ 5307004100 | FUSE, 2A 250V [J, U, C, GE] | |
| | △ 5142189000 | FUSE, T2A 250V [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 16 | △ 5307004300 | FUSE, 3A 250V [J, U, C, GE] | |
| | △ 5142191000 | FUSE, T3.15A 250V [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 17 | △ 5307004700 | FUSE, 7A 250V [J, U, C, GE] | |
| | △ 5142193000 | FUSE, T5A 250V [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 18 | *5534660000 | Strain Relief, AC Power Cord [J, GE, E, A] | |
| | *5534661000 | Strain Relief, AC Power Cord [U, UK] | |
| 3 - 18 | *5534662000 | Strain Relief, AC Power Cord [C] | |
| 3 - 19 | △ *5128027000 | Cord, AC Power [J] | |
| | △ *5128075000 | Cord, AC Power [GE] | |
| | △ *5350008200 | Cord, AC Power [E] | |
| | △ *5128047000 | Cord, AC Power [UK] | |
| | △ *5128098000 | Cord, AC Power [U] | |
| | △ *5350008100 | Cord, AC Power [C] | |
| | △ *5350008300 | Cord, AC Power [A] | |
| 3 - 20 | *5210081800 | PCB, FUSE [J, U, C, GE] | |
| | *5210081900 | PCB, FUSE [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 21 | *5800194001 | Plate, Connector; B | |
| 3 - 22 | *5800194101 | Plate, Connector; C | |
| 3 - 23 | *5800405400 | Rear Panel, Ampl; E | |
| 3 - 24 | *5581056000 | Shaft, Shoulder | |
| 3 - 25 | *5800338600 | Arm; A | |
| 3 - 26 | *5122339000 | Connector Socket, 6P | |
| 3 - 27 | *5334013300 | Connector Socket, 56P | |
| 3 - 28 | *5334012900 | Connector Socket, 38P | |
| 3 - 29 | *5200082900 | PCB Assy, CONTROL | |
| 2 - 30 | *5122164000 | Connector Socket, 2P | |
| 3 - 31 | *5122172000 | Connector Socket, 10P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 32 | *5122174000 | Connector Socket, 12P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 33 | *5122168000 | Connector Socket, 6P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 34 | *5122165000 | Connector Socket, 3P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 35 | *5122281000 | Connector Socket, 3P (RED) | |

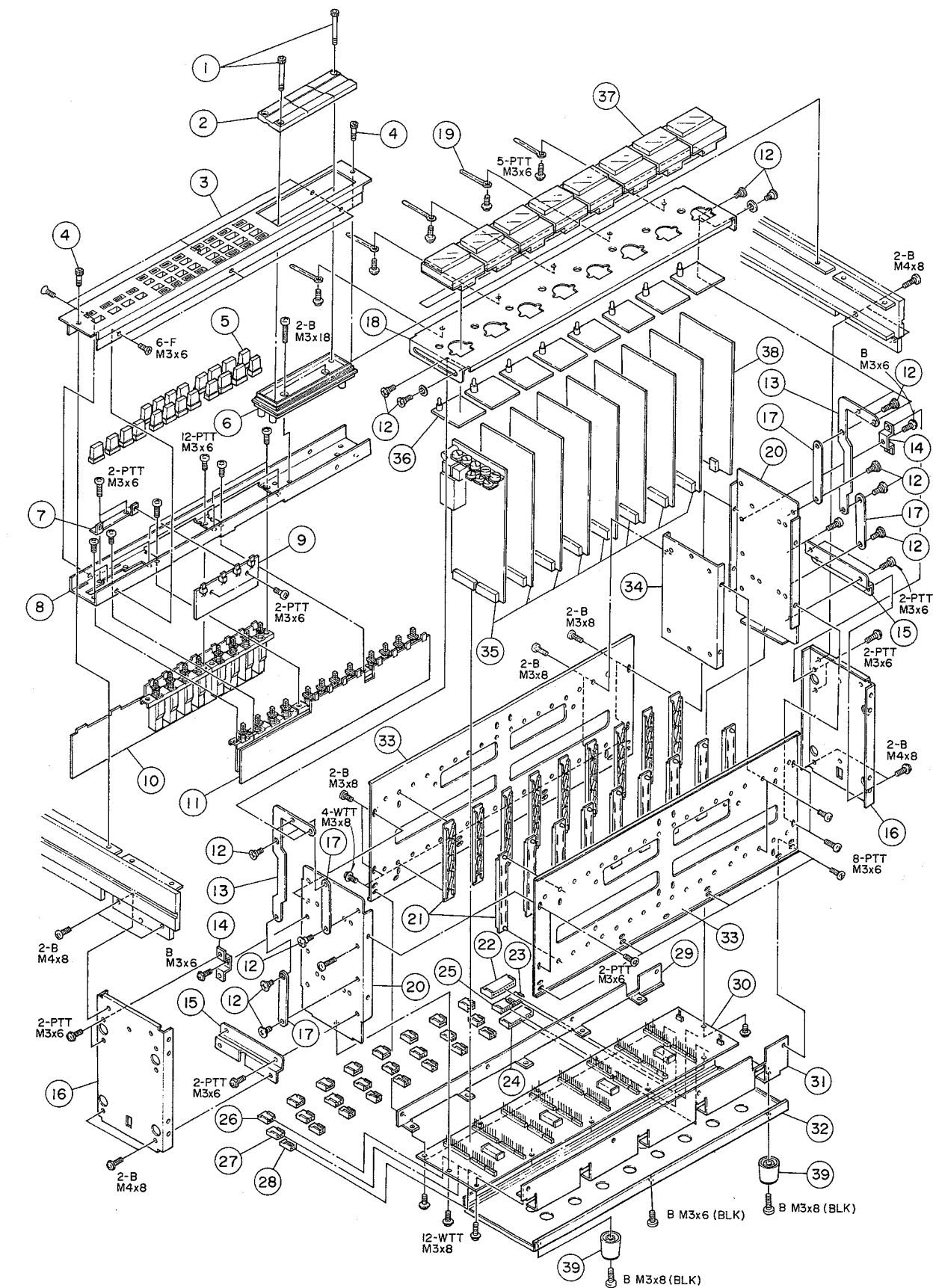
[U]: U.S.A.
[C]: CANADA
[GE]: GENERAL EXPORT
[A]: AUSTRALIA
[E]: EUROPE
[UK]: U.K.
[L]: LIMITED AREA
[J]: JAPAN

Parts marked with *require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|---------------|---|---------|
| 3 - 36 | *5122171000 | Connector Socket, 9P | |
| 3 - 37 | *5122166000 | Connector Socket, 4P | |
| 3 - 38 | *5122173000 | Connector Socket, 11P | |
| 3 - 39 | *5122283000 | Connector Socket, 5P (RED) | |
| 3 - 40 | *5800342900 | Bracket, Rear Panel | |
| 3 - 41 | *5800350700 | Heatsink, PS; B | |
| 3 - 42 | *5033295000 | Tube, Insulating | |
| 3 - 43 | *5033291000 | Plate, Insulating | |
| 3 - 44 | *5800350600 | Heatsink, PS; A | |
| 3 - 45 | *5200082800 | PCB Assy, POWER | |
| 3 - 46 | *5800350800 | Holder, PS PCB | |
| 3 - 47 | *5786714000 | Clamper, Cord; φ4 | |
| 3 - 48 | *5200082000 | PCB Assy, JOINT | |
| 3 - 49 | △ *5052910000 | Spark Killer 0.033μF + 120/125V [U] | |
| | △ *5052911000 | Spark Killer 0.033μF + 120/250V [C] | |
| | △ *5052907000 | Spark Killer 0.01μF + 300/300V [J, GE] | |
| | △ *5267702500 | Spark Killer 0.0047μF + 120/125V [E, UK, A] | |
| | △ *5267702600 | Spark Killer 0.047μF/250V [E] | |
| 3 - 50 | *5800338400 | Bracket, Switch; A | |
| 3 - 51 | △ 5300017900 | Switch, Push [J] | |
| | △ 5134036000 | Switch, Push [GE] | |
| | △ 5134037000 | Switch, Push [U] | |
| | △ 5234018000 | Switch, Push [C] | |
| | △ 5134011000 | Switch, Push [E, UK, A] | |
| 3 - 52 | *5800343400 | Chassis, Side; R | |
| 3 - 53 | *5800330600 | Slide Plate Assy, Shield | |
| 3 - 54 | *5800330300 | Base Assy, Shield | |
| 3 - 55 | *5084643200 | Plate, Lock | |
| 3 - 56 | *5800380000 | Spring, Lock | |
| 3 - 57 | *5800380100 | Spring, Tension | |
| 3 - 58 | 5370003200 | DC Motor, Capstan | |
| 3 - 59 | *5800337500 | Holder, SERVO PCB | |
| 3 - 60 | *5800349400 | Plate, Head Shield | |
| 3 - 61 | *5800344500 | Sash, Side; R | |
| 3 - 62 | *5800404600 | Rear Panel, Ampl; D | |
| 3 - 63 | *6051604000 | Switch, Slide 2-2 | |
| 3 - 64 | *5800403700 | Plate, Shield; B | |
| 3 - 65 | *5800435900 | Bracket, PCB; R | |
| 3 - 66 | *5800435800 | Bracket, PCB; L | |
| 3 - 67 | *5200099600 | PCB Assy, INTERFACE | |
| 3 - 68 | *5122287000 | Connector, Socket 9P (RED) | |
| 3 - 69 | *5122168000 | Connector, Socket 6P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 70 | *5122166000 | Connector, Socket 4P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 71 | *5122169000 | Connector, Socket 7P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 72 | *5122171000 | Connector, Socket 9P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 73 | *5122290000 | Connector, Socket 12P (RED) | |
| 3 - 74 | *5122170000 | Connector, Socket 8P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 75 | *5122172000 | Connector, Socket 10P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 76 | *5122280000 | Connector, Socket 10P (RED) | |
| 3 - 77 | *5122165000 | Connector, Socket 3P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 78 | *5122164000 | Connector, Socket 2P (WHT) | |
| 3 - 79 | *5302101200 | Switch, Voltage Selector [GE] | |

[U]: U.S.A.
[C]: CANADA
[GE]: GENERAL EXPORT
[A]: AUSTRALIA
[E]: EUROPE
[UK]: U.K.
[L]: LIMITED AREA
[J]: JAPAN

8-1-4. Exploded View-4 (Function, Amplifier Section)

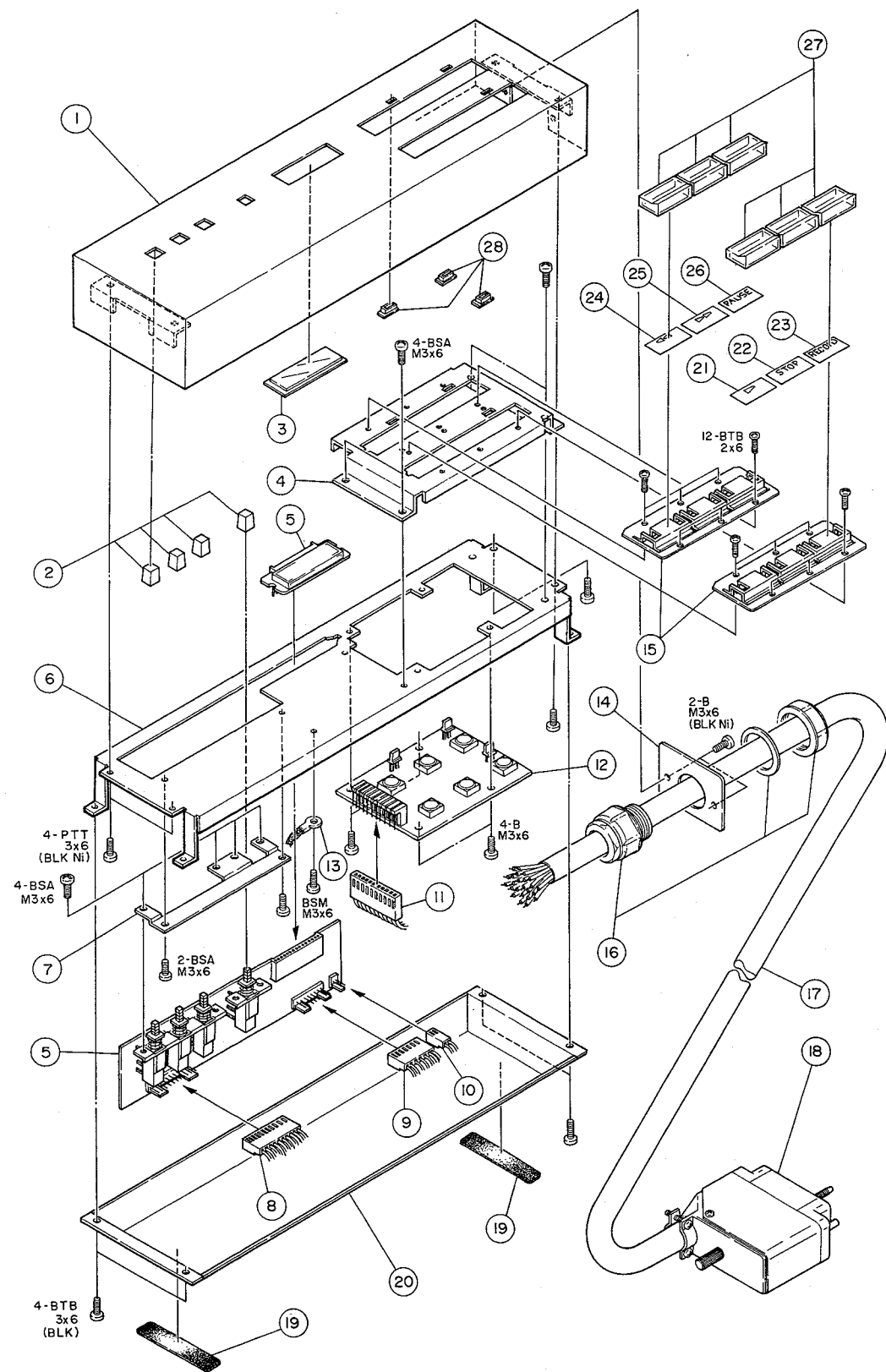


Exploded View-4

Parts marked with *require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|----------------------------|---------|
| 4 - 1 | *5782703030 | Cap Screw M3 x 30 (Ni) | |
| 4 - 2 | *5800383500 | Block, Splicing | |
| 4 - 3 | *5800351200 | Panel A Assy, Function | |
| 4 - 4 | *5781704008 | Cap Screw M4 x 8 (Ni) | |
| 4 - 5 | 5800378900 | Button, Right | |
| 4 - 6 | *5800382500 | Base, Splicing | |
| 4 - 7 | *5800338300 | Bracket, PCB; E | |
| 4 - 8 | *5800343700 | Chassis, Function | |
| 4 - 9 | *5200083000 | PCB Assy, LED | |
| 4 - 10 | *5200082400 | PCB Assy, FUNCTION B | |
| 4 - 11 | *5200082300 | PCB Assy, FUNCTION A | |
| 4 - 12 | *5581056000 | Screw, Shoulder; A | |
| 4 - 13 | *5800339500 | Plate, Joint | |
| 4 - 14 | *5800339200 | Bracket, Ampl.; B | |
| 4 - 15 | *5800339100 | Bracket, Ampl.; A | |
| 4 - 16 | *5800343100 | Chassis, Ampl.; A | |
| 4 - 17 | *5800339000 | Arm; B | |
| 4 - 18 | *5800343800 | Chassis, Ampl. | |
| 4 - 19 | *5581038000 | Clamper, Cord; A | |
| 4 - 20 | *5800341800 | Chassis, Ampl. Side; L | |
| 4 - 21 | *5730003200 | Guide, PCB | |
| 4 - 22 | *5122171000 | Connector Socket, 9P | |
| 4 - 23 | *5122167000 | Connector Socket, 5P | |
| 4 - 24 | *5122170000 | Connector Socket, 8P | |
| 4 - 25 | *5122281000 | Connector Socket, 3P (RED) | |
| 4 - 26 | *5122166000 | Connector Socket, 4P | |
| 4 - 27 | *5122165000 | Connector Socket, 3P | |
| 4 - 28 | *5122164000 | Connector Socket, 2P | |
| 4 - 29 | *5800344100 | Bracket, PCB; B | |
| 4 - 30 | *5200083400 | PCB Assy, MOTHER | |
| 4 - 31 | *5800344000 | Bracket, PCB; A | |
| 4 - 32 | *5800346000 | Panel, Rear Ampl.; A | |
| 4 - 33 | *5800343900 | Bracket, PCB Guide; A | |
| 4 - 34 | *5800342000 | Bracket, PCB Guide; B | |
| 4 - 35 | *5200083200 | PCB Assy, REC/PLAY AMPL. | |
| 4 - 36 | 5225611400 | LED, SLP144B | |
| 4 - 37 | 5296005000 | Meter, VU | |
| 4 - 38 | *5200083300 | PCB Assy, MASTER OSC | |
| 4 - 39 | *5504552000 | Foot; T-A | |

8-1-5 Remote Control Unit, RC-50
Exploded View

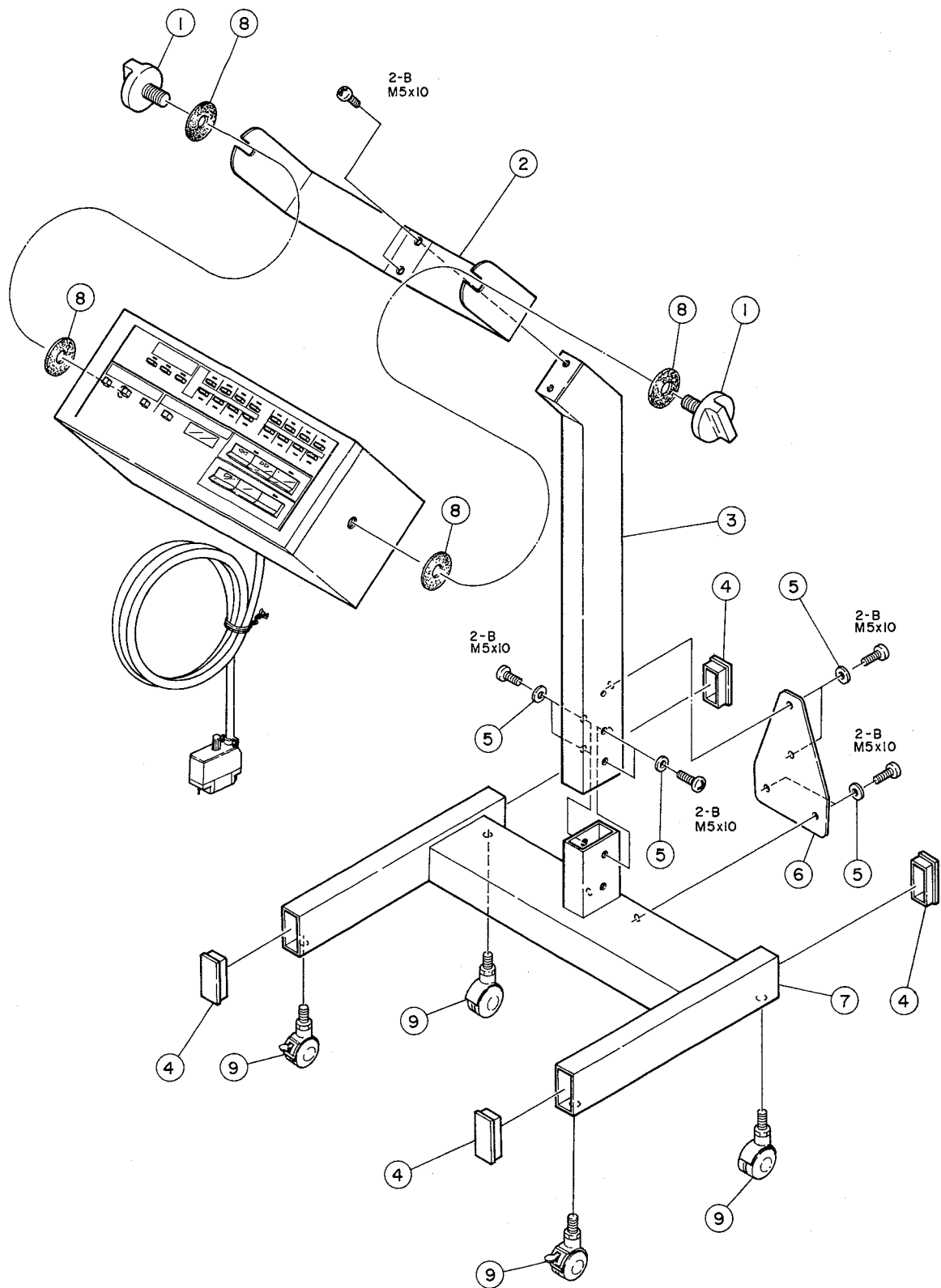


Exploded View (RC-50)

Parts marked with * require longer delivery time.

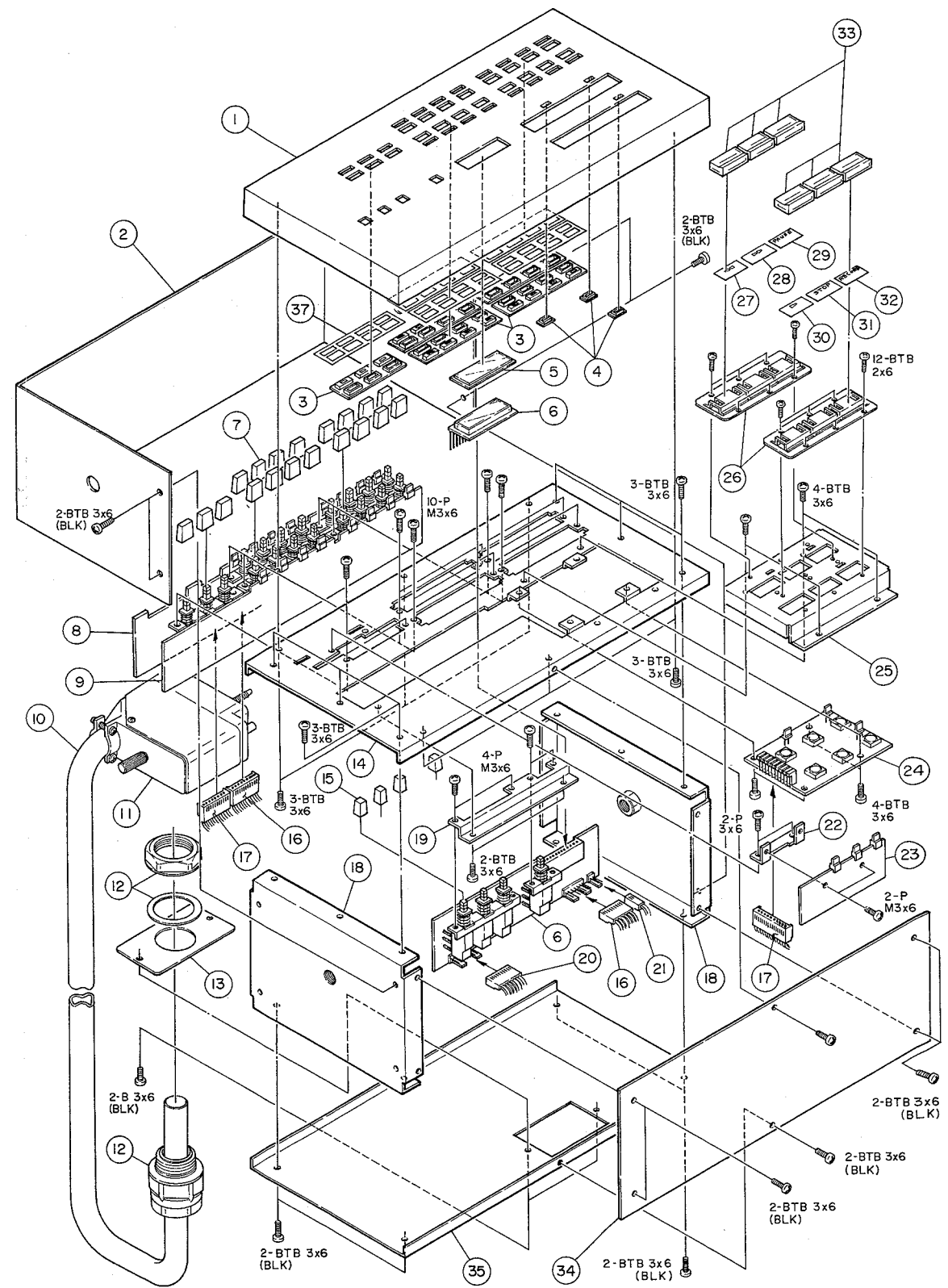
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|-----------------------------|---------|
| 1 - 1 | *5800449500 | Panel, TASCAM | |
| 1 - 2 | *5800437400 | Button, Push | |
| 1 - 3 | *5800340500 | Lens, Counter | |
| 1 - 4 | *5800449000 | Chassis, Control | |
| 1 - 5 | *5200999800 | PCB Ass'y, DISPLAY | |
| 1 - 6 | *5800449300 | Chassis, RC | |
| 1 - 7 | *5800448900 | Bracket, Switch | |
| 1 - 8 | *5122172000 | Connector, Socket; 10P | |
| 1 - 9 | *5122170000 | Connector, Socket; 8P | |
| 1 - 10 | *5122164000 | Connector, Socket; 2P | |
| 1 - 11 | *5336149900 | Connector, Socket; 9P | |
| 1 - 12 | *5200099900 | PCB Ass'y, SWITCH | |
| 1 - 13 | *5786700400 | Lag; $\phi 3$ | |
| 1 - 14 | *5800448800 | Plate, Cable | |
| 1 - 15 | *5800437500 | Holder, Button; 3 | |
| 1 - 16 | *5317001600 | Bush, Spur-Lock; PG13 | |
| 1 - 17 | *5350506800 | Cable, Remote | |
| 1 - 18 | *5334013200 | Connector, Plug; 56P | |
| 1 - 19 | *5800448700 | Slipguard | |
| 1 - 20 | *5800449200 | Panel, Rear | |
| 1 - 21 | *5800341000 | Indication Sheet A; PLAY | |
| 1 - 22 | *5800341100 | Indication Sheet B; STOP | |
| 1 - 23 | *5800341200 | Indication Sheet C; RECORD | |
| 1 - 24 | *5800437200 | Indication Sheet FL; REW | |
| 1 - 25 | *5800437100 | Indication Sheet EL; F. FWD | |
| 1 - 26 | *5800437000 | Indication Sheet DL; PAUSE | |
| 1 - 27 | *5800340700 | Cap: A | |
| 1 - 28 | *5800366100 | Escutcheon, LED | |

8-1-6 Remote Control Unit, RC-51 Exploded View—1 (Overall)



8 - 11 - c

Exploded View-2 (Unit Section)



8 - 11 - d

Exploded View—1 (Overall)

Parts marked with * require longer delivery time.

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|---|---------|
| 1 - 1 | *5800282900 | Bolt, Knob | |
| 1 - 2 | *5800438400 | Holder | |
| 1 - 3 | *5800438200 | Frame; A | |
| 1 - 4 | *5800282500 | Cap, End | |
| 1 - 5 | *5785225000 | Fiber Washer $\phi 5 \times 10 \times t0.5$ | |
| 1 - 6 | *5800449600 | Plate, Reinforcement | |
| 1 - 7 | *5800438300 | Frame: B | |
| 1 - 8 | *5800436900 | Spacer | |
| 1 - 9 | *5740003500 | Castor | |

Exploded View—2 (Unit Section)

Parts marked with * require longer delivery time.

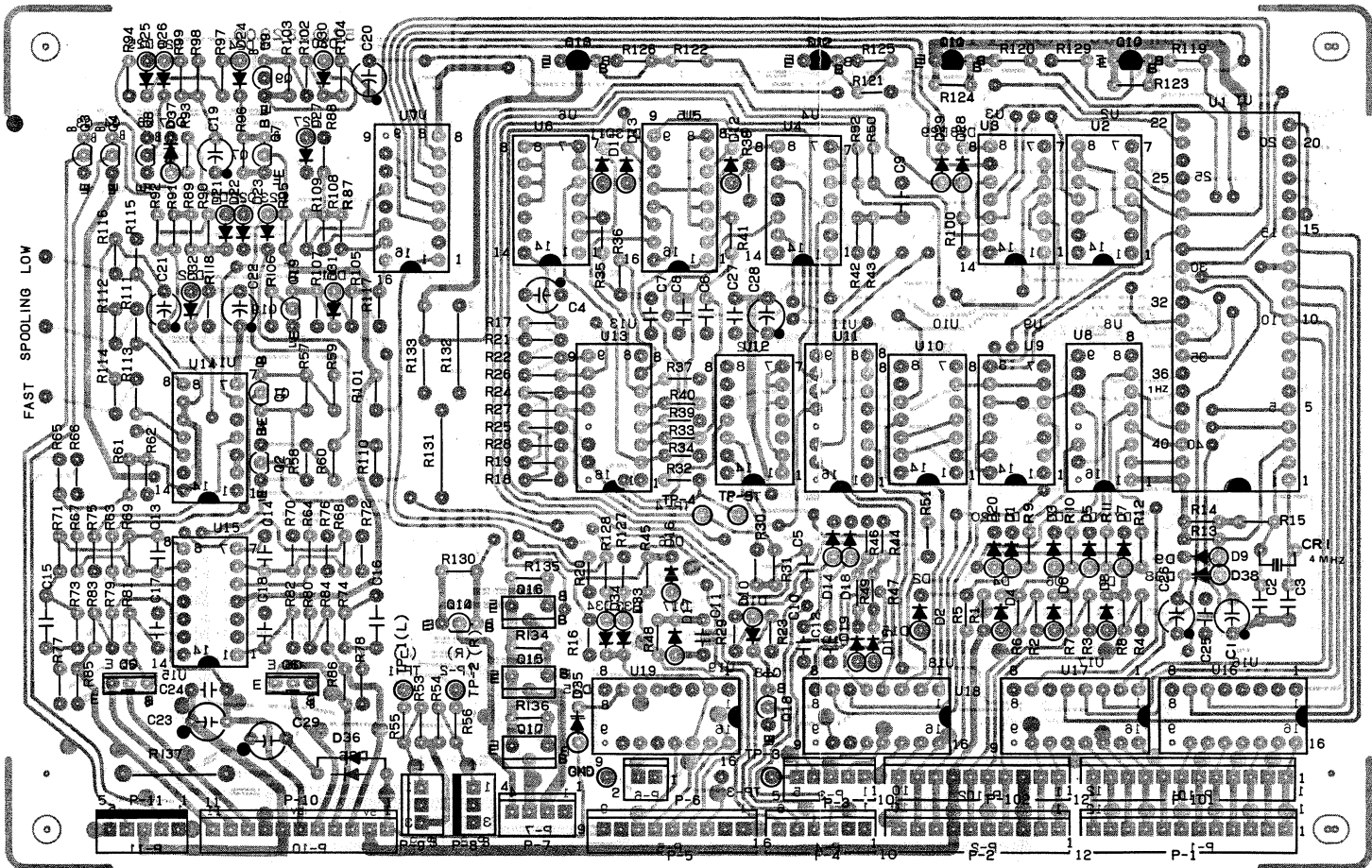
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION | REMARKS |
|----------|-------------|-------------------------------|---------|
| 2 - 1 | *5800438100 | Panel; B | |
| 2 - 2 | *5800437700 | Cover, Top | |
| 2 - 3 | *5800340400 | Escutcheon, LED | |
| 2 - 4 | *5800366100 | Escutcheon, POWER LED | |
| 2 - 5 | *5800340500 | Lens, Counter | |
| 2 - 6 | *5200099800 | PCB A'ssy, DISPLAY | |
| 2 - 7 | *5800378900 | Button | |
| 2 - 8 | *5200105200 | PCB A'ssy, FUNCTION; A | |
| 2 - 9 | *5200105300 | PCB A'ssy, FUNCTION; B | |
| 2 - 10 | *5350506600 | Cable, Remote | |
| 2 - 11 | *5334013200 | Connector, Plug; 56P | |
| 2 - 12 | *5317001400 | Bush, Spur-Lock; PG-21 | |
| 2 - 13 | *5800437300 | Plate, Cable | |
| 2 - 14 | *5800437900 | Chassis | |
| 2 - 15 | *5800437400 | Button, Push | |
| 2 - 16 | *5122170000 | Connector, Socket; 8P | |
| 2 - 17 | *5336149900 | Connector, Socket; 9P | |
| 2 - 18 | *5800437800 | Chassis, Side | |
| 2 - 19 | *5800436700 | Bracket, Switch | |
| 2 - 20 | *5122172000 | Connector, Socket; 10P | |
| 2 - 21 | *5122221000 | Connector, Socket; 2P | |
| 2 - 22 | *5800338300 | Bracket, PCB; E | |
| 2 - 23 | *5200083000 | PCB A'ssy, LED | |
| 2 - 24 | *5200099900 | PCB A'ssy, SWITCH | |
| 2 - 25 | *5800436800 | Bracket, PCB | |
| 2 - 26 | *5800437500 | Holder, Button, 3 | |
| 2 - 27 | *5800437200 | Indication Sheet, FL; REW | |
| 2 - 28 | *5800437100 | Indication Sheet, EL; F. FWD. | |
| 2 - 29 | *5800437000 | Indication Sheet, DL; PAUSE | |
| 2 - 30 | *5800341000 | Indication Sheet, A; PLAY | |
| 2 - 31 | *5800341100 | Indication Sheet, B; STOP | |
| 2 - 32 | *5800341200 | Indication Sheet, C; REC | |
| 2 - 33 | *5800340700 | Cap; A | |
| 2 - 34 | *5800438500 | Cover, Bottom | |
| 2 - 35 | *5800437600 | Panel, Rear | |
| 2 - 37 | *5800449400 | Spacer x 5 | |

INCLUDED ACCESSORIES (RC-51)

| REF.NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|-------------|--|
| | *5780025010 | Screw; B M5 x 10 (BLK Ni) (10 used) |
| | *5785225000 | Washer; Fiber W $\phi 5 \times \phi 10 \times t 0.5$ (10 used) |

8-2. ELECTRONICS – PCB'S AND ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS

8-2-1. Control PCB Ass'y



| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------|------------------------------|
| | 5200082600 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082600 | PCB |
| U1 | 5228005300 | Photo Interrupter, ON 1108 |
| R1 | 5180076000 | Carbon Resistor 560Ω 5% 1/2W |
| R2 | 5181506000 | Carbon Resistor 10kΩ 5% 1/4W |
| R3 | 5181480000 | Carbon Resistor 820Ω 5% 1/4W |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------|-----------------------------|
| | 5200082500 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082500 | PCB |
| U1, U2 | 5228008200 | Photo Interrupter, EE-SJB-B |
| R1, R2 | 5181462000 | Carbon Resistor, 150Ω 5% |
| P1 | 5122147000 | Connector Plug, 4P |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------|------------------------------|
| | 5200082700 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082700 | PCB |
| U1 | 5228007500 | Photo Interrupter, SJ3W |
| R1 | 5181662000 | Carbon Resistor 150Ω 5% 1/4W |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| | 5200083100 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210083100 | PCB |
| | VARIABLE RESISTORS | |
| R1~R4 | 5280131602 | Semi-fixed 2k Ω (B) |

Control PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| | 5200082900 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082900 | PCB |
| | IC'S | |
| U1 | 5220803600 | MB8841 |
| U2, U3 | 5220019100 | TC4011BP |
| U4 | 5220019000 | TC4001BP |
| U5 | 5220020300 | TC4510BP |
| U6 | 5220019200 | TC4513BP |
| U7 | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| U8 | 5220020000 | TC4049BP |
| U9, U10 | 5220019100 | TC4011BP |
| U11 | 5220020000 | TC4049BP |
| U12 | 5220020200 | TC4030BP |
| U13 | 5220020100 | TC4050BP |
| U14 | 5220013400 | TC4066BP |
| U15 | 6048609000 | LM2902 |
| U16~U19 | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| | TRANSISTORS | |
| Q1~Q4 | 5042383000 | 2SC-536F |
| Q5, Q6 | 5145077000 | 2SD-600E |
| Q7~Q9 | 5042383000 | 2SA-536F |
| Q10~Q13 | 5042553000 | 2SA-733P |
| Q14 | 5230771000 | 2SC-227KE |
| Q15~Q17 | 5145087000 | 2SD-313E |
| Q18, Q19 | 5042383000 | 2SC-536F |
| | DIODES | |
| D1~D35 | 5224015010 | ISS133HV |
| D36 | 5143243000 | ERB12-02G1 |
| D37, D38 | 5224015010 | ISS133HV |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/6 watt. | | |
| R1~R4 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R5~R8 | 5240028220 | 1.0k Ω |
| R9~R12 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R13 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R14, R15 | 5240028420 | 1.2k Ω |
| R16 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R17~R19 | 5240029820 | 4.7k Ω |
| R20 | 5240028200 | 1.0k Ω |
| R21, R22 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R23 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R24, R25 | 5240031420 | 22k Ω |
| R26~R28 | 5240035420 | 1.0M Ω |
| R29 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R30 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R31 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R32 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R33 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R34 | 5240035420 | 1.0M Ω |
| R35, R36 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R37 | 5240035420 | 1.0M Ω |
| R38 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R39 | 5240035420 | 1.0M Ω |
| R40 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R41 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R42 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |

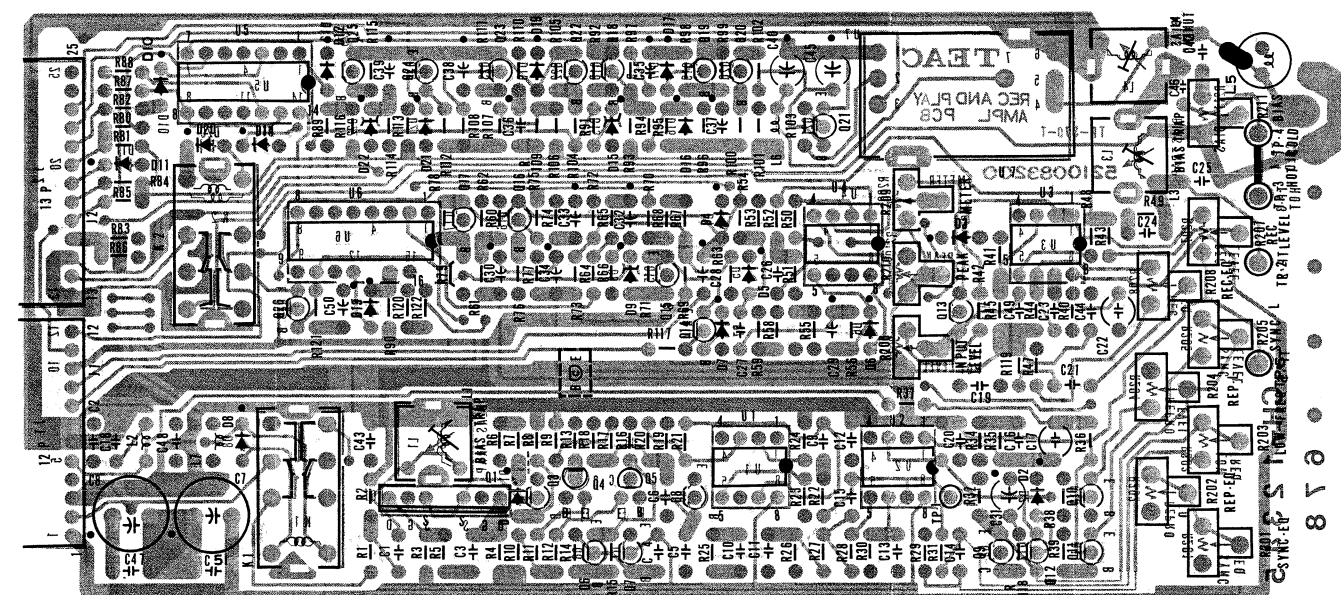
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------------|------------------------|
| R43 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R44~R46 | 5240030020 | 5.6kΩ |
| R47~R49 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R50~R52 | 5240030020 | 5.6kΩ |
| R53, R54 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R55, R56 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R57, R58 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R59, R60 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R61, R62 | 5240029220 | 2.7kΩ |
| R63, R64 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R65, R66 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |
| R67, R68 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R69, R70 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R71, R72 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R73, R74 | 5240034020 | 270kΩ |
| R75, R76 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R77, R78 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R79, R80 | 5240031820 | 33kΩ |
| R81, R82 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R83, R84 | 5240029020 | 2.2kΩ |
| R85, R86 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R87~R90 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R91, R92 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R93 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R94 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R95 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R96 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R97 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R98 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R99 | 5240025820 | 100Ω |
| R100, R101 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R102, R103 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R104 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |
| R105 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R106 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |
| R107 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R108~R110 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R111 | 5240031420 | 22kΩ |
| R112, R113 | 5240029820 | 4.7kΩ |
| R114 | 5240028420 | 1.2kΩ |
| R115 | 5240031820 | 33kΩ |
| R116 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R117 | 5240025220 | 56kΩ |
| R118 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R119~R122 | 5240031420 | 22kΩ |
| R123~R126 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R127, R128 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R129 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R130 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R131~R133 | 5180062000 | 150Ω (1/2 W) |
| R134~R136 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R137 | 5184755000 | 100Ω (1W) Nonflammable |

Keyboard PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|---|------------------------|
| | 5200082100 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082100 | PCB (PCB, Relay) |
| | IC | |
| U1 | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| | TRANSISTORS | |
| Q1~Q5 | 5230016100 | 2SA-950Y |
| | DIODES | |
| D6~D17 | 5143118000 | 1S2473HJ |
| | 5225009600 | COUNTER, |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| | All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 W. | |
| R1~R5 | 5181482000 | 1.0k Ω |
| R6~R10 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R11~R18 | 5181456000 | 82 Ω |
| R19~R23 | 5060000000 | 10k Ω |
| R24~R26 | 5181460000 | 120 Ω |
| R27 | 5181468000 | 270 Ω |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| D1, D2 | 5225010200 | Diode, LED; SLP-255B |
| D3 | 5225011300 | Diode, LED; SLP-455B |
| D4 | 5225010100 | Diode, LED; SLP-155B |
| J1 | 5336116400 | Connector Socket, 14CH |
| P1 | 5122366000 | Connector Plug, 14AD |
| S1~S11 | 5302101600 | Switch, Tact |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| | CAPACITORS | |
| C1 | 5260162050 | Elec. 4.7μF 35V |
| C2, C3 | | Refer to MISCELLANEOUS |
| C4 | 5260225710 | Elec. 0.22μF 50V 10% |
| C5 | 5054877500 | Mylar 0.01μF 100V 5% |
| C6 | 5054896500 | Mylar 0.0015μF 100V 5% |
| C7 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C8, C9 | 5054891500 | Mylar 0.0047μF 100V 5% |
| C10~C12 | 5173393000 | Ceramic 0.01μF 50V |
| C13, C14 | 5054877500 | Mylar 0.01μF 100V 5% |
| C15, C16 | 5054929500 | Mylar 0.12μF 100V 5% |
| C17, C18 | 5054877500 | Mylar 0.01μF 100V 5% |
| C19 | 5260162050 | Elec. 4.7μF 35V |
| C20 | 5260161150 | Elec. 2.2μF 50V |
| C21 | 5260160750 | Elec. 1μF 50V |
| C22 | 5260162500 | Elec. 10μF 16V |
| C23 | 5260165252 | Elec. 47μF 35V |
| C24, C25 | 5173393000 | Ceramic 0.01μF 50V |
| C26 | 5260165252 | Elec. 47μF 25V |
| C27 | 5173393000 | Ceramic 0.01μF 50V |
| C28 | 5260165252 | Elec. 47μF 25V |
| C29 | 5260166852 | Elec. 220μF 10V |
| | CONNECTOR PLUGS | |
| P1 | 5122136000 | 12P |
| P2 | 5122134000 | 10P |
| P3 | 5122129000 | 5P |
| P4 | 5122130000 | 6P |
| P5 | 5122133000 | 9P |
| P6 | 5122126000 | 2P |
| P7 | 5122128000 | 4P |
| P8 | 5122300000 | 3P (RED) |
| P9 | 5122127000 | 3P |
| P10 | 5122135000 | 11P |
| P11 | 5122302000 | 5P (RED) |
| P101 | 5122136000 | 12P |
| P102 | 5122134000 | 10P |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| CR1 | 5347001000 | Oscillator, Ceramic KBR4.0M |
| C2, C3 | 5172306000 | Ceramic 33pF 50V 10% |
| CR1 | 5347000800 | Oscillator, Ceramic CSA4.00MS |
| C2, C3 | 5172312000 | Ceramic 100pF 50V 10% |
| (Either pair can be used) | | |

8-2-3. Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y



Rec/Play Amplifier PCB Ass'y

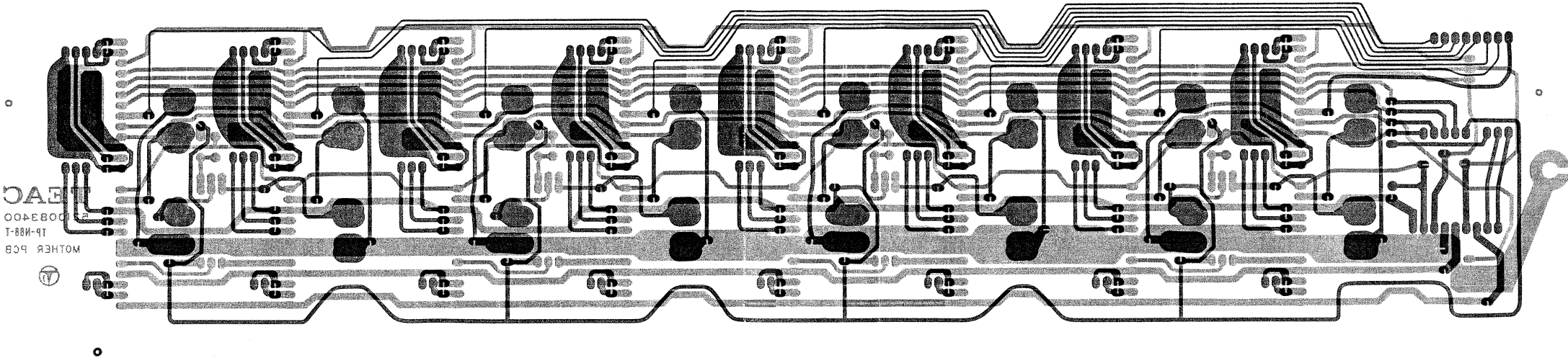
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------|-------------------|
| | 5200083200 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210083200 | PCB |
| IC'S | | |
| U1~U3 | 5220411600 | TL4558P |
| U4 | 5220405600 | AN6552 |
| U5 | 5220019000 | TC4001BP |
| U6 | 5220020000 | TC4049BP |
| U7 | 5292201800 | BIAS Ampl. Module |
| TRANSISTORS | | |
| Q1 | 5232006900 | FET, 2SK-270BL |
| Q3 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| Q4, Q5 | 5145149000 | 2SA-970GR |
| Q6, Q7 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| Q8 | 5145150000 | 2SA-1015GR |
| Q9 | 5145185000 | 2SD-655E |
| Q10, Q11 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| Q12, Q13 | 5145103000 | FET, 2SK-68AM |
| Q14, Q20 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| Q21 | 5230771000 | 2SC-2274K (E) |
| Q22~Q25 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| DIODES | | |
| D1~D3 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D4, D5 | 5042213000 | IN60 |
| D6~D8 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D9 | 5143154000 | EQA01-06S, Zener |
| D10~D14 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D15 | 5143174000 | EQA01-09R, Zener |
| D16, D17 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D19~D21 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D22 | 5143154000 | EQA01-06S, Zener |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| Except for R3, R4, all resistors are rated ±5% tolerance at 1/6 W. | | |
| R1 | 5240023420 | 10Ω |
| R2 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R3, R4 | 5241318200 | 1.0kΩ Metalized |
| R5 | 5240025420 | 68Ω |
| R6, R7 | 5240027020 | 330Ω |
| R8 | 5240028620 | 1.5kΩ |
| R9 | 5240025020 | 47Ω |
| R10 | 5240028020 | 820Ω |
| R11, R12 | 5240025420 | 68Ω |
| R13 | 5240030320 | 7.5kΩ |
| R14 | 5240029220 | 2.7kΩ |
| R15 | 5240028820 | 1.8kΩ |
| R16 | 5240030320 | 7.5kΩ |
| R17 | 5240028620 | 1.5kΩ |
| R18, R19 | 5240024620 | 33Ω |
| R20 | 5240028220 | 1.0kΩ |
| R21 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R22, R23 | 5240032820 | 82kΩ |
| R24 | 5240027920 | 750Ω |
| R25 | 5240032820 | 82kΩ |
| R26 | 5240027420 | 470Ω |
| R27 | 5240029220 | 2.7kΩ |
| R28 | 5240029620 | 3.9kΩ |
| R29 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R30 | 5240034420 | 390kΩ |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| R31 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R32 | 5240029020 | 2.2kΩ |
| R34 | 5240029820 | 4.7kΩ |
| R35 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R36 | 5240032420 | 56kΩ |
| R37 | 5240027620 | 560Ω |
| R38, R39 | 5240029820 | 4.7kΩ |
| R40 | 5240031600 | 27kΩ |
| R41 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R42 | 5240029020 | 2.2kΩ |
| R43 | 5240029220 | 2.7kΩ |
| R44 | 5240029420 | 3.3kΩ |
| R45 | 5240032020 | 39kΩ |
| R47 | 5240029420 | 3.3kΩ |
| R48 | 5240027620 | 560Ω |
| R49 | 5240028420 | 1.2kΩ |
| R50 | 5240029420 | 3.3kΩ |
| R51 | 5240033420 | 150kΩ |
| R52 | 5240025820 | 100Ω |
| R53 | 5240029420 | 3.3kΩ |
| R54 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R55 | 5240031420 | 22kΩ |
| R56 | 5240034820 | 560kΩ |
| R58 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R59 | 5240028800 | 1.8kΩ |
| R60 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R61, R62 | 5240032420 | 56kΩ |
| R63 | 5240029420 | 3.3kΩ |
| R64 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R65, R66 | 5240032420 | 56kΩ |
| R67 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R68 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R69 | 5240029020 | 2.2kΩ |
| R70 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R71~R73 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R74 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R75 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R76, R77 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R78 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R79 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R80 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R81~R85 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R86~R89 | 5240031020 | 15kΩ |
| R90 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R91 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R92 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R93 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R94 | 5240029220 | 2.7kΩ |
| R95 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R96, R97 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |
| R98 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R99 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R100, R101 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R102 | 5240029020 | 2.2kΩ |
| R103 | 5240023220 | 8.2Ω |
| R104 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R105 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R106 | 5240030420 | 8.2kΩ |
| R107 | 5240030820 | 12kΩ |
| R108, R109 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |

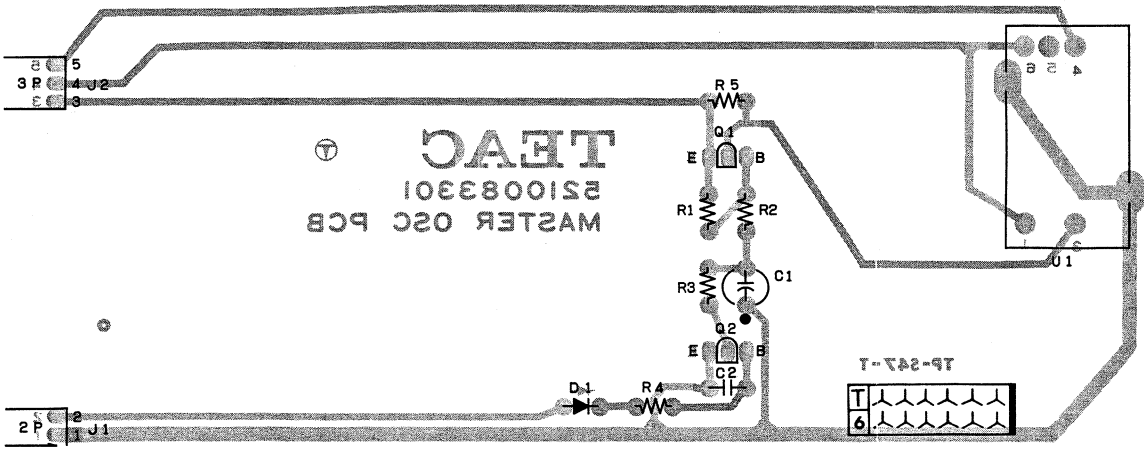
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| R110 | 5240030620 | 10kΩ |
| R111 | 5240032220 | 47kΩ |
| R112 | 5240030020 | 5.6kΩ |
| R113 | 5240031820 | 33kΩ |
| R114 | 5240026620 | 220Ω |
| R115 | 5240029820 | 4.7kΩ |
| R116 | 5240031620 | 27kΩ |
| R117, R118 | 5240029820 | 4.7kΩ |
| CAPACITORS | | |
| C1 | 5263106810 | Polyst. 390pF 100V 5% |
| C2 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C3 | 5172318000 | Ceramic 330pF 50V 10% |
| C4, C5 | 5172304000 | Ceramic 22pF 50V 10% |
| C6 | 5263107610 | Polyst. 820pF 100V 5% |
| C7 | 5173055800 | Elec. 220μF 25V |
| C8 | 5173073000 | Elec. 470μF 25V |
| C9 | 5260253010 | Elec. (B.P) 3.3μF 25V 20% |
| C10 | 5054899500 | Mylar 0.027μF 100V 5% |
| C11, C12 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C13 | 5054928500 | Mylar 0.1μF 100V 5% |
| C14 | 5260250910 | Elec. (B.P) 0.22μF 50V 20% |
| C15 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C16 | 5172307000 | Ceramic 39pF 50V 10% |
| C17 | 5260067050 | Elec. (B.P) 10μF 16V 20% |
| C18 | 5054727500 | Mylar 0.0036μF 100V 5% |
| C19 | 5260065650 | Elec. (B.P) 1μF 50V 20% |
| C21 | 5054891500 | Mylar 0.0047μF 100V 5% |
| C22 | 5260067850 | Elec. (B.P) 22μF 16V 20% |
| C23 | 5263106610 | Polyst. 330pF 100V 5% |
| C24 | 5054890500 | Mylar 0.0039μF 100V 5% |
| C25 | 5263106810 | Polyst. 390pF 100V 5% |
| C26 | 5260067050 | Elec. 10μF 16V 20% |
| C27 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C28 | 5260165052 | Elec. 47μF 10V 20% |
| C29 | 5260160750 | Elec. 1μF 50V 20% |
| C30~C34 | 5260162050 | Elec. 4.7μF 25V 20% |
| C35, C36 | 5171912000 | Elec. 0.22μF 50V 20% |
| C37~C39 | 5260163452 | Elec. 22μF 25V 20% |
| C40 | 5173029000 | Elec. 33μF 35V |
| C42 | 5263105410 | Polyst. 100pF 100V 5% |
| C43 | 5263107610 | Polyst. 820pF 100V 5% |
| C44 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C45 | 5260160750 | Elec. 1μF 50V 20% |
| C46 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C48 | 5054878500 | Mylar 0.001μF 100V 5% |
| C49 | 5054889500 | Mylar 0.0027μF 100V 5% |
| VARIABLE RESISTORS | | |
| R201, R202 | 5280131602 | Semi-fixed 2kΩ (B) |
| R203 | 5280132702 | Semi-fixed 50kΩ (B) |
| R204, R205 | 5280132002 | Semi-fixed 5kΩ (B) |
| R206 | 5280131602 | Semi-fixed 2kΩ (B) |
| R207, R208 | 5280132002 | Semi-fixed 5kΩ (B) |
| R209~R211 | 5280132702 | Semi-fixed 50kΩ (B) |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------|
| COILS | | |
| L1 | 5160044000 | Trap 3mH 20% |
| L2 | 5160100000 | Choke 330μH 10% |
| L3 | 5160044000 | Trap 3mH 20% |
| L4 | 5286011400 | Choke 1.3mH |
| L5 | 5286011500 | Choke 200μH |
| L6, L7 | 5160107000 | Choke 1200μH 5% |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| K1, K2 | 5290009400 | Relay; 24V, G2V-282P |
| J1 | 5122383000 | Connector Socket, 12P |
| J2 | 5122384000 | Connector Socket, 13P |
| TP1~TP5 | 5317001200 | Pin φ0.7 |
| | 5800303900 | Case, Shield |

8-2-4. Mother PCB Ass'y



Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y



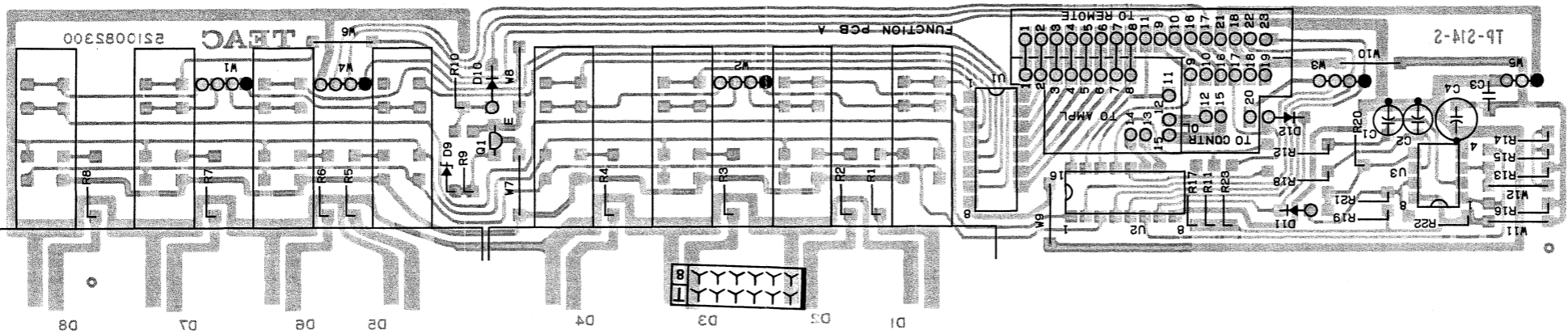
Mother PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|------------|--|
| | 5200083400 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210083400 | PCB |
| D1~D4 | 5042517000 | Diode, 1S2473VE |
| K1~K4 | 5061137000 | Reed Relay, 12V LAB2L |
| R1~R4 | 5240168400 | Carbon Resistor, 1.2k Ω 5% |
| R5 | 5184235000 | Carbon Resistor, 27 Ω 5% nonflammable |
| J1~J8 | 5330507400 | Pin Jack, 2P |
| CONNECTOR PLUGS | | |
| P101, P201 | 5122364000 | 12P |
| P301, P401 | 5122364000 | 12P |
| P501, P601 | 5122364000 | 12P |
| P701, P801 | 5122364000 | 12P |
| P102, P202 | 5122365000 | 13P |
| P302, P402 | 5122365000 | 13P |
| P502, P602 | 5122365000 | 13P |
| P702, P802 | 5122365000 | 13P |
| P103, P203 | 5122147000 | 4P |
| P303, P403 | 5122147000 | 4P |
| P503, P603 | 5122147000 | 4P |
| P703, P803 | 5122147000 | 4P |
| P104, P204 | 5122146000 | 3P |
| P304, P404 | 5122146000 | 3P |
| P504, P604 | 5122146000 | 3P |
| P704, P804 | 5122146000 | 3P |
| P105, P205 | 5122145000 | 2P |
| P305, P405 | 5122145000 | 2P |
| P505, P605 | 5122145000 | 2P |
| P705, P805 | 5122145000 | 2P |
| P901 | 5122364000 | 2P |
| P902 | 5122355000 | 3P |
| P903 | 5122151000 | 8P |
| P904 | 5122148000 | 5P |
| P905 | 5122454000 | 3P |
| P906 | 5122152000 | 9P |

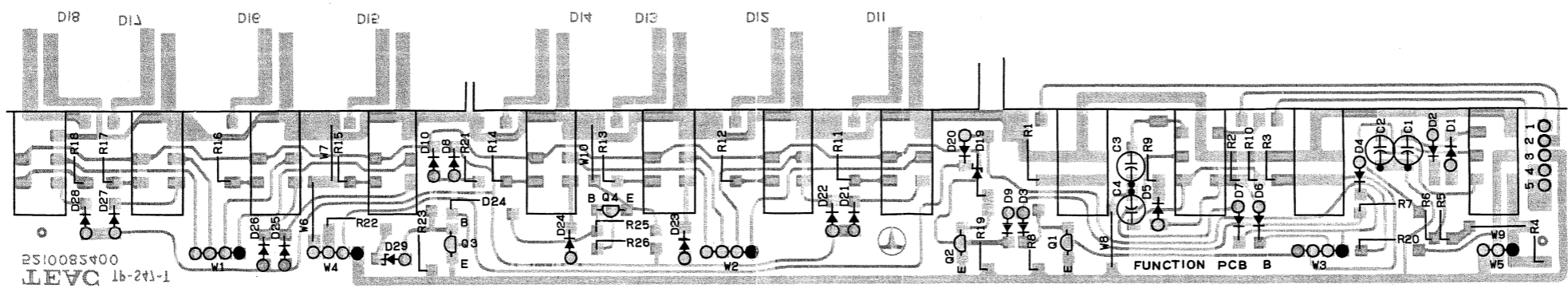
Master Oscillator PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------|---------------------------------|
| | 5200083300 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210083301 | PCB |
| TRANSISTORS | | |
| Q1 | 5145150000 | 2SA-1015GR |
| Q2 | 5145151000 | 2SC-1815GR |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 watt. | | |
| R1 | 5240170600 | 10k Ω |
| R2 | 5240170200 | 6.8k Ω |
| R3 | 5240171400 | 22k Ω |
| R4 | 5240170600 | 10k Ω |
| R5 | 5240169000 | 2.2k Ω |
| R6 | 5240170600 | 10k Ω |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| U1 | 5292201900 | OSC Unit, 145kHz |
| D1 | 5042517000 | Diode, 1S2473VE |
| C1 | 5260163452 | Capacitor, Elec. 22 μ F 25V |
| J1 | 5122373000 | Connector Socket, 2P |
| J2 | 5122374000 | Connector Socket, 3P |

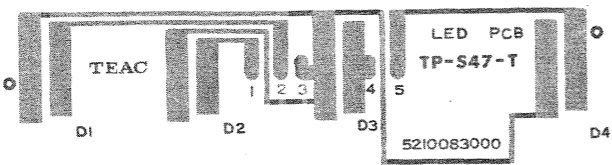
8-2-5. Function A PCB Ass'y



Function B PCB Ass'y



LED PCB Ass'y



(Viewed from foil side)

Function A PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---|------------------|------------------------|
| | 5200082300 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082300 | PCB |
| | IC'S | |
| U1, U2 | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| U3 | 5220012500 | μPC 393C |
| | TRANSISTORS | |
| Q1 | 5230771000 | 2SC2274K (E) |
| | DIODES | |
| D9 | 5224539901 | RD4.7 EB, Zener |
| D10~D12 | 5042517000 | 1S2473VE |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| All resistors are rated ±5% tolerance at 1/4 W. | | |
| R1~R8 | 5184992000 | 2.7kΩ |
| R9 | 5181522000 | 47kΩ |
| R10 | 5181484000 | 1.2kΩ |
| R11 | 5181492000 | 2.7kΩ |
| R12 | 5181522000 | 47kΩ |
| R13 | 5181524000 | 56kΩ |
| R14 | 5181530000 | 100kΩ |
| R15 | 5181518000 | 33kΩ |
| R16 | 5181498000 | 4.7kΩ |
| R17 | 5181540000 | 270kΩ |
| R18 | 5181458000 | 100Ω |
| R19 | 5181518000 | 33kΩ |
| R20, R21 | 5181530000 | 100kΩ |
| R22 | 5181498000 | 4.7kΩ |
| R23 | 5181484000 | 1.2kΩ |
| | CAPACITORS | |
| C1, C2 | 5260226110 | Elec. 1.0μF 50V 10% |
| C3 | 5173393000 | Ceramic 0.01μF 50V 10% |
| C4 | 5260165252 | Elec. 47μF 25V |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| D1~D8 | 5225010100 | Diode; LED; SLP-155B |
| S1, S2 | 5300028900 | Push-Switch, 4-gang |

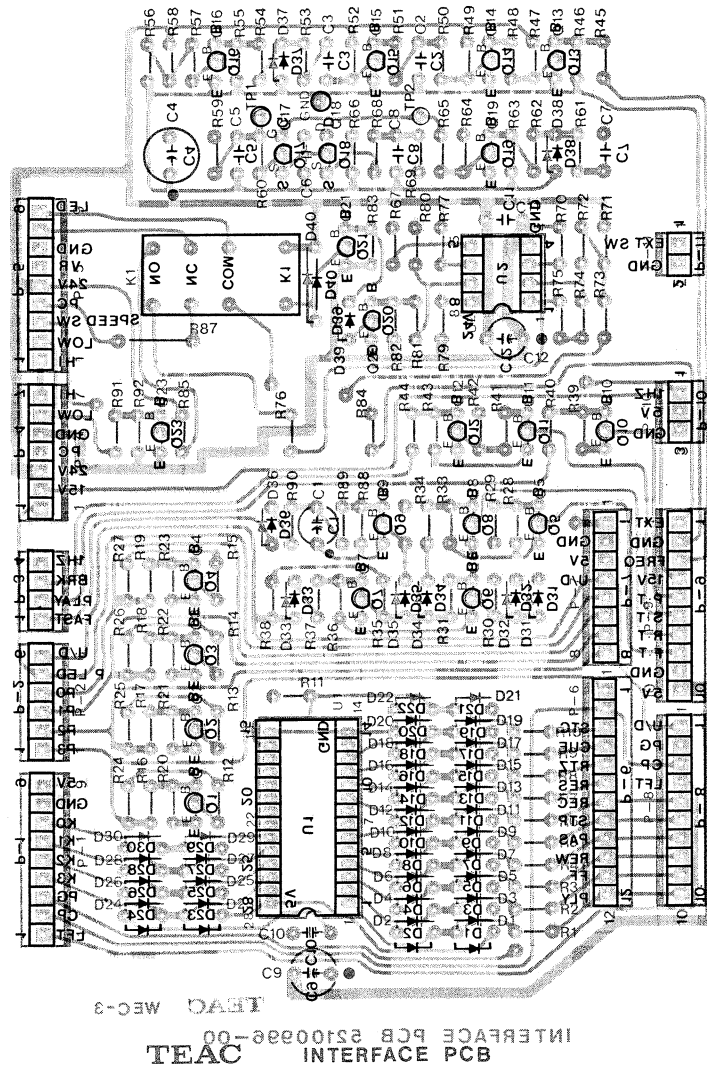
Function B PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---|------------|-----------------------|
| | 5200082400 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082400 | PCB |
| TRANSISTORS | | |
| Q1 | 5042383000 | 2SC-536F |
| Q2 | 5230771000 | 2SC-2274K (E) |
| Q3 | 5042383000 | 2SC-536F |
| Q4 | 5042553000 | 2SA-733P |
| DIODES | | |
| D1~D10, | 5042517000 | 1S2473VE |
| D20~D28 | 5042517000 | 1S2473VE |
| D19, D29 | 5224531501 | RD4.7EB1, Zener |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 W. | | |
| R1 | 5181478000 | 680 Ω |
| R2 | 5181480000 | 820 Ω |
| R3, R4 | 5181492000 | 2.7k Ω |
| R5, R6 | 5181458000 | 100 Ω |
| R7 | 5781506000 | 10k Ω |
| R8 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R9, R10 | 5181458000 | 100 Ω |
| R11~R18 | 5181480000 | 820 Ω |
| R19 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R20, R21 | 5181484000 | 1.2k Ω |
| R22 | 5181506000 | 10k Ω |
| R23 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R24 | 5181516000 | 27k Ω |
| R25 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R26 | 5181484000 | 1.2k Ω |
| CAPACITORS | | |
| C1, C2 | 5260162050 | Elec. 4.7 μ F 35V |
| C3, C4 | 5260160750 | Elec. 1 μ F 50V |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| S1 | 5300029000 | Push-Switch |
| S2 | 5300028000 | Push-Switch; 3-gang |
| S3, S4 | 5300028800 | Push-Switch; 4-gang |
| D11~D18 | 5225011300 | Diode, LED; SLP455B |

LED PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------|----------------------|
| | 5200083000 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210083000 | PCB |
| D1 | 5225010200 | Diode, LED; SLP-255B |
| D2 | 5225011300 | Diode, LED; SLP-455B |
| D3, D4 | 5225010100 | Diode, LED; SLP-155B |

8-2-6. Interface PCB Ass'y

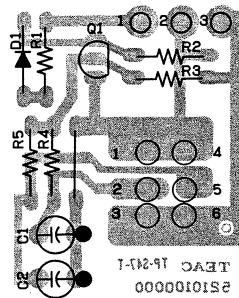


Interface PCB Ass'y

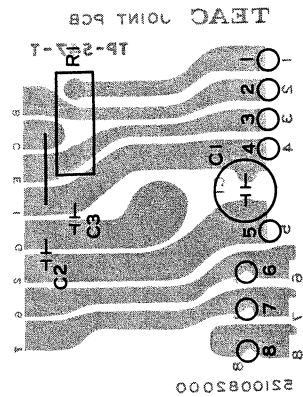
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| | 5200099600 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210099600 | PCB |
| | IC'S | |
| U1 | 5220019700 | LC7800 |
| U2 | 5220407200 | LM2904 |
| | TRANSISTORS | |
| Q1~Q16 | 5042383000 | 2SC536(F) |
| Q17 | 6048071000 | 2N5462 |
| Q18 | 5145103000 | 2SK68A-M |
| Q19~Q21 | 5042383000 | 2SC536(F) |
| | DIODES | |
| D1~D39 | 5224015010 | 1SS133HV |
| D40 | 5143243000 | EBR12-02G1 |
| D41 | 5760216400 | HZ3C1 |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/6 watt. | | |
| R1~ R10 | 5240028220 | 1k Ω |
| R12~R19 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R20~R23 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R24~R27 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R28 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R29~R31 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R33 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R34, R35 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R36 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R38 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R39 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R40~R42 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R43 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R44, R45 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R46 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R47 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R48 | 5240031420 | 22k Ω |
| R49 | 5240033820 | 220k Ω |
| R50, R51 | 5240031420 | 22k Ω |
| R52 | 5240031020 | 15k Ω |
| R53 | 5240027020 | 330 Ω |
| R54 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R55 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R56 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R57 | 5240031820 | 33k Ω |
| R58 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R59~R61 | 5240027020 | 330 Ω |
| R62 | 5240031420 | 22k Ω |
| R63 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R64 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| R65 | 5240033020 | 100k Ω |
| R66 | 5240030020 | 5.6k Ω |
| R67~R69 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R70 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R71, R72 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R73 | 5240026020 | 120 Ω |
| R74 | 5240031820 | 33k Ω |
| R75 | 5240031220 | 18k Ω |
| R76 | 5240029820 | 4.7k Ω |
| R77 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R79 | 5240029220 | 2.7k Ω |
| R80 | 5240035420 | 1M Ω |
| R81~R83 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R84, R85 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R87 | 5185548000 | 12k Ω , Metalized |
| R88 | 5240032220 | 47k Ω |
| R89 | 5240030620 | 10k Ω |
| R90 | 5240026020 | 120 Ω |
| | CAPACITORS | |
| C1 | 5260160550 | Elec. 0.47 μ F 50V |
| C2 | 5172321000 | Ceramic 560pF |
| C3 | 5172316000 | Ceramic 220pF |
| C4 | 5260166152 | Elec. 100 μ F 25V |
| C5 | 5054877500 | Myler 0.01 μ F |
| C6 | 5054881500 | Myler 0.0035 μ F |
| C7 | 5172309000 | Ceramic 56pF |
| C8 | 5054877500 | Myler 0.01 μ F |
| C9 | 5260165352 | Elec. 47 μ F 35V |
| C10, C11 | 5173393000 | Ceramic 0.01 μ F |
| C12 | 5260165352 | Elec. 47 μ F 35V |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| K1 | 5290009400 | Relay, G2V-292P |
| P1 | 5122306000 | Connector Plug, 9P (RED) |
| P2 | 5122130000 | Connector Plug, 6P (WHT) |
| P3 | 5122128000 | Connector Plug, 4P (WHT) |
| P4 | 5122131000 | Connector Plug, 7P (WHT) |
| P5 | 5122133000 | Connector Plug, 9P (WHT) |
| P6 | 5122309000 | Connector Plug, 12P (RED) |
| P7 | 5122132000 | Connector Plug, 8P (WHT) |
| P8 | 5122134000 | Connector Plug, 10P (WHT) |
| P9 | 5122307000 | Connector Plug, 10P (RED) |
| P10 | 5122127000 | Connector Plug, 3P (WHT) |
| P11 | 5122126000 | Connector Plug, 2P (WHT) |
| | 5544750000 | Pin, Combination (3 used) |

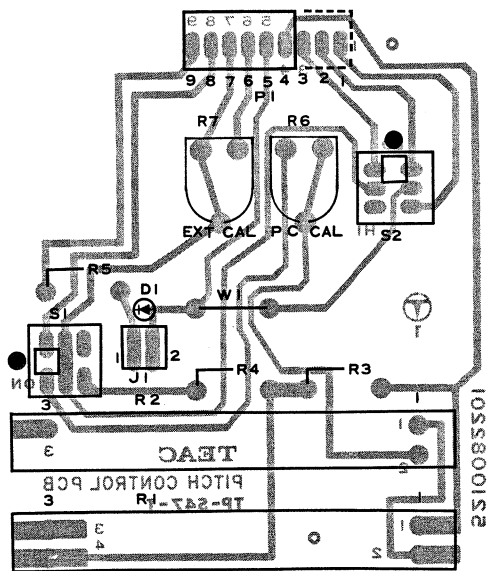
8-2-7. Connector PCB Ass'y



Joint PCB Ass'y



Pitch Control PCB Ass'y



Connector PCB Ass'y

| REF. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| | 5210108000 | Connector PCB |
| | 5210100000 | PCB |
| Q1 | 5145151000 | Transistor 2SC1815GR |
| D1 | 5143118000 | Diode 1S2473HJ |
| R1 | 5181528000 | Carbon Resistor R25 82k Ω |
| R2 | 5181522000 | Carbon Resistor R25 47k Ω |
| R3 | 5181482000 | Carbon Resistor R25 1k Ω |
| R4, R5 | 5181498000 | Carbon Resistor R25 4.7k Ω |
| C1, C2 | 5260162050 | Capacitor, Elec. 4.7 μ F 35V |

Head PCB Ass'y (PCB Omitted)

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|------------|-----------------|
| | 5200088600 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210088600 | PCB |
| J1~J3 | 5332014000 | Socket, IC, 16P |

Fuse PCB Ass'y (PCB Omitted)

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| | 5200081800 | PCB Assy [U, C, GE, J] |
| | 5200081810 | PCB Assy [E, UK, A] |
| | 5210081800 | PCB [U, C, GE, J] |
| | 5210081900 | PCB [E, UK, A] |
| FUSES | | |
| F1~F3 | △ 5307004100 | 2A 250V [U, C, GE, J] |
| F4 | △ 5307004300 | 3A 250V [U, C, GE, J] |
| F5~F7 | △ 5307004700 | 7A 125V [U, C, GE, J] |
| F1~F3 | △ 5142189000 | T2A 250V, mini [E, UK, A] |
| F4 | △ 5142191000 | T3.15A 250V, mini [E, UK, A] |
| F5~F7 | △ 5142193000 | T5A 250V, mini [E, UK, A] |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| | 5041237000 | Holder, Fuse [U, C, GE, J] |
| | 5332014200 | Holder, Fuse [E, UK, A] |

Pitch Control PCB Ass'y

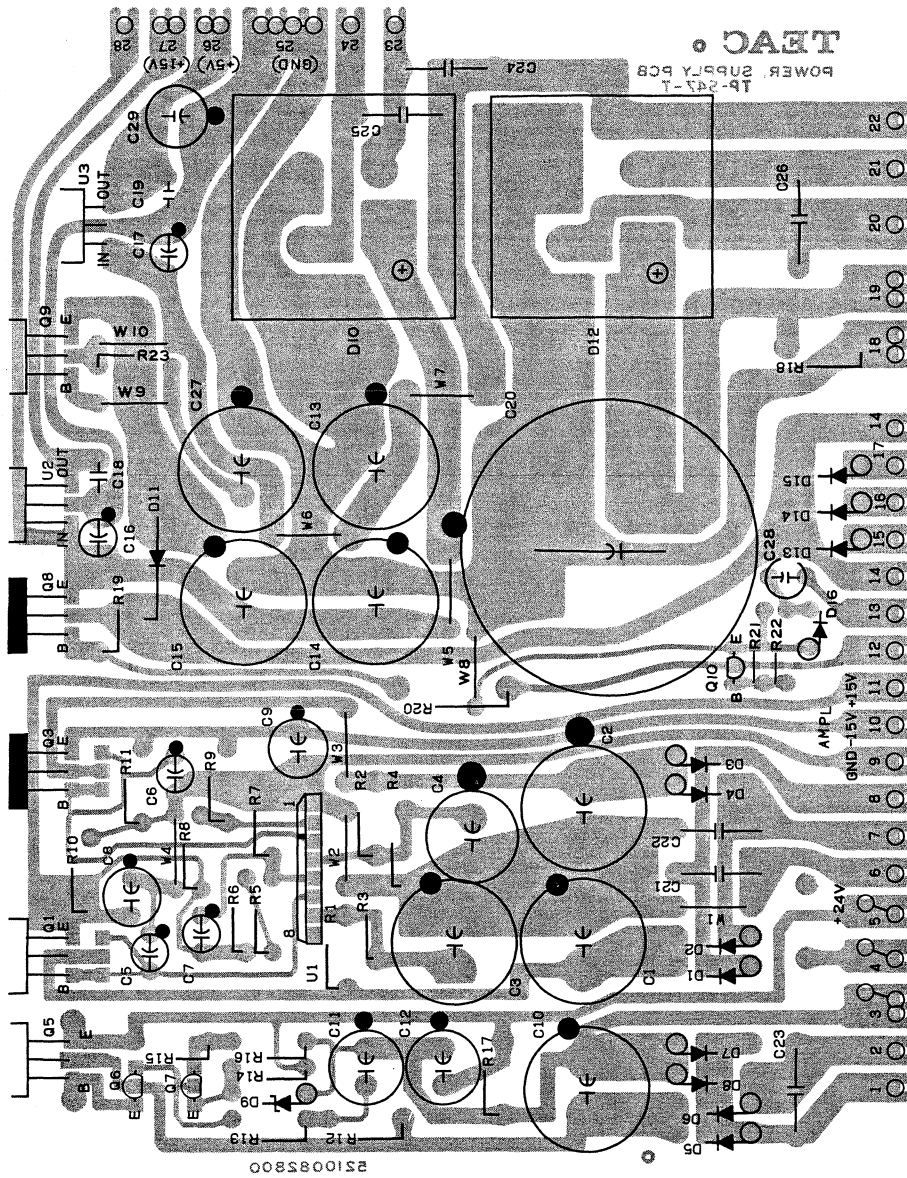
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---|------------|-------------------------------------|
| | 5200082201 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082201 | PCB |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 W. | | |
| R3 | 5183112000 | 18k Ω |
| R4 | 5181478000 | 680 Ω |
| R5 | 5181496000 | 3.9k Ω |
| VARIABLE RESISTORS | | |
| R1 | 5284006000 | Semi-fixed, Slide: 20k Ω (B) |
| R2 | 5284006100 | Semi-fixed, Slide: 1k Ω (B) |
| R6, R7 | 5150265010 | Semi-fixed, 500 Ω (B) |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| D1 | 5225007900 | Diode, LED; GL-9PR2 |
| P1 | 5122152000 | Connector Plug; 9P |
| J1 | 5336115200 | Connector Socket; 2P |
| S1 | 5300025700 | Push-Switch; 2-2 |

Joint PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--------------|--|
| | 5200082000 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082000 | PCB (PCB, Transistor) |
| R1 | △ 5241262100 | Resistor, Metal Plate 0.15 Ω (5W) 10% |
| C1 | 5260067610 | Capacitor, Elec. 10 μ F 100V 20% |
| C2, C3 | 5173393000 | Capacitor, Ceramic 0.01 μ F 50V |

[U]: U.S.A.
 [C]: CANADA
 [GE]: GENERAL EXPORT
 [A]: AUSTRALIA
 [E]: EUROPE
 [UK]: U.K.
 [L]: LIMITED AREA
 [J]: JAPAN

8-2-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y



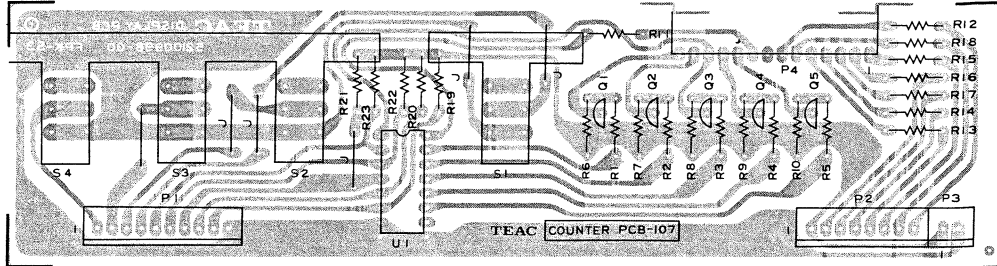
Power Supply PCB Ass'y

| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--------------|--------------------------------|
| | 5200082800 | PCB Assy |
| | 5210082800 | PCB |
| IC'S | | |
| U1 | △ 5220416400 | M5230L |
| U2 | △ 5220415600 | NJM7815A |
| U3 | △ 5220415100 | NJM7805A |
| TRANSISTORS | | |
| Q1 | △ 5145087000 | 2SD-313E |
| Q3 | △ 5145129000 | 2SB-507E |
| Q5, Q9 | △ 5145087000 | 2SD-313E |
| Q6, Q10 | △ 5230771000 | 2SC-2274K (E) |
| Q7 | 5042383000 | 2SC-536F |
| Q8 | △ 5145129000 | 2SB-507E |
| DIODES | | |
| D1~D8 | △ 5143243000 | ERB12-02G1 |
| D9 | 5143154000 | EQA01-06S, Zener |
| D10 | △ 5228007300 | D5FB20, Silicon Stad |
| D11 | △ 5224014700 | S3V20H |
| D12 | △ 5228007300 | D5FB20, Silicon Stad |
| D13~D15 | 5143243000 | ERB12-02G1 |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 W, unless otherwise indicated | | |
| R1, R2 | △ 5184257000 | 220 Ω Nonflammable |
| R3, R4 | 5181490000 | 2.2k Ω |
| R5 | 5181514000 | 22k Ω |
| R6 | 5181490000 | 2.2k Ω |
| R7 | 5181494000 | 3.3k Ω |
| R8, R9 | 5181510000 | 15k Ω |
| R10, R11 | | Not applicable |
| R12 | 5181502000 | 6.8k Ω |
| R13 | 5181506000 | 10k Ω |
| R14 | 5181496000 | 3.9k Ω |
| R15 | 5181512000 | 18k Ω |
| R16 | 5181502000 | 6.8k Ω |
| R17 | | Not applicable |
| R18 | 5181506000 | 10k Ω |
| R19 | 5181494000 | 3.3k Ω |
| R20 | △ 5184763000 | 220 Ω (1W) Nonflammable |
| R21 | 5181522000 | 47k Ω |
| R22 | 5181506000 | 10k Ω |
| R23 | △ 5184229000 | 15 Ω Nonflammable |
| CAPACITORS | | |
| C1, C2 | △ 5173079000 | Elec. 2200 μ F 35V |
| C3 | △ 5173083000 | Elec. 1000 μ F 35V |
| C4 | △ 5173065000 | Elec. 330 μ F 35V |
| C5, C6 | 5260160550 | Elec. 0.47 μ F 50V |
| C7~C9 | 5260165252 | Elec. 47 μ F 25V |
| C10 | △ 5173084000 | Elec. 1000 μ F 50V |
| C11 | 5173047800 | Elec. 100 μ F 35V |
| C12 | 5173056800 | Elec. 220 μ F 35V |
| C13 | △ 5173094000 | Elec. 3300 μ F 25V |
| C14, C15 | △ 5262002300 | Elec. 2200 μ F 50V |

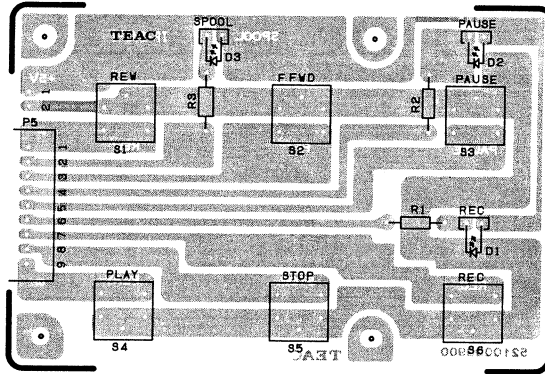
| REF. NO. | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| C16, C17 | 5172882000 | Elec. 1 μ F 50V |
| C18, C19 | 5054928500 | Mylar 0.1 μ F 100V 5% |
| C20 | △ 5262002200 | Elec. 6800 μ F 50V BK50-LISN 10% |
| C21~C26 | 5263164500 | Metalized 0.047 μ F 250V |
| C27 | △ 5173094000 | Elec. 3300 μ F 25V |
| C28 | 5260162650 | Elec. 10 μ F 25V |
| C29 | 5173070000 | Elec. 470 μ F 6.3V |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| | 5033291000 | Plate, Insulating |
| | 5033295000 | Tube, Insulating |

8-2-9 RC-50 and RC-51 PCB Ass'y

Display PCB Ass'y



Switch PCB Ass'y



DISPLAY PCB ASS'Y (RC-50/RC-51)

| REF. NO | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|--|------------------------|
| | 5200099800 | PCB Ass'y |
| | 5210099800 | PCB |
| | IC | |
| UI | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| | TRANSISTORS | |
| Q1 ~ Q5 | 5230016100 | 2SA950Y |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| | All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 watt. | |
| R1 ~ R5 | 5183082000 | 1k Ω |
| R6 ~ R10 | 5183122000 | 47k Ω |
| R11 ~ R18 | 5183056000 | 82k Ω |
| R19 ~ R23 | 5183106000 | 10k Ω |
| | PUSH SWITCHES | |
| S1 | 5300031200 | SUN 1 - 2 |
| S2 | 5300031300 | SUN 3 - 2 |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| P1 | 5122134000 | Connector, Plug; 10P |
| P2 | 5122132000 | Connector, Plug; 8P |
| P3 | 5122126000 | Connector, Plug; 2P |
| P4 | 5122366000 | Connector, Plug; 14P |
| J4 | 5122378500 | Connector, Socket; 14P |
| | 5225009600 | Counter |

SWITCH PCB Ass'y (RC-50/RC-51)

| REF. NO | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------|-----------------------------|
| | 5200099900 | PCB Ass'y |
| | 5210099900 | PCB |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 watt. | | |
| R1 | 5183068000 | 270 Ω |
| R2, R3 | 5183060000 | 120 Ω |
| LED'S | | |
| D1 | 5225010100 | SLP-155B |
| D2, D3 | 5225010200 | SLP-255B |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| P5 | 5302101600 | Switch, Tact (6 used) |
| | 6052380009 | Connector, Bottom Entry; 9P |

FUNCTION A PCB Ass'y (RC-51 only)

| REF. NO | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|--|---------------------|
| | 5200105200 | PCB Ass'y |
| | 5210082300 | PCB |
| | IC'S | |
| U1, U2 | 6048661000 | M54517P |
| | TRANSISTOR | |
| Q1 | 5230771000 | 2SC2274K(E) |
| | DIODES | |
| D9 | 5224531501 | RD417ED, Zener |
| D10 | 5042517000 | IS2473VE |
| | CARBON RESISTORS | |
| | All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 watt. | |
| R1 ~R8 | 5183092000 | 2.7k Ω |
| R9 | 5183122000 | 47k Ω |
| R10 | 5183084000 | 1.2k Ω |
| | MISCELLANEOUS | |
| S1, S2 | 5300028900 | Push Switch, 4-2 |
| D1 ~D8 | 5225010100 | LED, SLD-155B (RED) |
| P6 | 5122151000 | Connector, Plug; 8P |
| P7 | 5122152000 | Connector, Plug; 9P |

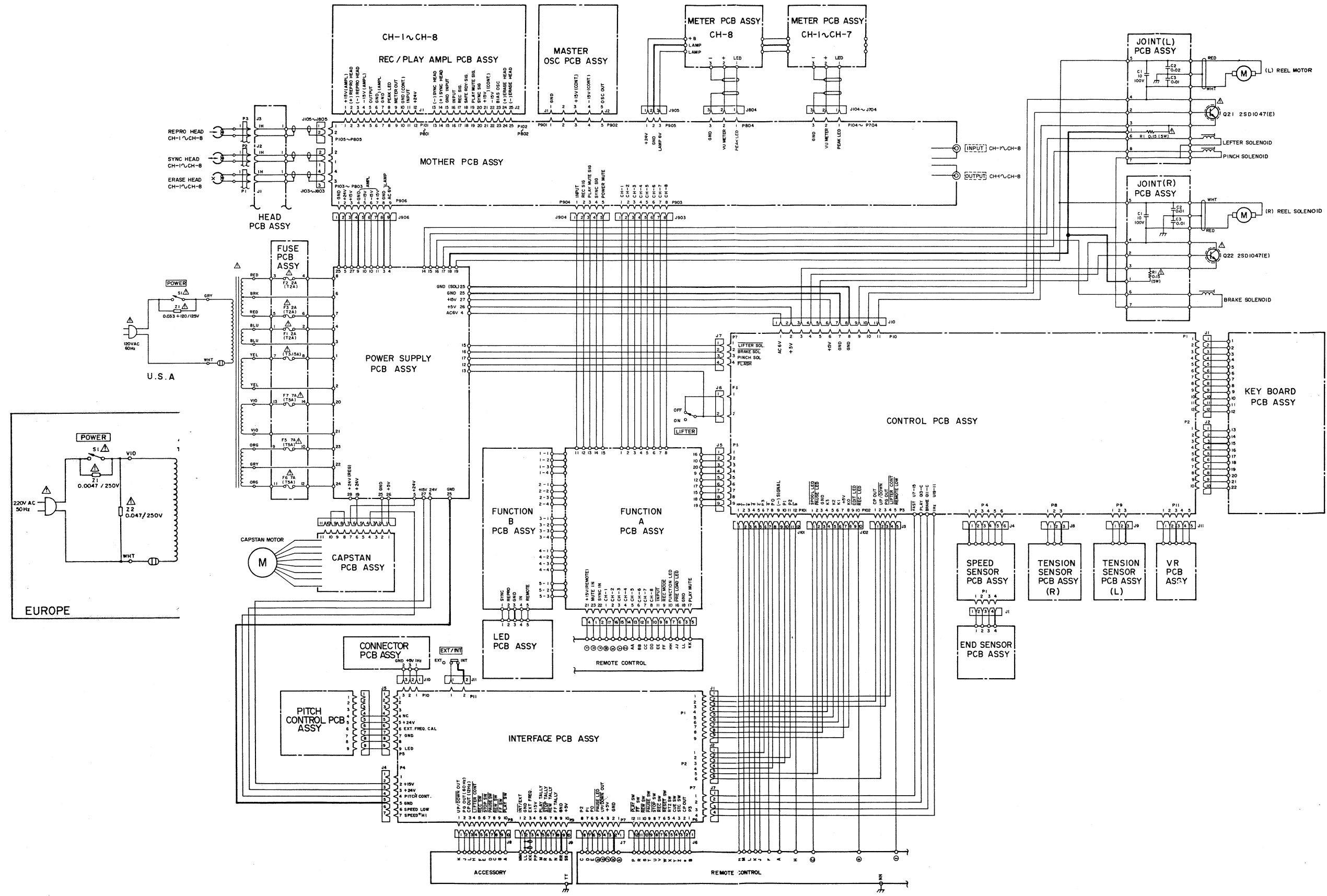
FUNCTION B PCB Ass'y (RC-51 only)

| REF. NO | PARTS NO. | DESCRIPTION |
|--|------------|---------------------------|
| | 5200105300 | PCB Ass'y |
| | 5210082400 | PCB |
| TRANSISTORS | | |
| Q2 | 5230771000 | 2SC2274E |
| Q3 | 5042383000 | 2SC536F |
| Q4 | 5042553000 | 2SA733P |
| DIODES | | |
| D5 ~D8 | 5042517000 | IS2473VE |
| D10 | 5042517000 | IS2473VE |
| D19 | 5224531501 | RD47EB1, Zener |
| D20 ~D28 | 5042517000 | IS2473VE |
| D29 | 5224531501 | RD47EB1, Zener |
| CARBON RESISTORS | | |
| All resistors are rated $\pm 5\%$ tolerance at 1/4 watt. | | |
| R1 | 5183078000 | 680 Ω |
| R2 | 5183080000 | 820 Ω |
| R3 | 5183092000 | 2.7k Ω |
| R9; R10 | 5183058000 | 100 Ω |
| R11 ~R18 | 5183080000 | 820 Ω |
| R19 | 5183122000 | 47k Ω |
| R20, R21 | 5183084000 | 1.2k Ω |
| R22 | 5183106000 | 10k Ω |
| R23 | 5183122000 | 47k Ω |
| R24 | 5183116000 | 27k Ω |
| R25 | 5183122000 | 47k Ω |
| R26 | 5183084000 | 1.2k Ω |
| CAPACITORS | | |
| C3, C4 | 5172882000 | Elec, 1 μ F 50V |
| MISCELLANEOUS | | |
| S2 | 5300028000 | Push Switch; 2-2 (3-gang) |
| S3, S4 | 5300028800 | Push Switch; 2-2 (4-gang) |
| D11 ~D18 | 5225011300 | LED, SLP 455B |
| | 5122128000 | Connector, Plug; 4P |

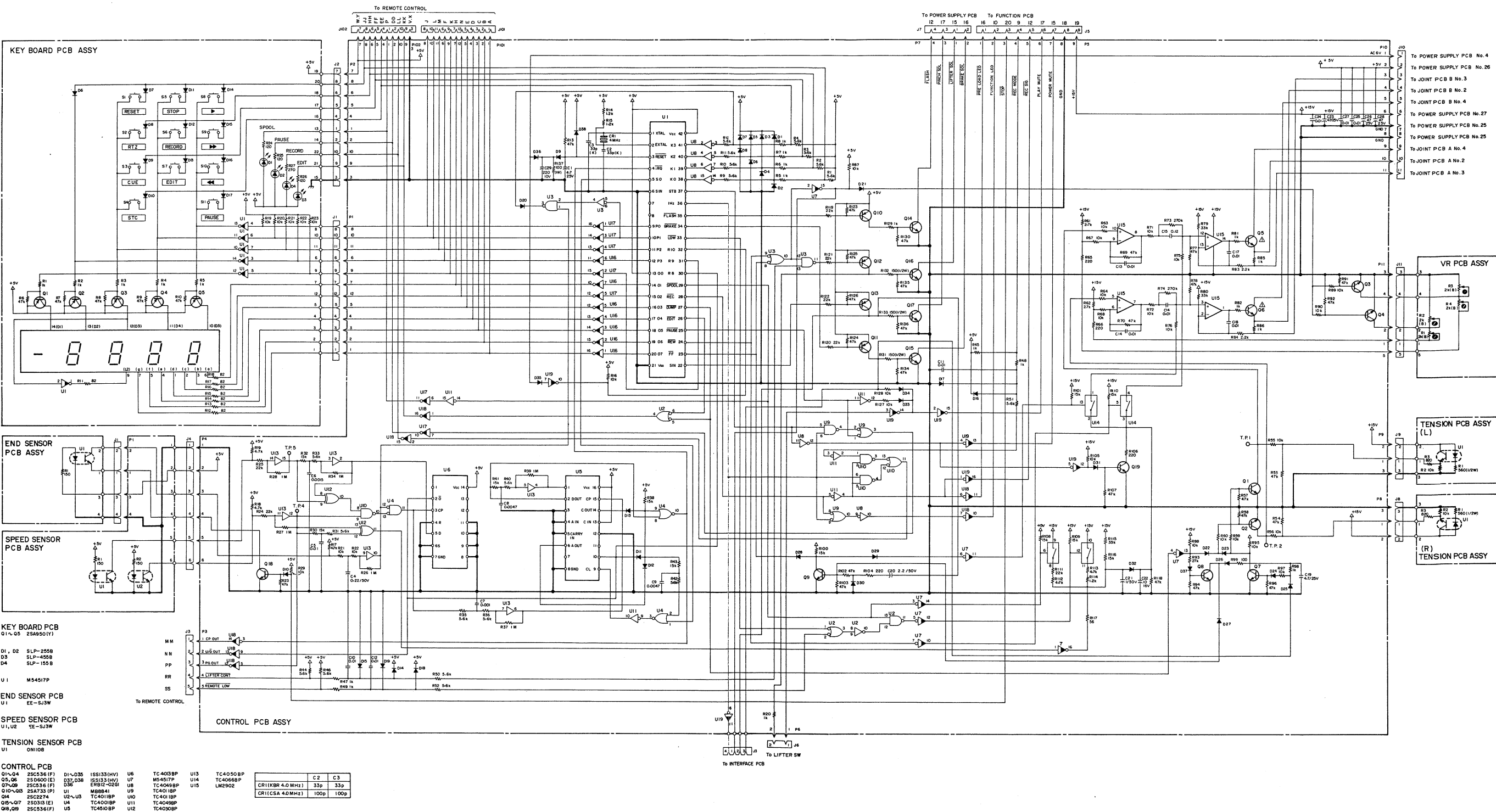
- The same Display and Switch PCB assemblies are used in both the RC-50 and RC-51.
- The LED PCB Ass'y is the same as that used in the 58, so refer to page 8-26.
- The PC boards used for both the Function A and Function B PCB assemblies are the same as those of the 58, so refer to page 8-26.
- Consequently, only the Display and Switch PCB assemblies are shown.

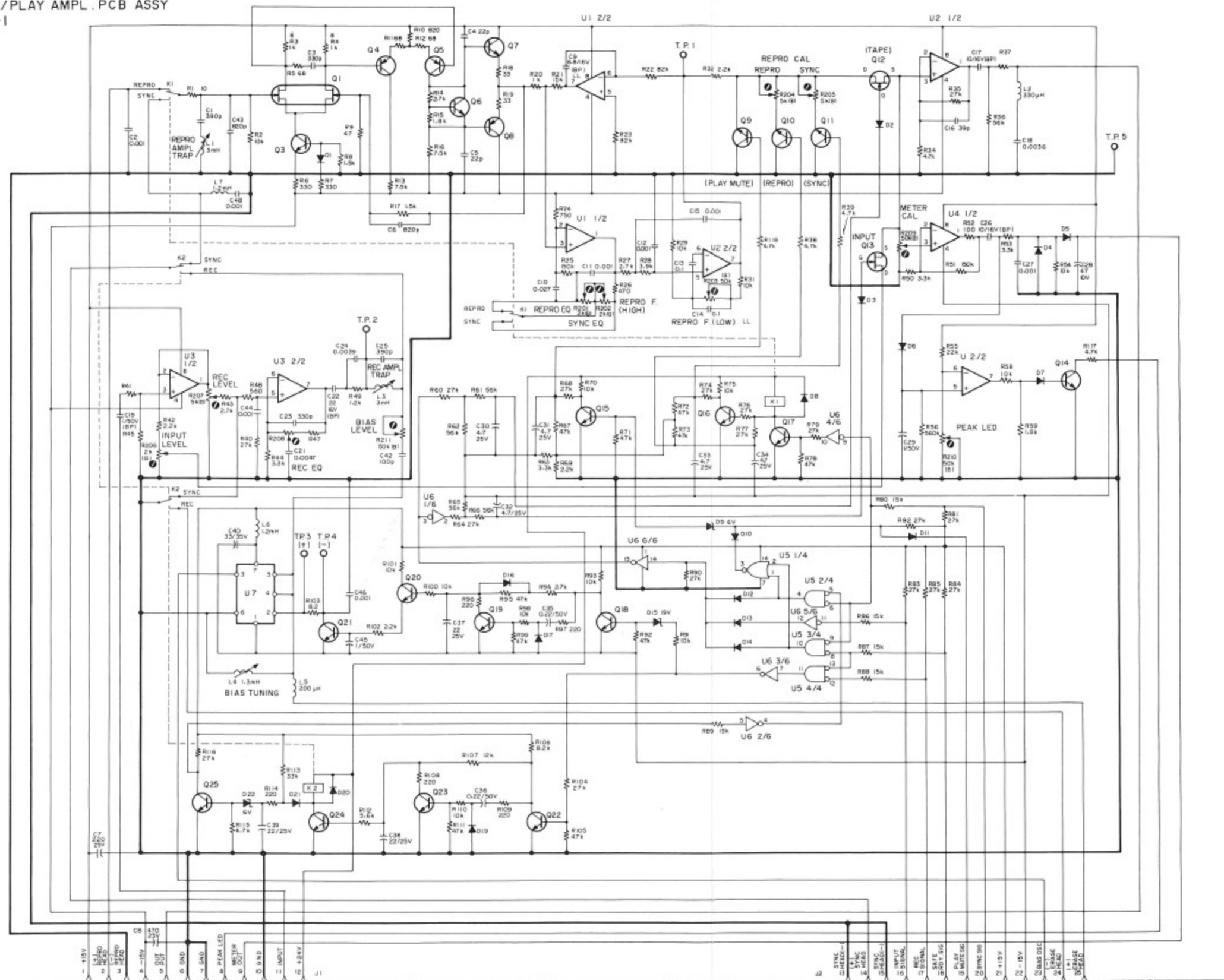
8-3. CIRCUIT SCHEMATICS

8-3-1. Wiring Diagram



8-3-2. Control PCB Ass'y



REC/PLAY AMPL. PCB ASSY
CH-1

Q1 2SK270BL
Q3 2SC1815GR
Q4, Q5 2SA970GR
Q6, Q7 2SC1815GR
Q8 2SA1015GR

Q9 2SD655E
Q10, Q11 2SC1815GR
Q12, Q13 2SK68AM
Q14, Q20 2SC1815GR
Q22, Q25 2SC1815GR

D1, D3 1S2473VE
D4, D5 1K60
D6, D8 1S2473VE
D9 EQA01-065
D10, D14 1S2473VE

D15 EQA01-19R
D16, D17 1S2473VE
D18, D21 1S2473VE
D22 EQA01-065

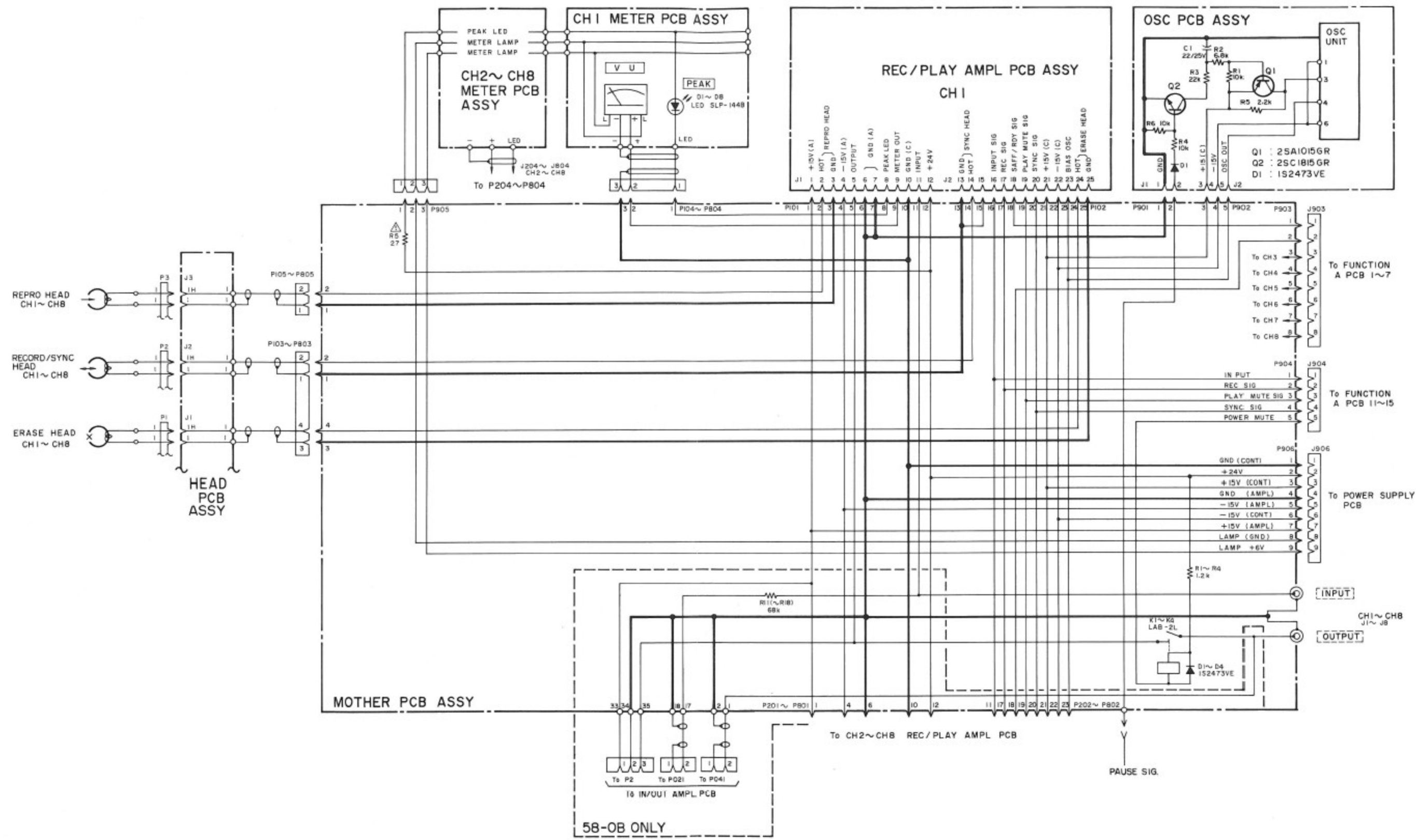
U1, U3 TL455BP
U4 AN6552(TL455BP)
U5 MC14001(TC14001BP)
U6 MC140498(TC140498P)

K1, K2 G2V-282P

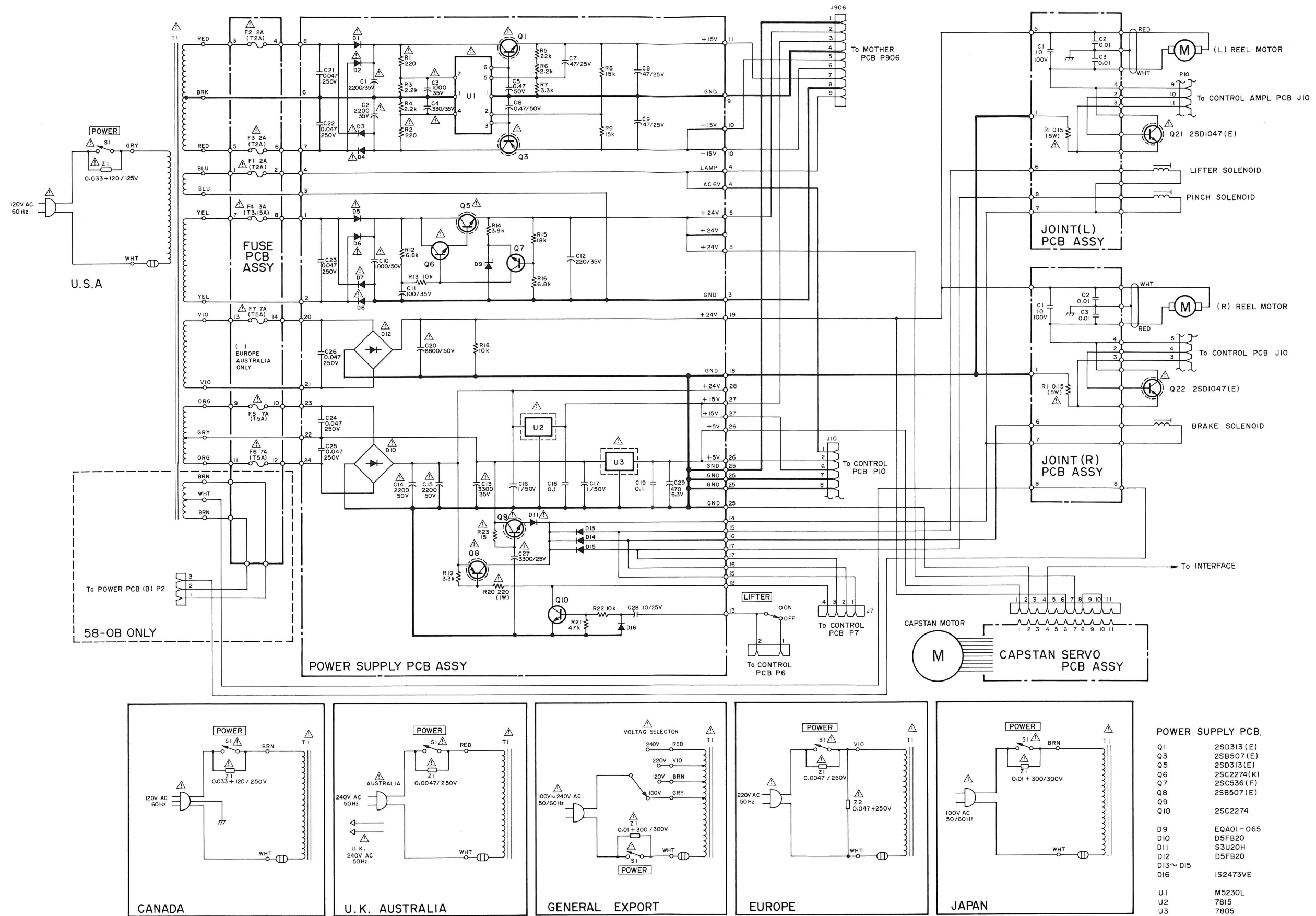
| | 0U | 0B |
|------|-------|---------|
| R37 | 560 | 220 |
| R41 | 15k | 47k |
| R45 | 39k | 120k |
| R47 | 3.3k | 1.5k |
| R208 | 5k(B) | 6.8k(B) |

To MOTHER PCB P101~P102 (CH-1~CH-8)

To MOTHER PCB P102~P102 (CH-1~CH-8)



8-3-8. Power Supply PCB Ass'y



8-3-9. Capstan Motor PCB Ass'y (for graphic purposes only)

